William of Palerne.

Early English Text Society.
Extra Series. No. 1.
1867.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
THE ROMANCE OF

William of Palerne:

(OTHERWISE KNOWN AS

THE ROMANCE OF "WILLIAM AND THE WERWOLF")

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH AT THE COMMAND OF
SIR HUMPHREY DE BOHUN, ABOUT A.D. 1350;

TO WHICH IS ADDED A FRAGMENT
OF THE ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE OF

Alisaunder;

TRANSLATED FROM THE LATIN BY THE SAME AUTHOR,
ABOUT A.D. 1340;

THE FORMER RE-EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. IN THE LIBRARY OF KING'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE;
THE LATTER NOW FIRST EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. IN THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD;

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A.,
LATE FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE. AUTHOR OF "A MESO GOTHIC GLOSSARY,"
EDITOR OF "PIERS PLOWMAN," ETC.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.
MDCCLXVII.
[Reprinted 1881.]
BUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS, THE CHAUCER PRESS.
CONTENTS.

Preface.

Introduction to "William of Palerne;"

§ 1. The "Extra Series" of the E. E. T. S. § 2. "William and the Werwolf;" edition of 1832. § 3. Missing portions supplied from the French. § 4. The story. § 5. Description of the MS. ... ... ... i

Preface to the edition of 1832; by Sir F. Madden. (Re-printed.) ... ... ... ... ... vii

Note on the word "Werwolf;" by Sir F. Madden ... xxv

Introduction to "Alisaounder;"

§ 1. Alliterative Romances of Alexander. § 2. The Alisaounder in MS. Greaves 60, by the author of William of Palerne. § 3. Description of MS. Greaves 60. § 4. The Story. § 5. Its origin. § 6. On the dialect of the poems. § 7. On the distinction between "thou" and "ye." ... ... ... ... ... xxix

William of Palerne ... ... ... ... ... 1

The Gestes of the worthie King and Emperour, Alisaounder of Macedoine ... ... ... ... ... 177

Notes to "William of Palerne" ... ... ... ... ... 219

Notes to "Alisaounder" ... ... ... ... ... 236

Glossarial Index ... ... ... ... ... ... 250

Index of Names ... ... ... ... ... ... 324
PREFACE.

INTRODUCTION TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE."

§ 1. The "Extra Series" of the publications of the Early English Text Society, of which this is the first volume, is intended to be supplementary to the ordinary series in such a way as to expedite the printing of the whole quantity of work to be printed. It has been proposed that it shall be reserved entirely for reprints and re-editions, and this rule will in general be adhered to. At the same time, a little laxity of definition must be allowed as to what constitutes a reprint. Thus, the editions of "Piers Plowman" (Text A) and of "Pierce the Ploughmans Crede," being entirely new, and from entirely new sources, have been issued with the ordinary Series, though both have been edited before more than once; whilst, on the other hand, more than a thousand lines, never before printed, have purposely been included in the present volume, as belonging to the same date, and as having been written by the same author as the rest.

§ 2. Of the two poems here printed, it is the former that has been edited before, in a volume of which the title is—"The Ancient English Romance of William and the Werewolf; edited from an unique copy in King's College Library, Cambridge; with an introduction and glossary. By Frederick Madden, Esq., F.R.S., F.S.A., M.R.S.L., Assistant-Keeper of the MSS. in the British Museum. London: printed by William Nicol, Shakspeare-Press. mdcccxviii." It forms one of the "Roxburghe Club" series, and only a limited number of copies were printed.
The thorough excellence of both the text and glossary of this edition is known to all who have had the opportunity of access to it, and it has always ranked as a contribution of great importance to our knowledge of Early English literature. Sir F. Madden justly claims to have been one of the first editors who insisted on the necessity of strict and literal accuracy, and it is impossible to say how much we owe to him, directly and indirectly. His edition is, in fact, almost a facsimile of the MS., being printed in black-letter, and with all the contractions of the original, a table of these being added to explain them to the reader. A copy of it having been provided for my use, it was sent to the printer, after I had expanded all the contractions by the use of italic letters, numbered the lines, inserted marks of punctuation, and added side-notes. Had the proof-sheets been corrected by this only, the volume would have contained no error of importance; but I judged it to be due to Sir F. Madden and to subscribers to make it absolutely correct (as I hope it now is, in the text at least,) by reading the proof-sheets with the MS. itself, to which I had ready access through the kindness of Mr Bradshaw, Fellow of King's College, and our University Librarian.\(^1\) I have also added a few words within square brackets where there are obvious omissions; they are chiefly taken from Sir F. Madden's notes. As his glossary contained references to the pages, and our object is to have references to the lines of the poem, I have re-written it entirely, incorporating with it the more difficult words in the fragment of "Alisaunder." For the sidenotes, most of the notes at the end, and indeed for the whole volume in its present state, I am altogether responsible; but I consider it as no little gain that Sir F. Madden, with very great kindness, has looked over the revises of the whole work, and I am much indebted to him for his suggestions. The glossary is, of course, copied from his almost wholly; but to some illustrative notes that are left entirely in his own words I have drawn special attention by attaching to them the letter "—M." He has also per-

\(^1\) May not some of the alleged difficulty of the study of Old English be fairly attributed to the shameful inaccuracy of some of the texts? The portion of "William and the Werwolf" printed by Hartshorne is, in places, simply inexplicable.
mitted the reprinting of his preface to the former edition, and of his note on the word "Werewolf" (with fresh additions).

§ 3. We are also under great obligations to M. Michelant, of the Bibliothèque Impériale at Paris. To him we owe the transcript of a considerable portion of the beginning of the French version of the poem, enabling me to supply the missing portions of the English version at pp. 1—6 and 19—23, and further to compare the French with the English throughout the first 500 lines; some of the results of which comparison will be found in the "Notes." He even did more; for he secured for us the accuracy of the portions printed by comparing the proof-sheets with the MS. Bibl. de L'Arsenal, Belles Lettres, 178, from which his transcript was made.

§ 4. The Story.

Most of the details of the story can be gathered from the "Index of Names" at the end of the volume, and from the head-lines and side-notes, but a brief sketch of it may be acceptable.

Embrons, King of Apulia, by his wife Felice, daughter of the Emperor of Greece, had a fair son named William. The brother of Embrons, wishing to be heir to the throne, bribed two ladies, Gloriande and Acelone, to murder the child. But at this very time, as the child was at play (at Palermo), a wild wolf caught him up, ran off with him, swam the Straits of Messina, and carried him away to a forest near Rome, not injuring, but taking great care of him. But while the wolf went to get some food for him, the child was found by a cowherd, who took him home and adopted him. (Now you must know that the wolf was not a true wolf, but a werewolf or man-wolf; he had once been Alphonns, eldest son of the King of Spain, and heir to the crown of Spain. His stepmother Braunde, wishing her son Braundinis to be the heir, enchanted him so that he became a werewolf.) One day the Emperor of Rome, going out a-hunting, lost his way, and met with the boy William, with whom he was much pleased, and took the child from the cowherd behind him on his horse to Rome, and committed him to the care of his own daughter Melior, to be her page. William, growing up beloved by everybody, attracted, as might have been expected, the love of Melior in particular; who, in a long but amusing soliloquy, concludes that, though she is degrading herself to think upon a foundling, she finds it harder still not to think of him, and seeks the advice of her dear friend Alissaundrine, a daughter of the Duke of Lombardy. This young damsél bids her be at ease, and, having some slight knowledge of witchcraft, causes William to dream of Melior, and to fall in love with her hope-
lessly. All his consolation is to sit in Melior’s garden, and he considers himself sufficiently fed by gazing at her window the whole day. Worn out by this, he falls asleep there, and is found by the two ladies, and, by Alisaundrine’s devices, the young couple are soon betrothed; but it has to be kept a great secret, lest the emperor should come to hear of it. About this time the emperor’s lands are invaded by the Duke of Saxony. William, knighted for the occasion, is, by his prowess, the chief instrument of the invader’s defeat; a defeat which the duke takes so much to heart that he shortly dies of grief. The emperor thanks and praises William greatly, very much to his daughter’s delight. But the next circumstance is untoward enough. The Emperor of Greece (who be it remembered, is William’s grandfather) sends an embassy, headed by Lord Roachas, to ask the hand of Melior for his son Partenedon. The emperor at once accepts the proposal, and the Emperor of Greece and Prince Partenedon set out for Rome. William falls ill at the news, but is soon recovered by the expressions of devoted constancy which he receives from Melior. The Greeks arrive at Rome, and great preparations are made; what is to be done? Melior and William consult their unfailing friend Alisaundrine, who, not knowing what else to do, steals the skins of two white bears from the royal kitchen, sews her friends up in them, and lets them out by a postern-gate from Melior’s garden, and bids them a sad farewell. But they had been observed; for a Greek, walking in this garden, had seen, to his great astonishment, two bears walking off on their hind legs, and tells his companions of his adventure, for which he is well laughed at, nothing more being thought of it at the time. The lovers hurry away till they find a den, wherein they conceal themselves, but fear to die of hunger. In this strait the werewolf finds them, and brings them sudden beef and two flasks of wine, having robbed two men whom he met carrying them. Meanwhile, great are the preparations for the wedding, which is to take place at St Peter’s church. But at the last moment, where is the bride? The Emperor of Rome, frantic with rage, questions Alisaundrine, who evades his questions, but at last avows her conviction that, if William cannot be found, neither will Melior. William is indeed missing, and the Greek’s story about the two white bears is at once understood, and a hue and cry is raised after them. They are not found, and the Greeks return to their own country. The lovers, still disguised as bears, and guided and fed by the werewolf, flee to Benevento, where they are nearly caught, but escape by the werewolf’s help. Finding their disguise is known, they dress up as a hart and hind, and at last, after a strange adventure at Reggio, cross the Straits of Messina to Palermo, the werewolf still guiding them. Palermo is in a state of siege. King Embrons is dead, and Felice is queen, but is hard pressed by the Spaniards, as the King of Spain has asked the hand of her daughter Florence (William’s sister) for his son Braundinis, and, on her refusal, has come to enforce his claim. Queen Felice has a dream of happy omen, and, perceiving the hart and hind, dresses herself also in a hind’s skin, and goes to meet them, welcoming them and offering them protection, if
William will deliver her from the Spaniards. Rejoiced at this, William, on Embrons' horse, and with a werewolf painted on his shield, performs marvels, and takes both the King and Prince of Spain prisoners, never to be released till the wicked Queen Braunde shall disenchant the werewolf. She is sent for, and arrives, and reverses the charm, restoring Alphouns to his right shape, for which she is pardoned; and the Prince Alphouns receives great praises for his kindness to William, it being now seen that he did but steal him away to save his life from the plots of King Embrons' brother. By way of further reward, he is to marry Florence, and William is, of course, to marry Melior. William sends a message to this effect to Melior's father, who, for joy to hear that she is alive, promises to come to the wedding, and to bring Alisaundrine with him. At the same time the Emperor of Greece, Queen Felice's father, sends Partenedon his son to Palermo to help the queen against the Spaniards; but the prince is not a little chagrined at finding that he has come to see Melior, whom he once wooed, and whom he lost at the last moment, married to the husband of her own choice. Seeing no help for it, however, he submits as well as he can. But there is another disappointed suitor, Prince Braundinis; can nothing be done for him? It is at once arranged that he can marry Alisaundrine, and the triple wedding of William and Melior, Alphouns and Florence, Braundinis and Alisaundrine, is celebrated in one day; after which, Partenedon returns to Greece, and the Spaniards return to Spain. The Emperor of Rome dying, William is elected to succeed him as emperor, and is crowned at Rome; and Alphouns, his steadfast friend, who has become King of Spain on his father's death, is present at the joyful ceremony. And thus the Queen of Palermo lived to see her dream come true, that her right arm reached over Rome and her left arm lay over Spain; for her son was the emperor of the former country, and her daughter queen of the latter; nor was the kind cowherd forgotten, for his adopted son gave him an earldom, and brought him out of his care and poverty.

It ought to be remarked that the curious fancies about the enchantment of Alphouns into a werewolf, and the dressing up of William and Melior, firstly in the skins of two white bears and afterwards in the skins of a hart and a hind, as also the wearing of a hind's skin by the Queen of Palermo, form the true groundwork of the story, and no doubt, at the time, attracted most attention. To a modern reader this part of the narrative becomes tedious, and one wonders why the disguises were kept on so long. But as a whole, the story is well told, and the translator must have been a man of much poetic power, as he has considerably improved upon his original. For further remarks upon him, see Sir F. Madden's preface, and the "Introduction to Alisaunder."
§ 5. Description of the MS.

In addition to Sir F. Madden’s remarks, I may observe that the size of the pages of the volume is about 12 inches by 8, and the class-mark is No. 13. The folios have been renumbered, it being ascertained that the missing leaves are the first three and the tenth. Thus fol. 1 of the former edition is now called fol. 4, and fol. 7 is now fol. 11. With this slight change, the numbering of the folios in the margin furnishes a ready way of comparing the two editions.\(^1\)

The volume consists of two MSS.:

I. William of Palerne, here printed; containing 86 leaves (of which three are lost);

II. An imperfect copy of the Lives of the Saints, &c., attributed to Robert of Gloucester, and containing——

1. A description of bible-subjects for Lent, with the passion of Christ, &c.: Begins (fol. 1)—

“Seint marie dai in Leinte · among oþer daies gode”——

ends, “Now ihesu for þe swete crois · þat þou were on ydo

Bring [vs] to þe blisse of h[e]uene · þat þou vs bouȝtest to.

AMEN.”

2. Judas. Begins (fol. 32)—“Iudas was a lüper brid · þat Ihesu solde to þe rode ;” ends—“þer we weneþ þat he be.”

3. Pilate, (fol. 34). “Pilatus was a lüper man · and come of a lüper more ;” ends—“frum so deolfol cas.”

4. Seint Marie Egiptiak, (fol. 37 b). “Seint Marie Egiptiak · in egipte was y-bore ;” ends—“þoru penauuæ þat heo gan lede.”

5. Seint Alphe, (fol. 40 b). “Seint alphe þe martir · þat good man was ynow ;” ends—“to þe blisse of heuene wende. AMEN.”

6. Seint George, (fol. 43). “Seint George þe holi man · as we findeþ of him y-write ;” ends—“lete vs alle þider wende. AMEN.”

7. Seint Dunston, (fol. 44 b). “Seint Dunston was in Engelonde · icome of gode more ;” ends—“þat auȝgles þi soule to bere. AMEN.”

8. Seint Aldelme, (fol. 46 b). “Seint Aldelme þe confessour was man of good liue ;” ends—“þat he is on ido. AMEN.”

\(^1\) See also the Note at the end of the Glossarial Index.
9. Seint Austyn, (fol. 47 b). "Seint Austyn þat brouȝte · criستان-dom to Englonde;" ends—"if we were wel vnderstonde."

The last poem is imperfect, but has lost only four lines, which I venture here to transcribe from MS. Laud. 108, fol. 31 b, to complete it:

"His day is toward þe ende of May · for in þat day he wende
Out of þis lijf to iheʃu criʃt · þat after him þo sende
Bidde we ʒeornʃe feʃt Christian · þat criʃtandom so brouȝte
þat we moten to þulke Ioye come · to ʒwan ore louerd uf bouȝte."

The Lives of Judas, Pilate, and Seint Dunston have been printed for the Philological Society, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1862.

Of the names scribbled on the margins of the MS., the one which occurs most frequently is that of Nicholas Williams, to whom it must have belonged in the sixteenth century. We find, on fol. 45, the entry, "Nicholas Williams was poysond, but by God's grace escaped it. Gloria patri, Amen. by lacon in Salop." Lacon is a township in the parish of Wem, some ten miles due N. of Shrewsbury.

For remarks upon the dialect of the poems, see the end of the "Introduction to Alisaunder," p. xxxvii.

PREFACE TO THE ORIGINAL EDITION OF 1832.

BY SIR FREDERICK MADDEN.

The Romance of "William and the Werewolf," contained in the present volume, is printed from an unique MS. preserved in the Library of King's College, Cambridge, and its literary history renders it of more than common interest to the poetical antiquary. It is to the memorable Rowleian controversy we are indebted for the first notice of this poem in its English dress. In that singular dispute, in which Jacob Bryant, Fellow of King's College, and the Rev. Jeremiah Milles, D.D., Dean of Exeter, so notably distinguished themselves in defence of the pseudo-Rowley and his writings, the former, by a piece of good fortune, stumbled on the Romance, and, still more fortunately for us, resolved to force it into his service.
in support of the antiquity of Chatterton's forgeries. Accordingly, in his "Observations," 8vo. Lond. 1781, pp. 14—23, he gives a short account of the poem, with a few extracts from it. His argument tends to prove it written in a provincial dialect, and for this purpose he produces a list of words, which he pronounces of a local nature. But however profound Bryant may have been as a classic scholar, he possessed very little, or rather, no knowledge of the formation or genius of the old English language. Indeed, his attempt to prove Chatterton's poetry the production of the 15th century, is quite sufficient to acquit him of any such pretensions. The consequence is natural. Nearly all the words considered by him provincial, are to be met with in every other writer of the period, and even those of rarer occurrence are, for the most part, found in the Scottish alliterative Romances of the same century.\(^1\) But the citations made by Bryant from this MS. were sufficient at a somewhat later period to attract the attention of the kennel of 'black-letter hounds' then in full cry after the pothooks of Shakspeare's prompter's book, and George Steevens, I believe, applied for permission to inspect it. The volume was then in the hands of Dr Glynne, Senior Fellow of King's College, who, like Bryant, was a sturdy Rowleian,\(^2\) and he, fancying

\(^1\) Bryant's blunders in explaining these words are marvellous. A few instances, which may be compared with the Glossary at the end of this volume, will serve to show how little he understood the subject. Thus, he interprets arm, around; bourde, a public house or shop; bretages, bridges; kud, good; kinne, can; maid, madam; uelt, held; warder, further; boggeslycke, boyishly! Many are also copied so incorrectly that they can scarcely be recognised, as eni for em, asthis for aschis, genlych for gamlyche, kerity for keneley, konchaunce for konchaunce, woluke for wolouke, satheti for scathli, nege for neize [neiʒ], henden for hieden [hieðen], fearful for feizful [feizful], wyeth for wyez, sayte for sayre, path for paye. And yet this is the man who pretended to judge of Chatterton's forgeries, and even correct them by his own notions of Rowley's fancied original. We may truly apply to him some of the precious lines he wastes his commentary on:

"Words wythoute sense fulle grofflyngelye he twynes, Cotteynge his storie off as wythe a sheere; Waytes monthes on nothyngye, & hys storie donne, Ne noe you from ytte kenne, than gyf you neere begonne."

p. 69. \textit{Ed. Tyrwhitt}.

\(^2\) Dr Glynne bequeathed to the British Museum the original parchments fabricated by Chatterton, which now remain a 'damiing proof,' were any wanted, of the imposture. They present a series of the most contemptible and clumsy forgeries.
that an examination of the book might not assist the claims of Rowley to originality, very prudently locked the treasure up, and there it slumbered till it was once more brought to light by the Rev. C. H. Hartshorne, about the year 1824.¹ By permission of the Provost, about 560 lines of the commencement were copied, and they form a portion of a volume intitled "Ancient Metrical Tales," published in 1829, 8vo., pp. 256—287. Of the inaccuracy of this transcript I shall say nothing, as it will sufficiently appear by comparison with the text now printed.

Having thus briefly stated the mode in which this MS. became known to the public, the next point of inquiry will be the author of the poem in its present shape; and here, I regret to add, no information can be gained. All we know on the subject is derived from the writer himself, who tells us, he translated it from the French at the command of Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford. These are his words, at the end of the first jytte or passus:

Thus passed is the first pas of this pris tale,
And 3e that loven and lyken to listen ani more,
Alle wiþth on hol hert to the hei3 king of hevene,
Preieth a pater noster prively this time,
For the hend Eri of Herfurd, sir Humfray de Bowne,
The king Edwarde neve, at Glouseter that ligges,
For he of Frensche this fayre tale first dede translate,
In ese of Englysch men, in Englysch speche.—(fol. 3.)

And at the end of the poem, in similar but in fuller terms:

In thise wise hath William al his werke ended,
As fully as the Frensche fully wold aske,
And as his witte him wold serve though it were febul ² . . . .
But faire frendes, for Goddes love, and for your owne mensk,

MSS. Add. 5766. A.B.C. Alas, for the shade of Rowley! [For specimens of these poems, and critical remarks upon them, see Warton, Hist. English Poetry. § xxvi.—W. W. S.]

¹ Weber has, indeed, pointed it out as one of those Romances worthy of publication, but he never saw the MS. itself. See Metr. Rom. Introd. p. lxviii.

² Sir F. Madden did not quote these first three lines in this place (though he quoted them farther on, see p. xxii); but it is worth while to observe that they tell us the poet's own Christian name, which (like his hero's) was William.—W.W.S.]
3e that liken in love swiche thinges to here,

_Prefizeth for that gode Lord that gart this do make._

_The hende Earl of Hereford, Humfray de Boune;_  
_The gode king Edwarde douzler was his dere moder;_  
_He let make this mater in this maner speche,_

_For hem that knoue no Frensche, ne never understo[nd]:_  
_Biddith that blissful burn that bouȝt us on the rode,_  
_And to his moder Marie, of mercy that is welle,_  

_3if the Lord god lif, wil he in erthe lenges,_  
_And whan he wendes of this world, welthe with-oute ende,_

_To lenge in that liking joye, that lesteth ever more._—(fol. 82.)

It has been the more necessary to quote these passages at length, in order to correct the absurd mistakes of Bryant, who, not understanding the phrases, “at Glouseter that _ligges,_” and “ferst _dede translate,_” nor the import of the line, “3if the Lord god lif,” &c., has supposed, first, that the Earl himself had made a prior translation to the one before us, and secondly, that he was dead and buried at Gloucester, when the second version was undertaken! It is scarcely necessary to point out, that the words “ferst _dede translate,_” only mean first _caused_ to be translated, and are strictly synonymous with “_gart_ this do make,” and “_let_ make.” Then, as to the Earl’s lying dead at Gloucester, the Poet can have no such meaning, for at the conclusion of the Romance he begs his hearers to pray to God and the Virgin to give the Earl “good life,” and after his decease, eternal felicity. The line simply means, resident or dwelling at Gloucester; and although the term _to ligge_ was in subsequent times more often used in the sense understood by Bryant, yet there is no reason, in the above instance, to depart from its original and obvious meaning.

1 In the 21 Edw. 3, Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, obtained the royal license to embattle his Manor-Houses in the Counties of Gloucester, Essex, Middlesex, and Wiltshire. In the former of these only one mansion is mentioned, that of Whitenhurst, or Wheatenhurst, situated about eight miles south from Gloucester, and it is very probable that this is the spot alluded to in general terms by the Poet. We know, moreover, that the Earl was not buried at Gloucester, but at the Augustine Friars, in London, which he had himself re-edified in 1354. See Dugdale, _Baron,_ i. 184; _Rudder’s Gloucest._ p. 813; and Stowe’s Survey, p. 185.
The nobleman thus alluded to was the sixth Earl of Hereford of
the name of Bohun, and third son of Humphrey de Bohun, fourth
Earl of Hereford, and Elizabeth Plantagenet, seventh daughter of
King Edward the First; consequently he was nephew to King Edward
the Second, as intimated in the poem, and first cousin to King Edward
the Third. He succeeded to the earldom at the age of twenty-four, on
the death of his brother John without issue, 20th Jan., 1335-6, and
died, unmarried, 15th Oct., 1361.1 We are, therefore, enabled to fix
the date of the composition of the English Romance with sufficient
accuracy, nor shall we greatly err, if we refer it to the year 1350.
This will agree extremely well with the scanty notices transmitted to
us of De Bohun’s life, which, like most of those relating to the
belted barons of this chivalric period, are chiefly of a military char-
acter.2 Yet it may be doubted whether, as a soldier, the Earl of
Hereford was at any time distinguished, and whether he may not
have been confounded by Froissart with his brother, the Earl of
Northampton. And this conjecture corresponds with the instrument
preserved in Rymer,3 dated 12th June, 1338, by which the King
ratifies Humphrey de Bohun’s resignation of his hereditary office of
Constable of England, in favor of his brother, “tam ob corporis sui
inbecillitatem, quam propter infirmitatem diurnam qua detinetur, ad
officium Constabularii exercendum,” &c. We may, therefore, with

1 Dugd. Baron. i. 184.; Milles, p. 1072.
2 In 1337, he was entrusted with the guard of the important garrison of Perth
in Scotland. (Dugd. Baron. i. 184). Three years afterwards he is said to have taken
a part, together with his warlike brother, William de Bohun, Earl of Northam-
pton, in the battle of the Sluys, fought in the King’s presence, (Froissart, by Lord
Berners, f. 30. Ed. 1525), and commemorated by Laurence Minot, a contemporary
poet. The next year, 1341, we meet with him in the magnificent feast and jousts
held by the King at London in honor of the Countess of Salisbury—the same to
whom the noble Order of the Garter is said to owe its origin (Froissart, f. 46). In
1342, he was ordered to provide forty men of arms and sixty archers for the King’s
service in Brittany, and to attend the Council at London, to treat concerning their
wages. (Dugd. Baron. i. 184). In 1346 he accompanied the King into France to
relieve the town of Aguillon, then besieged by the French, (Froissart, f. 59 b); but
it is not stated by our historians whether he was present at the famous battle of
Cressy, fought shortly after. In 1359, he again attended the King on a similar
expedition, (Froissart, f. 100), and nothing further is recorded of him till his death,
which took place two years afterwards.
3 Vol. v. p. 52.
great probability conclude, that the Earl's weak state of bodily health exempted him from taking an active part in the warfare of the time, although he might have assisted the King with his counsels. To the same cause we may doubtless ascribe that love for literature which induced him to cause the Romance of William and the Werewolf to be translated from the French,—not, as is evident, for his own use, since French was then the language of the Court, but for the benefit of those persons of the middle class, to whom the French language was unknown. By the influence of a similar motive, we possess the translations made by Robert of Brunne at the commencement of this century:

"Not for the lerid bot the lewed,
For tho that in this land wonn,
That the Latyn no Frankys conn,
For to haf solace and gamen,
In felawship whanne thai sit samen."¹

Higden's testimony to the prevalence of French in the education of gentlemen's children at that period is very precise, and it became so much the fashion towards the middle of the century, that a proverb was made of inferior persons who attempted to imitate the practice of the higher classes: "Jack wold be a gentylman yf he coude speke Frensshe."² Trevisa adds, that "this was moche used tofore the grete deth [1349], but syth it is somdele chaunged;" which was, doubtless, accelerated by the Act passed in 1362, ordering all pleadings to be in the English tongue, and much more by the popular compositions of Gower, Chaucer, and the author of Piers Plouhman. From all these circumstances it would seem most probable that the work was executed after the Earl's return from France, in 1349, between which year and his second expedition in 1359, he appears to have resided on his estates. That this style of composition was much admired and encouraged in England during the 14th century is apparent from the alliterative Romances still extant of the period. But it is very seldom we are indulged with the names of the persons by whom or for whom these poems were written, and, in

¹ Prol. to Chron. ap. Hearne, Pref. p. xcvi.
that respect, the present poem becomes more intitled to notice, from its introducing us to a nobleman, whose claims to biography are so very feeble, and who would never otherwise have been known as a patron of literature.

The history, however, of the Romance does not conclude here. We must next trace it in its original form; and here, also, we shall find some circumstances which render it worthy of attention. The origia and progress of French poesy, both of the Trouvères and Troubadours, have been successfully illustrated by Fauchet, Roquefort,¹ De la Rue, Raymonard, and others, but, more particularly, by the authors of the Histoire Litteraire de la France. From these authorities we know that many Romances were composed by the Norman poets previous to the year 1200, which subsequently became the text-books of the English versifiers of the 14th century. Most of these were founded on the two great sources of fiction throughout Europe; the exploits of Charlemagne and his Douze Pairs, and of Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table, amplified from the fictitious histories of Turpin and Geoffry of Monmouth. The chief exceptions to this cycle of poetry at the period we are treating of, are the Romances of Havelok, Horn, Benoît’s Guerre de Troie, Garin le Loherain, Alexander, Athys et Porfilias, Florimond, Gerard de Rousillon, and, perhaps, some few others composed by Raoul de Houdane, and Thiebaut de Mailli, all of which come under the class

¹ When speaking of our English Romances, Roquefort is by no means to be relied on. Thus, describing the English Kyng Horn, he says it was composed in the 8th or 9th century. He then confounds it with the Frankish fragment of Hildebrand and Hathubrand, published by Eckard, and takes Ritson to task, for saying that the French text was the original; who would not, he writes, have committed such an error, if he had consulted MS. Harl. 2253, where the Romance exists in Anglo-Saxon!!! The reply is easy. The copy of Kyng Horn in the Harleian MS. was written about the year 1300, and it was from this very MS. Ritson published his text. The editor of the present volume [i.e. of the edition of 1832] was fortunate enough to discover another copy of Kyng Horn in the Bodleian, of the same age, which, in many respects, gives preferable readings. M. Roquefort goes on to call the Auchinleck MS. a collection of French poetry, &c. See his Dissertation "De l'état de la Poésie Française dans les xii. et xiii. siècles." 8vo. Paris, 1815, pp. 48, 49. [Note. There is a still better copy of Kyng Horn in the Cambridge University Library, first printed for the Bannatyne Club by Mr T. Wright, and reprinted by Mr Lumby in his edition, published for the E. E. T. S. in 1866.—W. W. S.]
of *Romans mixtes*. Among these also we are intitled to place our Romance of William and the Werwolf, the title of which in the original, is, *Roman de Guillaume de Palerne*. The popularity of this singular tale, (which one would suppose was formed on some Italian tradition, picked up by the Norman adventurers in Apulia and Sicily), must have been considerable, since in the ancient inventories of the libraries of the Dukes of Burgundy, taken in 1467 and 1487, we find no less than three copies of it. At present, the catalogues of MSS. in England have been searched in vain for the poem, and in France, on a similar inquiry being made, only one copy has been discovered, preserved in the Bibliothèque de l'Arsenal, at Paris, and, to all appearance, is the same MS. which was formerly at Brussels. By the obliging attentions of M. Van Praet, the distinguished Librarian of the Bibliothèque Royale, the Editor is enabled to give some account of this unique volume. It is a vellum MS. of a small folio size, consisting of 157 leaves, and written in double columns of 31 lines each, towards the close of the thirteenth century. It contains the *Roman d'Escoufle* (fol. 1—77), and the *Roman du Guillaume de Palerne*. The latter commences thus:

Nus ne se doit celer ne taire, &c.,

and ends in the following manner:

Del roi Guillaume et de sa mere,
De ses enfans et de son guerre, (?)
De son empire et de son regne,
Trait li estoires ci a fin.
Cil qui tos iors fu et sans fin
Sera, et pardoune briement,
Il gart la contesse Yolent,
La bonne dame, la loial,
Et il descort son cors de mal.

2 Marked *Belles Lettres*, 178.
3 See the work just cited, p. 323. It is there called of the fourteenth century.
4 Here Sir F. Madden quotes the first 24 lines, which I omit, as, by the great kindness of M. Michelant, of the Bibliothèque Impériale, I am enabled to give much longer extracts; see pp. 1—6, and 19—23, of this book.—W. W. S.]
The lady here referred to can be no other than Yoland, eldest daughter of Baldwin IV., Count of Hainault, and Alice of Namur. She was married, first, to Yves, or Yvon, Count of Soissons, surnamed le Viel, who is characterised by an old Chronicler as a nobleman "de grande largesse, et sage sur tous les Barons de France." On his death, without issue, which took place in 1177, she married, secondly, Hugh Candavene IV., Count of St. Paul, by whom she had two daughters, the eldest of which carried the title into the family of Chastillon. By the union of Judith, daughter of Charles the Bold, with Baldwin I., Count of Flanders, the Countess Yoland claimed descent from the blood of Charlemagne, and by the marriage of her brother Baldwin the Courageous with Margaret of Alsace, heiress of Flanders and Artois, she became aunt to Baldwin VI., Count of Hainault and Flanders, who in 1204 was elected Emperor of Constantinople, and to Isabel of Hainault, who, in 1180, shared the throne of Philip Augustus, King of France. Such was the splendid alliance of the lady to whom our poem owes its origin. In accordance with the prevailing taste of the age, we find the Counts of Hainault and Flanders distinguished patrons of poesy. Chrestien de Troyes is said to have dedicated several of his Romances to Philip of Alsace, Count of Flanders, who died in 1191, and Baldwin V., Count of Hainault,

1 Du Chesne; Hist. de la Maison de Chastillon, fol. Par. 1621. Précées, p. 33.
2 The author of the analysis of this Romance, in the Nouv. Bibl. des Romans, t. ii. p. 41, who copies from the printed prose version, hereafter to be noticed, makes a singular mistake, by confounding the Countess of St. Paul with Yoland, sister of the Emperor Baldwin, and wife of Peter de Courteney, who was subsequently, in her right, Emperor of Constantinople, and died in 1221. He says also, that the Countess Yoland found the Romance among the papers of her nephew after his death [1205], but this is a mere invention of the writer himself, and contradicted by the original text.

3 Hist. Litt. de la France, xiii. 193.
having found at Sens, in Burgundy, a MS. of the Life of Charlemagne, gave the work at his death [1195] to his sister Yoland (the same lady above mentioned), who caused it to be translated into French prose.¹ We have once more to lament that the author of our original (most probably, a native of Artois,) should have concealed his name, but the time of its composition may be assigned between 1178, the probable date of her marriage with the Count of St. Paul, and the year 1200. The Count died at Constantinople before 1206, and Yoland did not, in all probability, survive him long. She was, certainly, alive in 1202, as appears from an instrument in Du Chesne. This Romance may therefore be ranked among the earliest of those composed at the close of the 12th century, and it is surprising it should have been overlooked by Roquefort and the Benedictines.

At a much later period, apparently, at the beginning of the 16th century, this poem was converted into French prose. Three editions of it are known to book-collectors; the first printed at Paris, by Nicolas Bonfons, 4to litt. goth.;² the second at Lyons, 1552, by Olivier Arnoult, 4to;³ and a third at the same place (probably a reprint) by the widow of Louis Coste, s. a. about 1634. The 'traducteur,' in a short preface, tells us he obtained the original by gift of a friend, and finding the language to be "romant antique rimoyé, en

¹ Ib. xiii. 386. Fauchet, Recueil de l'Origine de la Langue Françoise, fol. Par. 1581; p. 34.
² Copies of this exist in the British Museum, and in Mr Douce's library. In the former there is a note in the handwriting of Ritson, who supposes it to have proceeded from the press of Nicholas, the father of John Bonfons, whose son Nicholas printed from about 1550 to 1590. The title is as follows: "L'Historie du noble preux & vaillant Chevalier Guillaume de Palerne. Et de la belle Melior. Lequel Guillaume de Palerne fut filz du Roy de Cecille. Et par fortune & merveilleuse aventure devint vaucher. Et finalement fut Empeur de Rome sous la conduicte don Loupgaroux filz au Roy Despagne." The text is accompanied with wood-cuts. This volume is noticed both by Du Verdier, t. iv. p. 169, Ed. Juvigny, and Bibl. des Romans, t. ii. p. 245, but neither of these writers mention the author. [Note. Besides these three, there is a fourth edition, printed at Rouen by Louys Costé (about 1620 ?), of which there is now a copy in the British Museum (class-mark 12513 e). It is in Roman type, not black-letter, and seems to be merely copied from the first edition. A search for a particular passage showed that both prose versions omit the portion contained in ll. 2449—2567.—W. W. S.]
sorte non intelligible ne lisible," he turned it into modern French, with some additions of his own, for the assistance of those who might wish to read it: "Car en icelle lisant," he adds, "pourra l'on voir plusieurs faictz d'armes, d'amours, & fortunes innumerables, & choses admirables, q'aduindrent au preux & vaillant cheualier Guillaume de Palerme, duquel l'histoire port le nom." He afterwards adverts to the Countess Yoland, and her nephew Baldwin, Emperor of Constantinople, who was slain by the infidels at the siege of Adrianople, in 1205. And adds: "Pour l'honneur de laquelle & de si haut empeur pououez facillement accroistre les choses au present liure contennes." Whether the story will appear quite so credible at the present day is rather questionable. The French bibliographers are silent as to the author of this prose version, and Dr Dibdin's sagacity seems to have failed him here. But at the end of the volume is an acrostic of twelve lines, the first letters of which form the name of Pierre Durand, who, no doubt, is the compiler. Any further information respecting him I have been unable to obtain, unless he is the same with the Pierre Durand, Bailli of Nogent le Rotrou, en Perche, mentioned by Lacroix du Maine, who adds, that he was an excellent Latin poet, and composed many inedited verses both in Latin and French. No notice is supplied of the period at which he lived. It was, most likely, from this prose translation, that the imperfect analysis of the Romance was borrowed, printed in the Nouvelle Bibliothèque des Romans, tom. ii. pp. 41—68, 12mo. Par. an. vi. [1808] where it is placed in the class of "Romans de Férie," although professedly extracted from a MS. of the 14th century.

By the assistance of Durand's version we are enabled to judge of the accuracy of the English versifier, since they both translate from the same text, and it is surprising how closely the latter has adhered to his original. Another advantage gained from it is to supply the hiatus which, unfortunately, ceur in the English poem. To avoid the prolixity of the prose author, the substance of the passages wanting, is here annexed:

1 Bibl. Françoises, tom. ii. p. 272; ed. 1772. He is said also to have had an énigme or rebus in the front of his house, which seems to indicate the same taste which prompted the composition of the acrostic cited above.

[2 These missing passages are supplied in this re-edition from the original rimed French version.—W. W. S.]
"There was formerly a King of Sicily, named Ebron, who was also Duke of Calabria and Lord of Apulia; rich and powerful above all other princes of his time. He married Felix, daughter of the Emperor of Greece, and not long after their union, they were blessed with a son named William, the hero of the present story. The infant was intrusted to the care of two sage and prudent ladies, named Gloriande and Esglantine, who were chosen to superintend his nurture and education. But the brother of King Ebron, foreseeing that his succession to the throne would be now impeded, soon formed a resolution to destroy the boy, and, by means of promises and bribes so wrought on the governesses, that they at length consented to a plan by which both the Prince and King were to be put to death. At that time the Court was held at the noble city of Palerne [Palermo], adjoining to which was a spacious garden, abounding with flowers and fruits, in which the King was often accustomed to take his recreation. But one day, when Ebrons was walking here, accompanied by the Queen and the Prince (then about four years old), attended by the two governesses, an event took place which turned all their joy into the deepest consternation and grief. For, whilst the King's brother and the two ladies were holding a secret conference how to carry their project into execution, a huge werwolf, with open jaws and bristled mane, suddenly rushed forth from a thicket, at which the ladies were so terrified, that they swooned away, and the rest fled, leaving the child alone, who was immediately carried off, without injury, by the beast. The King ordered pursuit to be made, but in vain, for the swiftness of the animal soon enabled him to distance his pursuers; to the great distress of the monarch and his court. The werwolf bore the child away to a place of safety, and thence, pursuing his course night and day, at length conveyed him to a forest, not far from the city of Rome, where he remained some time, taking care to provide what was necessary for his sustenance; and having dug a deep pit, and strewed it with herbs and grass for William to sleep on, the beast was accustomed to fondle the boy with his paws in the same manner a nurse would have done."

Here commences the English Romance, which, with the exception of a folio (or 72 lines) missing between ff. 6—7, proceeds regularly to the end. This second defect occurs at the close of the Emperor's speech to his daughter Melior, and the text again begins with Melior's reproaches to herself for loving William. What intervenes may be easily supplied, even from fancy, but in the prose Romance we read as follows:

"The Emperor's daughter received the infant, which proved of so gentle a disposition, that it seemed to have been bred at court all its life-time. It was soon clothed in dresses of silk and velvet, and
became the plaything of the fair Melior. "Et alors," says the writer, "le faisoit mout beau voir : car en toute la court ny aoit si bel en-
fant que luy, ne si aduenant. Sobre estoit en son manger & boire, facilemens fut apprins à servir les dames à tables; a tous ieux, & à
deuiser & à dire joyeuses sonetes a tous propos." But above all, William studied how best to serve his lady and mistress Melior, whom he loved above every one else. As he advanced in age he
began to share in the chivalrous exercises of the time; to bear arms, ride on the great horse, and practise various feats of strength, all for
the love of Melior, his "mie"; and so great a favourite was he with
all the ladies and demoiselles, that Melior heard of nothing but his
praises. The Emperor, too, was so fond of William, as to keep him
constantly by his side. In the mean time, the Princess would often
withdraw to her chamber to dwell secretly on the personal attrac-
tions and graceful demeanor of William, and was at length so pierced
by love's keen arrow, that she could not refrain from sighing, and
desiring to hold him in her arms. But then again, considering with
herself, that a lady of her noble birth ought not to bestow her affec-
tion on any one but a Knight of her own rank, she often vainly
endeavoured to drive William from her thoughts."

The remaining part of "la belle Melior's" soliloquy will be found in
our poem, and the translation is sufficiently naïve to be interesting
even to those who may, in general, despise the simple language of
our old Romances.

The tradition developed in this story, and which forms its chief
feature, namely, the transformation of a human being into a wolf,
but still retaining many of the attributes of his nature, has been so
learnedly and ably discussed by the author of the Letter annexed to
the present remarks,¹ as to render any additional illustration unneces-
sary. But it may not be improper here to suggest, that the belief in this
notion in the southern provinces of Europe may have been partly
derived through the medium of the Northmen, among whom, as ap-
ppears from various authorities, it was very general. A curious story
of a were-bear in Rolf Kraka's Saga is quoted by Sir Walter Scott,²
which has some slight features of resemblance with our werewolf, and
it is singular, that this metamorphosis should have been accomplished
by striking the person transformed with a glove of wolf-skin. In the

¹ [In the Edition of 1832, a Letter by the Hon. Algernon Herbert, addressed to
Lord Cawdor, on the subject of Werewolves, was annexed to the Preface.—W. W. S.]
² Border Minstr. ii. 110, ed. 1803. [The story, condensed, is given in S.
Baring-Gould's Book of Werewolves, pp. 21—27.—W. W. S.]
Volsunga Saga, also, cap. 12, we read of the similar change of Sigmund and Siufroth into wolves. In general, the transformation was supposed to be accomplished, as in our Romance, by the aid of certain magical unguents. With regard to the supposed form of these werewolves, and whether they differed from those of natural wolves, I have searched many writers, without much success, but Boguet informs us, that in 1521, three sorcerers were executed, who confessed they had often become Loupsgaroux, and killed many persons. A painting was made to commemorate the fact, in which these werewolves were each represented with a knife in his right paw. This picture, we are told, was preserved in the church of the Jacobins, at Pouligny, in Burgundy. One distinctive mark, however, of a werewolf is said to have been the absence of a tail, yet this does not seem to correspond with the vulgar notions on the subject, since in the wooden cut prefixed to the prologue of the prose translation of this Romance, representing the werewolf carrying off the infant Prince of Palermo, there certainly appears a tail of due proportions.

On the style in which this poem is written, and its peculiarities of language, it is needless to dwell long. The history of our alliterative poetry has already been illustrated by Percy, Warton, and Conybeare, and the principle on which it was composed, even to so late a date as the middle of the 16th century, is sufficiently known. The

1 Biörner's Kämpa-Dæter, fol. 1737. [See S. Baring-Gould's Book of Werewolves, p. 18.—W. W. S.]
2 See Discours des Sorciers, par Henry Boguet, 12mo. Lyon, 1608. 2de ed. pp. 363, 369; Verstegan's Restitution of Decayed Intelligence, 4to. Antv. 1605, p. 237; Jamieson's Dictionary, in v. Warwolf, and Nynauld's treatise De la Lycanthropie, 8vo., Par. 1625, where several of these ointments are described.
3 Another account says two sorcerers, named Pierre Bourgot and Michel Verdung. See A Book on Werewolves, by S. Baring-Gould, p. 69.]
4 Boguet, p. 341. Wierus de Prestigiis, lib. v. c. 10.
5 Boguet, pp. 340, 361. [A little girl described a werewolf as "resembling a wolf, but as being shorter and stouter; its hair was red, its tail stumpy, and the head smaller than that of a genuine wolf." See the story in S. Baring-Gould's Book on Werewolves, p. 91.—W. W. S.]
lines in the poem consist of an indeterminate number of syllables, from eleven to thirteen, but sometimes more or less, which, like Piers Plouhman, and other compositions of this class, may be divided into distichs, at the caesural pause, so as to give them the Saxon character on which they are all formed. Thus, for instance:

Hit bi-fel in that forest,
there fast by-side,
There woned a wel old cherl,
that was a couherde,
That fele winterres in that forest
fayre had kepud, &c.

It adds, however, to the value of this Romance, that we have in it the earliest specimen of unrimed alliterative metre yet discovered; for of the other pieces of this kind extant, there is not one which may not be placed subsequent to Piers Plouhman, composed after the year 1362. It is also matter of satisfaction to be able to fix the date of this work prior to the period which produced such writers as Gower and Chaucer. We can now trace the English language step by step from the year 1300, since the writings of Robert of Gloucester, Robert of Brunne, Robert Davies, William of Shoreham, Robert Rolle, and Laurence Minot, lead us up to the precise period when our poem was composed, and which forms the connecting link with Langland and the subsequent writers. Without deciding with Bryant, that our Romance betrays very distinctly a provincial dialect, we may accede to his conjecture of its author being, probably, a native of Gloucestiershire, or an adjoining county; although the orthography by no means betrays that decided western pronunciation.

1 Mr Conybeare is certainly mistaken in assigning the Romances of Sir Gawain and Alexander to the 13th century, as I shall endeavour to show in another place. [See Sir F. Madden's notes to Sir Gawain. See on the other hand my "Introduction to Alisaunzer," (p. xxx), which poem is now found to be somewhat earlier than "William of Palerne."—W. W. S.]

2 The poems of this writer, who flourished from 1320 to 1340, are preserved in an unique MS. belonging to Alexander Henderson, Esq., of Edinburgh, who intends, at some period or other, giving them to the public. [The Religious Poems of William de Shoreham were edited for the Percy Society by T. Wright, M.A., London, 1849. The MS. is now MS. Additional 17376 in the British Museum.—W. W. S.]
which characterises the poems ascribed to Robert of Gloucester. Of his ability as a poet we ought on the whole to form a favorable judgment; and when we consider the fetters imposed on him by the metre he adopts, and by the closeness of his translation, we may readily forgive the repetitions he abounds in, as well as the somewhat tedious minuteness of his narrative. There are some lines, such as for instance these:

And than so throli thoustes thurlen myn herte,
That I ne wot in the world where it bi comse;

and again,

So many maner minstracie at that mariage were,
That when thei made here menstracie, eche man wende
That heven hastili and erthe schuld hurtel to gader;

which would seem to mark the author capable of better things. But the poet shall plead his own apology, in some lines at the close of the Romance:

In this wise hath William al his werke ended,
As fully as the Frensche fully wold aske,
And as his witte him wold serve, though it were feful;

But though the metur be nowst mad at eche mannes paye,
Write him nowst that it wroust, he wold have do beter
If is witte in eny weizes wold him have served.

It would seem from this, as if the alliterative form of alexandrine verse had not yet become popular, and was, in fact, but lately introduced. It is worth observing also, that the number of French words here introduced, will serve to exonerate Chaucer from the charge made against him of debasing the English language by Gallicisms. Such a remark could only have come from one ignorant of what early English literature owes to our continental neighbours.

There are some minuter details respecting the grammatical construction of the poem, which perhaps deserve notice, such as the use of the present tense for the past, as askes, arise, bере, seweth, &c., for asked, arose, bore, served, &c., the use of the singular for the plural (if, indeed, it be not a contracted form of the plural, which I am inclined to believe, like childer from children), in the instances of daie,
dede, burgeys, bere, &c., for dyes, dedes, burgeyses, beres, &c.; but the fact is, these are not peculiarities, but authorised by usage, and many similar forms are retained, even at present, in familiar conversation, particularly among the lower classes.

It only remains to give a brief description of the MS. from which the present poem has been transcribed. It is a moderate-sized folio, written on vellum soon after the middle of the 14th century, and consisting of 130 folios, 82 of which are occupied by the Romance. A quire is wanting at the commencement, and a single leaf shortly after. The text is disposed in single columns, of 36 lines in a page, and the writing is in a remarkably distinct, but rather thick and inelegant, letter, with small blue and red initials.¹...

At the conclusion of the Romance, f. 86, is written in a hand of the early part of the 16th century as follows:² "Praye we all to that heaven kinge that made all yᵉ world off nowght to pardon the solle of humfray boune, that was erle of herford, for hys grete dylygens and peyns takynge to translate thys boke owt off freynche In to englys; to yᵉ entent to kepe youythe from ydellnes, [he] hathe sete furthe thys goodly story, wher apone we should bestow our tym apone the holy day, & suche other tymes when we hane lytle or nothynge a doyng elles, & In so doyng ye may put awey all ydell thoughtes & pensyffnes [of] harte, for the wyche traueyll pray we all to that heynyn kynge to graunt hym eternall lyf for hys good wyll." The rest of the volume is occupied by a portion of the Metrical Lives of the Saints, composed in the reign of Edward the First, and written in a different and rather earlier hand. The lives are those of Judas, Pilatus, Seint Marie Egiptiaik, Seint Alphe, Seint George, Seint Dunston, Seint Aldelme, and Seint Austyn.³ There are several other

¹ I here omit the words "A fac-simile of the first seven lines is subjoined," which are followed by the fac-simile itself. The marks of abbreviation are explained further on; see p. xxiv. A peculiarity of the MS. is that the initial letter of every line is separated from the rest by a slight space, as in Sir F. Madden’s edition. The central metrical pause is nowhere marked by a dot. I am responsible for the insertion of these, which will, I believe, be found to assist the reader.—W. W. S.]

² These words were clearly suggested by the concluding lines of the poem, and it was hence, perhaps, that Bryant adopted the idea that Sir Humphrey translated the French himself.—W. W. S.]

³ There is a poem preceding Judas, and belonging to the same series. See the first lines, &c., on p. vi.—W. W. S.]
perfect copies of these curious legends in existence. With respect to the history of this MS. volume before it was presented to King's College Library, I could gain no information, nor even the name of the donor. There are several names scribbled on the margins, but all of a late period, and of no importance.

The Romance has been printed, as nearly as possible, in exact accordance with the MS., and not the slightest liberty has been taken, either with the punctuation or the orthography. It is, in short, as near a fac-simile of the original as could be imitated by typography. But for the convenience of those unacquainted with the mode of contracting words in old MSS., a list of the abbreviations is placed at the end of these remarks. The Glossary has been compiled with much care, and rendered as comprehensive as possible, but with all due regard to avoid unnecessary prolixity. Only those words are illustrated which appeared absolutely to require it: it being deemed in other cases sufficient to mark the immediate derivation of the term.

The Editor, in conclusion, has to express his thanks to the Rev. George Thackeray, D.D., Provost of King's College, for his permission to copy the MS.; and also to Martin Thackeray, Esq., M.A., Vice Provost; John Heath, Esq., M.A., Dean; and George Crauford Heath, Esq., M.A., Bursar of the College, for their very obliging attentions during the residence made among them.

Frederick Madden.

British Museum, January 6th, 1832.

MARKS OF ABBREVIATION.

Q, con or com, as Qseil, Qfort—[conseil, comfort].

?, er, above the line, as pid'e, daung', man', s'ue, wint'res, p'e, gou'ne, v'aly—[pidere, daunger, maner, sireue, wintere, pere, gouerne, veraly]. After p', re, as p'ステ—[prestely].

ihec, Ihesus.*

p, per or par, as pile, ptizes, spe—[perile, partizes, spere].

[* See note to l. 692. W. W. S.]
NOTE ON THE WORD "WERWOLF."

(Reprinted, with additions, from the edition of 1832.)

BY SIR FREDERICK MADDEN.

This term has the same meaning, and is compounded of the same elements, as the λύκ-ανθρώπος of the Greeks. From the high antiquity of the tradition respecting werewolves, and its having been current among the Celtic as well as Gothic nations, we find the expression in most of the dialects formed from each of the parent languages, and all corresponding to the signification above affixed of man-wolf, i.e. a wolf partaking of the nature of man, or, in other words, a man changed, by magical art, into the temporary form of a wolf. All the northern lexicographers agree in this interpretation, as applied to the Su.-G. varulf, Teut. werewolf, währwolf, Sax. werewulf, Dan. varulv, Belg. vaer wolf, weer wolf, Scotch, warwolf, werwouf, &c., but as the very learned and ingenious author of the Letter addressed to Lord Cawdor on the subject of Werewolves, prefixed to the present poem, [i.e. in the edition of 1832,] has called their united opinion in question, it may be worth while to discuss more fully the truth of the usual derivation. It is true, that the hypothesis of Mr Herbert, which deduces the first part of the phrase from the Teutonic wer, bellum, (whence the French guerre, and the Dutch were have been formed) may be, in some measure, countenanced by the similar compounds of war-boda, a herald, were-man, a soldier, were-wall, a defence in war, &c., as well as by the instance of a warlike machine made by King Edward the First, called war-wolf, and rightly interpreted by Matthew of Westminster lupus belli, p. 449, the boudgare or loup de guerre of Peter Langtoft, vol. ii. 326. But in conceding thus much, it

[ * The mark really is a roughly written a, and means an abbreviation wherein a occurs, commonly ra or ia.—W. W. S.]
must be remarked, that all these latter terms are used in a military sense, and could not otherwise be interpreted. They bear no analogy whatever to the were-wolf of our Poem, which, supposing we receive it in the sense contended for by the author of the Letter, viz. a wolf of war, conveys no distinct or very intelligible meaning. On the other hand, the plain, obvious signification of man-wolf is consonant to the fabulous tradition of the phrase, and to the genius of the languages in which it has been adopted. Only one example of this word in Anglo-Saxon has been found. It occurs in the ecclesiastical laws of King Canute, ap. Wilkins, p. 133, § 26, where, after describing the duties of Pastors of the Church, the text proceeds: “that syndon bisceopas and maesse-preostas, the godcunde heordan bewarian and bewerian sceolan, mid wislican laran, that se wulfreca were wulf to swithe ne slyte, ne to felo ne abite of godcunde heorde,” i.e. “Such are the bishops and priests, who shall guard and defend the holy flock with their wise doctrine, that the furious were-wolf may not too greatly tear or lacerate the members of it.” Here the term is applied to the Devil, not, as Wachter remarks, “quod Diabolus sit lycanthropos, sed quod homines rapiat et occidat;” and the metaphor is evidently drawn from the story of the metamorphosis of a man into a wolf, and subsequent attacks on his own race. The derivation from ver, or wera, a man, does not, as the author of the Letter supposes, rest on slight authority. One glance at Lyke, who has nearly three columns filled with instances, would satisfy him in this respect. It is the Gothic wair (Luke viii. 27, ix. 14), Su.-Goth. wär, Isl. ver, Tent. wer, Francic wara, Celtic Gur, Gier, or Ur, Irish feir, Laci vir, Barb. Lat. bar-o, Span. var-on, and French bar-on; all of which may be referred to a primitive root, expressive of existence. But an unquestionable evidence in the case before us is that of Gervase of Tilbury, who wrote in the reign of Henry II., when the Saxon language had suffered no very material change, and who, assuredly, must be allowed to know the meaning of his own maternal tongue. He writes thus: “Vidimus enim frequenter in Angilia per lunationes homines in lupos mutari, quod hominum genus ‘Gerulfo Galli nominant, Angli vero werwlf dicunt; were enim Anglice virum sonat, wlf, lupum.” Otia Imp. ap. Scriptt. Brunse. p. 895. The modern French express the term by lougarou, concerning which it is truly said by Wachter, “mire nugantur eruditii.” The sum of these nausea may be found collected in Menage, and the Dictionnaire de Trevoux; to which may be added the conjectures noticed in the Cetum Astronomico-Poeticum of Cesinus, p. 295. But the etymology of the Saxon, Teutonic, and Suio-Gothic phrase will here equally well apply. One of the Lays of Marie, an Anglo-Norman poetess, who wrote about the middle of the thirteenth century, is founded on a Breton fable of a werewolf, and she thus alludes to the appellation:

“Bisclauvret ad nun en Breton, Garwaf, l’apelent li Normain;”
NOTE ON THE WORD "WERWOLF."  

Iadis le poeit hume oir,
E souent sulcit aumenir,
Humes plusurs garual denindrent,
E es boscages meisun tintrent;
Garualf cet beste saluage," &c.

MS. Harl. 978. f. 152. b.¹

Roquefort (who has taken some liberties in printing this passage) justly observes, that the Norman Garvalf or Garwaf is derived from, and the same with, the Saxon and Teutonic term. It may, indeed, have been brought by the Normans from Scandinavia, for in Verelius I find "Vargulfur, Brett. Str. [Bretta Streinglehr Roberti Abbatis] Bisclaveretl'iod, Lycantropos. Som lóeperwarg." Index Scytho-Scand. fol. 1691. Whence he has derived the second term, is not clear, nor is it elsewhere explained, but it appears the same with the Bisclaveret of Marie (whose writings could not have been known to Verelius), which is supposed by Ritson, Metr. Rom. iii. 331, to be a corruption of Bleiz-garo, loup sauvage, for which, in more modern times, the natives of Britain used Deu-blez, hommef-loup. See Rostrenen and Pelletier. Garo or Garo, is explained in these writers, apre, cruel, yet there is great reason to doubt whether when coupled with bleiz it has not, like the Norman garou, guaroul, been borrowed from a Gothic source. That loup is superfluous, and that garou of itself expresses man-wolf is evident from the passages in Gervase of Tilbury and Marie, and may be confirmed by the following authorities. "Warou, loup-garou." Dict. Roman, Walon, &c. 4to. Bouillon, 1777. "Warou, weorous, warrou, Garou, espèce de loup." Roquefort. So, in a MS. Life of the Virgin, quoted by Charpentier, in his Supplement to Du Cange,

"De culuevre nous font anguile,
Aignet de Waroul & de leu."

And in the life of St Bernard, Opp. 2, p. 1288. "Transiens autem per quandam villam audivit ab incolis ejusdem loci, duas feras inmanissi-
mas, quæ uuigo varol-i [appellebantur], in nemore proxime desævire." In the same manner the Scotch have formed their Wurl, Wroul, and Worlin, as appears from Jamieson. Roquefort also gives us the term in another shape, "Loup-beroux;" but this again is nothing more than the Teut. Barwolf, homo-lupus, from bar, vir, which is only a dialectical variation of Wer. A similar instance of retaining a pleonastic interpretation is presented in the word luke-warm, where warm is an adjunct of no real utility, since luke means warm by itself, and was anciently so used. For more minute details respecting the etymology here adopted, the philologist is referred to Ihre, Wachter, Kilian, and Jamieson.

Mr Herbert has remarked, at p. 42 of his letter, that "among the Erse or Gael of Erin, the notion of lycanthropy was prevalent; we

¹ In Thom's "Lays and Legends," 1834, is a translation of this Lai de Bisclaveret.
read of their voracious cannibalism on the ocular and undeniable testimony of St Jerome, and another author pretends that a certain Abbot in the district of Ossory had obtained from heaven a decree that two persons of that district (a married couple) should every seven years be compelled to leave the country in the shape of wolves, but, at the end of those years, they might if yet living return to their homes and native shape, and two other persons were condemned in their place to the like penalty for another seven years. J. Brompton, Chron. p. 1078.” In the Latin Poem “de rebus Hibernic admirandis,” of the 12th or 13th century, preserved in the Cotton MS. Titus D. xxiv (and printed in the Reliquiae Antiquae, ii. 103), are some lines descriptive of the werewolf, from which we learn that at that period there were men in Ireland who could change themselves into wolves and worry sheep, leaving their real bodies behind them; and (as in the traditions of other countries), if they happened to be wounded, the injury would also appear on their bodies.1

Allusion is also made to a similar story in Malory’s Morte d’Arthure, where mention is made of “Sir Marrok the good knyghte, that was betrayed with his wyf, for she made hym senen yere a werwolf.” Morte d’Arthure, lib. xix. c. xi.; ed. Southey, ii. 385.

In the “Maister of Game,” a treatise on Hunting, composed for Henry the Fifth, then Prince (I quote from MS. Sloane 60), is the following passage.

1 Sunt homines quidam Scottorum gentis habentes
Miram naturam, majorum ab origine ductam,
Qua cito quando volunt ipsos se vertere possunt
Nequiter in formas lacerantum dente luporum,
Unde videntur oves occidere sepe gementes;
Sed cum clamor eos hominum, seu cursus eorum
Fustibus aut armis terret, fugiendo recurrunt.
Cum tamen hoc faciunt, sua corpora vera reliquant,
Atque suis mandant ne quisquam moverit illa.
Si sic eveniat, ne ad illa redire valebunt.
Si quid eos ledat, penetret si vulnera sequunt,
Vere in corporibus semper cernuntur eorum;
Sic caro cruda hærens in veri corporis ore
Cernitur a sociis, quod nos miramur et omnes. (Rel. Ant. ii. 105.)

Cf. Spenser, View of the State of Ireland, ed. Todd, p. 522 (Moxon, 1856); and O’Brien, Round Towers of Ireland, p. 468.
Speaking of the Wolf—(fol. 43)—

"And somme ther ben . . . that eten children and men, and eten non other fleische from that tyme that thei ben acharmed with mannes fleisch. For rather thei wolden be deed. And thai ben cleped werewolves, for that men schulden be war of hem. And thei ben so cawtelous, that whenne thei sailen a man, thei haue an holding vpon hem or the man se hem. And 3it, if men se hem, thei wol come vpon him gymnously, that he ne be take and slayn. For thei can wonder wel kepe hem from any harneyse that any man bereth," &c.²

INTRODUCTION TO "ALISAUNDER."

§ 1. The fragment of the Romance of Alisaunder at the end of this volume is now printed for the first time from MS. Greaves 60 (in the Bodleian Library), where it was discovered by Sir Frederick Madden. There are no less than four MSS. containing fragments in

¹ An odd etymology! This sentence is quoted by Halliwell, in his Dictionary of Archaisms, s. v. A-charmed, from MS. Bodley, 514.

² It seems unnecessary to enter into further details concerning this curious superstition; for the reader may consult Mr Herbert's Letter (which is too diffuse to be reprinted here); or, if that be not easily accessible, may refer to "The Book of Were-wolves," by S. Baring-Gould, M.A., which the author defines as being "a monograph on a peculiar form of popular superstition, prevalent among all nations, and in all ages." The following references to a few of the most interesting passages may be useful. Herodotus, bk. iv. c. 105 (in which the Neurians are said to change themselves into wolves once a year for a few days); Virgil, Ecl. viii. 95—99; Ovid, Met. i. 237 (where Lycaon, King of Arcadia, is changed by Jupiter into a wolf); a story from Petronius, quoted at length both by Herbert (p. 7), and Baring-Gould (p. 11); Olavus Magnus, Historia de Gent. Septent. Basil. lib. xviii. c. 45; Gervase of Tilbury, Otia Imperialia, Dec. i. c. 15, p. 895; Camden, Britannia, vol. iv. p. 293, ed. 1806; King James I., Demonologie, L. iii. p. 125; &c. See also Thorpe's Northern Mythology. In the present poem, the chief instrument of Alphonse's re-transformation is a ring (l. 4424). The following quotation (which I render into English from the German) may serve to illustrate this:—"By help of a magic girdle or ring men could change themselves and others into the forms of beasts; into wolves, bears, horses, cats, swans, geese, ravens, and crows. The most notorious and perhaps the oldest of these changes is that into the Werwolf or loup-garou. Even this might be classed amongst the instances of Rune-magic (Runezaubers), for runic characters may have been scratched upon the girdle or ring, or magic formularies may have been repeated whilst putting it on." Karl Simroek, Handbuch der Deutschen Mythologie; Bonn, 1855; p. 537. The latter method was the one adopted by Queen Braundins (l. 4433).—W. W. S.]
alliterative verse upon this subject, of which two are merely different copies of the same poem. The four fragments are these: A, that contained in MS. Greaves 60; B, that contained in MS. Bodley 264, which relates to Alexander's visit to the Gymnosophists; C, that in MS. Ashmole 44; and D, a second copy of the same poem as C, in MS. Dublin. D. 4. 12, beginning at a later place, and ending at an earlier one. Of these, A, B, and C seem to be distinct from each other, and by different authors, the last bearing traces of a northern, the former two of a western dialect. The two latter are printed at length in "The Alliterative Romance [? Romances] of Alexander," ed. Rev. J. Stevenson, printed for the Roxburghe Club, 1849. They are, however, of different dates, for the Ashmolean MS. can hardly be older than about A.D. 1450, and "there seems no reason to conclude that the poem is anterior to the date of the MS. from which it is printed," as Mr Stevenson justly observes. Fragment B is probably older. It is bound up with the splendid French MS. of Alexander, one of the chief treasures of the Bodleian library. Sir F. Madden says of it,¹ that "the writing of this portion is of the reign of Henry the Sixth,² nor is there any reason to believe the poem itself very much earlier than the year 1400." It treats at length of Alexander's visit to the Gymnosophists, and of the letters that passed between him and Dindimus, "lord of Bragmanus lond," a subject which is introduced much more briefly in Passus xviii. of fragment C. But fragment A, which is now only found in a copy evidently written in the sixteenth century (the original MS. having been lost), is not only older than both these, but may fairly claim to be the oldest existing specimen of English alliterative verse, unmixed with rime, and of the usual type, since the Conquest.³ This point is, moreover, easily ascertained in the manner following.

§ 2. In the first place, it was conjectured by Sir F. Madden, from internal evidence, that it was written by the author of William of Palerne; and nothing can be stronger than the internal evidence, if

¹ See notes to Sir Gawayne, ed. Madden; Bannatyne Club, 1839; p. 304.
² May it not be even a little earlier?
³ Seinte Marherete, written before A.D. 1200 in a more negligent metre, is here excepted.
it be weighed with sufficient care. The resemblance in the language, style, and method of versification is extraordinary; there is the same "run" upon certain words and phrases, and we even find (what we should hardly have expected to find), lines almost identical in their expression in the two poems. If we find in William of Palerne (which poem I shall briefly denote by Werwolf) the phrase,

"hat pei were semli serued · & sette at here ri3ttes" (l. 4906),

we can match this from Alisaundr, l. 980, by the phrase,

"As soone as pei were sett · & serued too-rightes;"

and it would be difficult to discover two lines more closely related than are these:—

"It betid in a time · tidly thereafter" (Alis. 974), and,

"But þanne tidde on a time · titly þer-after" (Werw. 1416).

But even such coincidences as these are less convincing than the peculiar recurrence of certain phrases, such as to *waite at a window* (see note to Alis. l. 760), *doluen and ded* (see note to Alis. l. 1026), *ned þe nyst* (see note to Alis. l. 817), *liuand lud* (see note to Alis. l. 992), and the like; and also the curious, yet evidently unintentional, resemblance in such lines as,

"He wend to have lau½ þat ladi · loueli in armes"

(Werw. 671); and

"As that Ladie, with loue · too lachen in armes" (Alis. 199); or again, in

"But lete him in his blisse · & his burde alse,
    & touche we ferre · as þis tale forþeres" (Werw. 5396); and,

"But lete hem line in lisse · at oure lorde's wille,
    Of þe rich emperour of rome · redeliche to telle" (Werw. 5466); as compared with—

"Now let wee þis hued · lengen in bliss,
    And sithe myng wee more · of þis mery tale" (Alis. 44).

Indeed, it seems useless to adduce many further proofs; for, if any reader has any lingering doubts upon the subject, he may convince himself by trying to rewrite a portion of the glossary; for, in construct-
ing this, the language of the poems is at once found to be identical, as far as the subject-matter permits it. It may be noted, too, that the dialect is the same; e.g. one curious characteristic of the "Werwolf" is the plural imperative in -es, which reappears in kares = care ye (Alis. 563), and in kaires = kaires = go ye (Alis. 623); also present participles both in -and and -ing are found in both poems. Assuming then that these poems are by the same author—and, consequently, that our poet, known to us only by the name of William, has the credit of being the earliest writer (as far as we know at present) in the usual alliterative metre—the question still remains, which poem did he write first? On this point I have, myself, no doubt, feeling sure that the "Alisaunder" is the older poem. It is very curious to remark how often it presents fuller inflexions and older forms, and this, too, in spite of the fact that we have only a late sixteenth-century copy of it, whilst of the other poem we have a MS. two centuries older. Most noticeable among these are the infinitives in -en, such as lachen, thinken, &c., and in many other cases we find -en where in the other poem we more commonly find -e. The numerous cases where in the "Alisaunder," the final -e is omitted, can be accounted for by the fact of the MS. being a late copy. And this is the right account to give; for the preservation of the -en ending shews that the final -e's should have been preserved also. Besides this, the spelling of the MS. presents one very curious mark of antiquity, viz., the use of the letter ð or ð to represent Th or th; see note to l. 33 on page 236. I know of no instance of the use of this letter in a verse composition.

1 A comparison of the metre of the poems affords a test of much subtlety, and requiring much care and patience. The details are tedious; I can only say here that I have considered this, and believe their general structure of versification to be identical, and to have, at the same time, some peculiarities that are not common to all alliterative poems. They differ, e.g., from Piers Plowman, though that too was written by a William, and not long afterwards.

Hence also the reason for printing the two poems together, viz. because of their common authorship, is at once apparent; and both poems gain by it. The language of the "Werwolf" is often well illustrated by that of the "Alisaunder," whilst, on the other hand, an editor can never be so well fitted to edit the latter poem accurately as at a time when he happens to know hundreds of lines of the former by heart.

2 The only instance of i- used as a prefix to a verb in the infinitive, occurs in Alis. l. 607.
INTRODUCTION TO "ALISAUNDER."

(excepting here) later than about A.D. 1300, in MS. C.C.C. 444, containing the "Story of Genesis and Exodus," edited by Mr Morris for the E. E. T. S. in 1865. There is yet another point which may have some weight, viz., that our author must surely have produced something of importance before he was selected by the Earl of Hereford to translate a poem of such length as "Guillaume de Palerne;" and that something was really expected of him, from his known reputation, seems to be implied by his apology for himself and his versification at the end of the latter work (Wermolff, II. 5521—5526). If this be thought likely, if his skill in translation was a known fact, it may have been that his reputation was due to his "Alisaunder," as to the length of which, in its original condition, we know nothing more than this, viz., that the 1249 lines still preserved represent but a very small fraction of the whole story.

§ 3. It is necessary to describe the MS. Greaves 60 somewhat further. It is a small and shabby-looking MS., about 8 in. by 6, apparently bought to be used as a note-book or exercise-book, as it contains notes upon Virgil's Æneid, Terence's Andria, &c.; and the English romance was afterwards copied out wherever there was a blank space for it, which accounts for there being only three lines of the text on fol. 7. The English occupies fol. 1 b—6 a, part of fol. 7, fol. 7 b—8 b, fol. 11 a, part of fol. 11 b, fol. 12 a—16 a, fol. 16 b—20 a (which portion is scored at the side, as being out of place), and fol. 21 a—24 b. The last two portions require to be transposed, and then 20 a comes last, fol. 20 b being blank. Even when this is done, a portion is lost between fol. 24 b and fol. 16 b (which I have supplied from a French prose text), and another portion (probably a large one) is lost at the end. On the fly-leaf is, besides other things, "Ye schoole of Rhetorik, or Ye skyll too speake well: denied and made by H. G." This and a title about a "compendium of Virgil's Æneid," are scratched through, and the following written below in the same hand—"Radulphus de Sto Albano eiusdem fani Albani monachus et Abbas ex pompeio, Trego, Origine, Josepho, Isidoro, Beda, et alijs hanc historiam de Rebus gestis Alexandri Macedonis edidit; obijt anno domini mclii, in eodem coenobio sepultus, sub stephano Anglorum rege. Balæus." Assuming, for convenience, that H. G. are the scribe's own
initials, we see that H. G. has merely copied the above title from Bale, and that there is not any necessary connection between it and the poem which he partly copied out. Nevertheless, the clue was worth following up, and I found that a MS. in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, No. 219, has for its title—“Incipit hystoria regis Macedonum, Philippo filiiique eius Alexandri Magni excepta (sic) de libris pompeii, trogi, orosii, iosephi, ieronimi, solini, augustini, bede, & ysodori.” It is a Latin MS., beautifully written in a hand of the fourteenth century, containing the history of Alexander in four books, and followed by the letters of Alexander to Dindimus, and of Dindimus to Alexander. That our poet made use of this compilation is very probable; he says (Alis. l. 458) that he translates from Latin books, and the principal of these seem to have been, (1) the compilation of Radulphus; (2) the history of Orosius; and (3) the “Historia Alexandri de præliis.” The two former supplied him with the more historical part of his story, such as the particulars about Eurydice, Philip, Byzantium, &c.; the latter supplied him with the legendary portion. He seems to have considered them all equally veritable, and to have turned from one to the other at pleasure, as I have pointed out in the notes. Of the various Latin forms of the legend, the “Historia de præliis,” as it may conveniently be called for distinctness,1 is evidently the one he has most closely followed. It is also evident that the writer of the poem preserved in MS. Ashmole 44 followed the very same original, and it is interesting to compare the two translations, and to observe how far the exigencies of the metre have caused them to vary. Returning to “H. G.” after this digression, a few remarks must be made upon his method of copying the poem. He seems to have done it upon the whole very carefully, though he has sometimes misread his original (writing kipen for kîpîn, ferkerd for ferkerd, and the like), and, in particular, has left out a large number of the final -e’s, besides occasionally omitting whole lines. In several cases, he has modernized or modified the spelling, and in many instances has given us both the forms, as, e. g. in l. 767, where we have liche with ke over the che, thus rightly

1 It may be known by the initial words—“Sapientissimi egiptii scientes mensuram terre,” &c. I have used the printed copy of 1490.
explaining liche as meaning like. All the variations of importance are noticed in the foot-notes. The handwriting is peculiar, but not uncertain, though he at times used a straight horizontal stroke like a hyphen to denote an m or an n, joining it on to the letter following. Over many of the long vowels he has made a circumflex, writing "sœule" in l. 41, "fœne" in l. 83, "gœse" in l. 409. As this seemed to be a mere freak of his own (for it is sometimes wrongly introduced), I have not noticed it. The only other point of interest is that he marked all the harder words by underscoring them, evidently with the view of finding out their meaning. The list of these has some importance, for we may conclude that such words were so far obsolete about the time of James I. as to be unintelligible to a man interested in our older literature. It is on this account that I subjoin the list, in alphabetical order, referring the reader to the Glossarial Index for further information. It is as follows, omitting a few which seem to have been marked for some other reason. Alosed, Bed, Bern (l. 219), Beurde, Chees, Cojly, Deraine, Derie, Fede, Fode, Fonde, Frots, Gamus (read Gainus,) Gist, Gome, Graithes, Grathly, Grempe, Hende, Hendely, Hole, Kîpe, Kith, Lache, Laught or Lauht, Lelich, Menskfull, Of-souhte, Pris, Purlich, Queme, Rigge, Rink or Renk, Rode, Segges, Spedly, Stîghtlich, Swîpe, Trie, To-rihtes, prîstliche, prîtliche, Ungome, Walter, Wores, Was, Yeeme. Nearly all of these were certainly as unintelligible to most men two hundred and fifty years ago as they are now, though some may exist in provincial dialects. Several of them may have been unintelligible even a century earlier.

§ 4. THE STORY OF "ALISAUNDER."

The contents of the fragment may be briefly described thus. It commences with a mention of Amyntas, and his sons Alexander and Philip. Philip ascends the throne of Macedonia, conquers Larissa and Thessalonica, weds Olympias, sister of the King of Molossis, takes Methone, and helps the Thebans against the Phocians; all of which is from Radulphus, Orosius, and like sources. This portion includes ll. 1—451. Then begins the legend, from the "Historia de preliis," occupying the portion in ll. 452—899; and telling how Nectanabus, King of Egypt, fled in disguise from his own country
for fear of the Persians, and, coming to Macedonia, beguiled Queen Olympias by his magic arts, and, personating the god Ammon, became the father of Alexander. He also appeared before Philip's army in the guise of a dragon, and, fighting for him, greatly discomfited the Lacedaemonians and Phocians. Next, after an historical account (ll. 900—954) of the occupation of the Pass of Thermopylae by the Athenians, and of Philip's treachery and cruelty towards the Thebans, we return to the legend (ll. 955—1201) and learn how Philip greeted Olympias, how Nectanabus appeared once more as a dragon at a feast given by Philip, and how Philip was one day surprised to find that a bird had laid an egg in his lap, out of which issued a serpent which, after awhile, tried to re-enter the egg-shell, but died before it could do so; an omen that Alexander would die before he could return to his own land. Next Alexander is born, and carefully educated. One evening he goes out with Nectanabus to view the stars, and, hearing the magician say that he feared he would die by the hand of his own son, drowns him in a ditch to prove him a liar; but the drowning man cries out that he has told the truth. Next follows the story of the taming of Bucephalus, which bears some points of resemblance to the story of the taming of King Ebrouns' horse by William of Palerne (see p. 107). In the last paragraph the poet returns to historical details, and begins to narrate the siege of Byzantium by Philip, at which point the poem abruptly ends.

§ 5. This is not the place to discuss the long and difficult question of the "Alexander Romances." Roughly speaking, the form of the story here adopted—I speak of the legendary portion—is derived from the Greek text known as the Pseudo-callaisthenes, of which the best MS. is the one now numbered 1711 in the Imperial Library at Paris, beginning—"Oi σωφότατοι Αλιγάπτων θεών ἀπόγονοι, κ.τ.λ."; but I have referred in the notes to another MS. (Supplem. No. 113) in the same collection, as a portion of this latter one has been printed.¹

¹ "A dragon's fiery form belied the god;
Sublime on radiant spires he rode,
When he to fair Olympia prest," &c.
Dryden; Alexander's Feast.

¹ See notice on p. 236.
The three principal Latin versions hence derived are (1) that by Julius Valerius; (2) the "Itinerarium Alexandri" (relating to Alexander's wars); and (3) that by the Archpresbyter Leo, which is also known as the "Historia de preliis." With the second of these we have here nothing to do. The first begins—"Ægypti sapientes, sati genere divino," &c.; the third begins—"Sapientissimi Egyptii, scientes mensuram terræ," &c. The portion supplied to complete the story at p. 209 is from a French version, as contained in MS. 7517 in the Imperial library. I have already said that our text follows the third rather than the first of these Latin versions.

For further information, see Zacher, Pseudo-callisthenes, Halle, 1867; the editions of Julius Valerius by Angelo Mai (Milan, 1817), and Karl Müller (Paris, 1846); the Old High German version edited by H. Weismann (Frankfort-on-the-Main, 1850), the second volume of which, in particular, contains much information; the introduction to Kyng Alisaunder in Weber's Metrical Romances, &c. The edition called "Li Romans d'Alixandre, par Lambert li Tors et Alixandre de Bernay," ed. H. Michelant, and published by the Literary Society of Stuttgart in 1846, has not much to do with our present poem, as it declares Nectanabus not to have been Alexander's father. I have already enumerated the alliterative romances extant in English. Besides these there are, in rimed metre, the "Kyng Alysaunder" printed by Weber, and other poems referring, not to the infancy of Alexander, but to his acts and death, such as, e.g., "The Buik of the most noble and vailzeand Conquerour Alexander the Great," printed at Edinburgh for the Bannatyne Club in 1831, being a reprint from The Romaunce of Alexander, containing the Forray of Gadderis, first printed at the same place by A. Arbuthnot in 1580. There is also a fragment about the death of Alexander in "Ancient Metrical Romances from the Auchinleck MS."; Abbotsford Club, 1836; and there may be others, for I have not thought it necessary to make further search.

§ 6. ON THE DIALECT OF THE POEMS.

The spelling of the "Alisaunder" being uncertain owing to the lateness of the MS., it is not necessary to say more about its dialect
The plurals of nouns generally end in -es, but there are several plurals in -us, such as dedus; in -is, as bestis (l. 181), and talis; in -ys, as buschys (21); in -en, as stepchildren, eijyen (eyne, eyes); and even in -esse, as bodiesse, lordesse (4539), heizresse (4778), with which should be compared the curious spelling antresse for antres or aunteres = she ventures. The plural of hons is the same as the singular; the plural of fo is both fon (or fone) and fos. Also ken, kin, and kyn occur for kine. The genitive singular ends commonly in -es, but sometimes in -is, as in godis (266), goddis (254); cf. goddes (340). We also find the genitive forms fader, moder, dou3ter, William, Marie, sonne.

As regards adjectives, we may note the comparatives herre, nerre (higher, nearer), and the superlatives frelokest and manlokest, the former of which is used adverbially. The endings -ly and -liche are used both for adverbs and adjectives, and without any distinction. Eche a is used for each; selue sometimes has the sense of very (1149); whilst wicke a answers to the German was fürf, what sort of a, as in l. 3354. Of and pa are used sometimes for that; pis as well as pise is used to mean these; po to mean those; pilke is used in the plural, and swiche is used to mean such. For I, the forms are i, y, ich; for thou, we have jou, pow, pou3; pl. ze in the nominative, zow, zou3, ow (l. 106) in the dat. and accusative. The third personal pronoun is he, gen. his, is, or hisse; dat. and acc. hym, kim: feminine, sche, che, she (and hue in the "Alisaunder"); gen. dat. and acc. her, hir, here, hire; neuter, hit, it; acc. hit, it. Plural nom. pei, pai, pey; gen. here, her; dat. hem (and once paim); acc. hem. Min is a possessive pronoun, as min hert, min avowe. The pronoun of the second person is often joined on to the verb, as in artow, knowestow, bestow, scidestow, schaltow or schalstow, findestow, witow or wittow;

1 I apologize for the slip-shod name here given to the poem, and which is here, and elsewhere throughout the volume, used for brevity's sake, and because it cannot be mistaken. It is an abbreviation of "William and the Werwolf," the title used by Sir F. Madden in the former edition. Strictly, however, the true title is—William of Falerne.
and often also to the word *pat*, as *patou* or *patow*. *Ho* is used for *who*, *ho-so* for *who-so*, *whos* for *whose*, *wham* for *whom*.

But the most noticeable and distinctive endings are found amongst the verbs, and I pass on to them as being of more interest. The infinitive ends in *-en* or *-e*, but occasionally also in *-y* or *-ye*, as *deseyg, wonye*; cf. *derie* in *Alis. 1240*. In the present tense, 2nd person, we find both *-est* and *-es*; the former occurring frequently, as in *kupest* (603), *kowest* (330); examples of the latter are *trestes* (970), *knowes* (1174). They seem to be used indifferently, for *tellest* and *trestes* occur in the same line, and *hast* in l. 604 is followed by *pow has* two lines lower. In the same way, we find *grettes* and *menskfulles* written for *grettest* and *menskfullest*, showing that the pronunciation of the *t* was very slight. Besides which, the vowel may have been pronounced thickly or indistinctly, thus accounting for such a form as *clepus* (249). In the 3rd person singular, we find *-es*, as in *longes* (961); *-is*, as in *hentis* (907); and *-us*, as in *sittus* (446); as well as *-þ*, as in *knoweþ* (559). In the 3rd person pl. we have *-un*, as in *clepun*; *-en*, as in *purlen*; *-e*, as in *singe*; *-us*, as in *tellus* (198); *-es*, as in *calles* (239), *longes* (360). The following are examples of the past tense singular; strong verbs, *gaf, zald, founde, seize, lad, dede, kom, rod, lep, aros, &c.;* weak verbs, *grette, lerde, pleide, clipte, praide, clepud, &c.* The plural generally ends in *-en* or *-e*, but the *-e* is occasionally dropped. Examples are *bleseden, gretten, sewede, come, told* (1366). But we should especially observe the endings of the imperative mood plural, which besides the ending *-eth*, as in *preieth* (164), *sendeþ* (2068), *witþ* (2069), *troweþ* (2112), frequently takes the ending *-es*, as in *listenes, gretes, mornes, standes, awakes, fodes, leses, leues, &c.* It is worth notice, further, that the very same word takes both forms; for we find both *preieth* and *preiþes* (which, however, is written *preiþed*, 5529), *listenes* and *lustenþ*, and *gretes* in l. 355 is followed by *greteþ* in l. 359.¹ We should also especially note the forms of the present participle, which ends in *-and*, as *deland, wepand, glimerand, liand, ligand, lourande, liuand*; in *-end*, as *toucend, horiend, lastend, slepend, hotend, braundissende*; occasionally in *-inde*, as *lorkinde, sikinde,*

¹ So also *longþes*, 4348; *longþep*, 4353.
gapind; and sometimes in -ing. Here again, the same word takes all
the forms; for we find sikande, sikand, sikende, sikinde, and siking.
The more usual form seems to be in -and, but the pronunciation of
the a seems to have been obscure, and we may consider the usual
ending to be 'nd; for if we throw the accent on the first syllable, it
is not easy to enunciate the unaccented vowel very clearly. Examples
of past participles are slawe, sleie, slayn, schapen, bi-hold, portreide,
glanded, maked, take, arise (1297), lore (1360), bore, seie, seizen,
y-charged, y-clepsd. The ending -e in the infinitive is sometimes
dropped. For the forms of the auxiliary and anomalous verbs, see
the glossary; s.v. Ben, Can, Dar, Mot, Mow, Out, Schul, Thort,
Wite, Wol. Here also numerous forms occur; e.g. the present plural
of to be is ben, bene, buþ, arn, and aren.

The word ne often coalesces with the verb following; hence nis
(ne is), nas (ne was), nere (ne were), nath (ne hath), nadde (ne
hadde), nel (ne wil), nold (ne wold), not (ne wot), nist (ne wist).
A few peculiarities of spelling may be noted. The sh sound is
denoted both by sch and ch; hence shamly, chold, shortly, are put
for schamly, schold, schortly. Also scheche is written for seche. C
sometimes takes the place of s, as in plece, sece, wise. Wh is written
for w, as in whar (were), and whicys. Th is sometimes used where
we should expect t, as in the Romans of Partenay; thus wisthli is
put for wistli, mïsth is used to mean (1) might. V is sometimes
found for a final u, as in nor, hor, inor. H occurs at the beginning
of words where it should not, as in hordere, hende (end), held (eld,
old age). N is prefixed to ei3, ones, oþer, &c., thus forming nei3, nones,
wóþer, in places where it really belongs to the word preceding. Be
is joined sometimes to the word following, as in bæmperour, þerþe, þende.
For the careful and exact manner (exact, probably, because the scribe
did it without thinking and as a matter of course), in which nay is
distinguished from no, and ze from zis, see the Glossarial Index. For
the distinction between pou and ze, see p. xli.

In what part of England, then, was the poem written? The
forms seem to be mainly West Midland, with admixture both of
Northern and of Southern ones. The frequency of the imperatives
in -es, and other indications, lead Mr Morris to call it a specimen of
Shropshire dialect,\footnote{Compare Audelay's poems (in the Shropshire dialect), ed. J. O. Halliwell, for the Percy Society. It may be said that, if the scribe of "William of Palerne" lived in Gloucestershire, he may yet have been a Shropshire man; but this argument loses in force if it has to be often appealed to in cases of difficulty. We must first try to reconcile the evidence we possess, before rejecting any portion of it. In the present instance, the MS. is a very good one. It may be confidently expected, however, that something tolerably definite may be known about English dialects at no very distant period, and the present question may be more easily decided.} whilst Sir F. Madden subscribes to the opinion of Bryant, that it may belong to Gloucestershire; and, indeed, Gloucester is the only place which is mentioned in it. There is also, perhaps, some significance in the fact that the MS. contains, besides "William of Palerne," some poems that have been attributed to Robert of Gloucester. In either case, we are sure of the locality within the compass of a county or two, and may, I think, call it West Midland without error, though the exact border between the West Midland and Southern cannot be expected to be very clearly defined. It may be remarked that both Gloucester and Wheathenhurst (where Sir Humphrey de Bohun's mansion was situated) lie close to the important river Severn, and it is possible that the dialect of that part of Gloucestershire may have been affected by that circumstance, just as we often trace the influence of the Danish element near our sea-coasts.

The real difficulty consists in this, that it is hard to account for the use of the Northumbrian plural-ending -es at a place situated so far to the South. A comparison of the vocabulary with the glossary of Shropshire words in Hartshorne's *Salopia Antiqua* shewed less resemblance than I had expected to find; yet it may be useful to mention that his list contains (and sometimes illustrates) the following words in particular, viz. :- *Bell* (vb.), *Chall* (= *Chaul*), *Chip*, *Clout*, *Cratch*, *Delue*, *Dever*, *Eam* (*Eme*), *Gain* (cf. *Gaynest*), *Haws*, *Heps* (*Hepus*), *Hye* (to hasten), *Lap* (vb.), *Learn* (to teach), *Litherly* (*Luperly*), *Mase*, *Pill* (vb.), *Rin*, *Shaws*, *Sike*, *Stive*, *Thirl*, *Twine*, *War*.

§ 7. ON THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN "THOU" AND "YE."

The distinction between the use of *thou* and *ye* (with their accompanying singular and plural verbs) is so well kept up throughout
these poems that it would not be well to lose so good an opportunity of pointing it out. It was one of those niceties of speech which it was the poet's especial business to observe. The clearest way of pointing out the distinction is to tabulate the best examples of it.

calls the King of Egypt—ye; the king scornfully replies with thou. The same Nectanabus, who “speaks lordly,” and is too proud to call Queen Olympias Madam, and will only call her Lady, audaciously addresses her as thou, but there are in one or two places exceptions which shew a corruptness in the text. She replies with thou, as a lady should who would preserve her dignity. As for Alexander, he coolly uses thou to everybody, and especially to his father, l. 1198, and his mother, l. 1103. Besides the insight we thus get into our forefathers' ways of speech, this investigation may serve to remind us editors that we are not to mistake you for thou, as in some MSS. is easily done, and that the frequent interchange of the forms is the result, not of confusion, but of design and orderly use.

In the present edition, every variation of spelling has had its own references assigned to it in the Glossary, at the cost of no small amount of labour; I hope this may prove of use to the student of our old English orthoëpy.

CORRECTIONS AND EMENDATIONS.

The only misprints of importance (of which I am aware) are these three:

William of Palerne, l. 2160. For 3ister-nene read 3ister-neue.
              l. 4054. For Karpe read Karpe.
              l. 4827. For pempour read pempour.

A few misprints occur of a more trivial nature, of which the principal are these:

William of Palerne, l. 46. For a baye read a-baye. L. 143. Insert a hyphen in “man-kynne.” 219. The metrical dot should precede “mijt,” instead of following it. 225. Insert a comma after “fair.” 787. Fol. 16 begins with this line, not with the next. 1004. Insert a hyphen in “middel-erpe.” 1418. The MS. has “sofoû,” not “sofou.” 1576. No comma at the end of this line.
1597. The metrical dot should precede "reken." 1624. There should be a full stop at the end of the line. 1860. Insert a comma at the end of the line. 2100. For on-liue read on liue. 2204. This is correctly printed, according to the MS. But I propose to read, "but the witty werwolf, &c." 2430, 2560. Insert a hyphen in "bere-felles." 2580. Insert a comma after "crist." 3116. The metrical dot should precede "ri3t." 3995. Insert a hyphen in "per-tille." 4068. Insert quotation-marks at the end of the line. 4263 (note). For 3622 read 3623. Page 220, l. 6. For Altera read altera.

Lines 5346, 5347, 5348 of William of Palerne rime together. This was, no doubt, unintentional.

In l. 396 of Alisaunnder, the reading hem is necessary to the alliteration.

In the Glossary, the word Hastely is said to occur in l. 233. This should be corrected to 323.

By an unfortunate mistake on my part, the following notes by Sir F. Madden reached me too late for insertion in the Glossary.


"Peter. See the Glossary to Syr Gawayne, in v. Peter, where other instances are given."
ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

Since 'William of Palerne' was printed in 1867, the whole of the French poem, mentioned at p. iii, § 3, has been edited by M. Michelant, and can now be compared with the English version.

In my preface to 'Alexander and Dindimus,' p. xi, I have shewn that it has been proved by Dr. Trautmann that my former view as to the authorship of the fragment of Alisaunter, printed in the present volume, is incorrect. The 'Alisaunter' fragment is not by the same author as William of Palerne; whilst, on the other hand, it is by the same author as the fragment called 'Alexander and Dindimus.' See further in the same preface.

CORRECTIONS AND EMENDATIONS.

If the reader will kindly turn to p. xliii, he will find a short list of 'Corrections and Emendations.'

Besides these, I have a few further corrections to make, as follows.

Page ii, l. 26. For alogether read altogether.

P. xxix. See also Werwolf in Nares' Glossary, and the numerous references to lycanthropia in Burton, Anatomy of Melancholy, Part I, sect. 1, mem. 1, subsect. 4.

P. xxxiii, l. 3 from bottom. For Macedonis, read Macedonis.

P. 6, l. 3. The word indistinctly printed should be fast.

P. 42, l. 1069. Restore the MS. reading "wijj ouer-gart gret ost," &c. Dr. Morris points out that ouergart occurs as a substantive, meaning arrogance, in Seinte Marharete, ed. Cockayne, p. 16, l. 13. See also Castle of Love, ed. Weymouth, l. 993, and Ormulum, l. 8163. Ouergart also occurs as an adjective, meaning arrogant or overweening. "For tho God seih that the world was so ouer-gart," i. e. for when God saw that the world was so overweening; Political Songs,
ed. Wright, p. 341, l. 391. Hence overgarr gret may well mean overweeningly or excessively great, very large. See Mr. Cockayne's note at p. 106 of Scinte Marharet.

P. 58, l. 1624. Add a full stop at the end of the line.

P. 66, first side-note. The mark " should precede I would.

P. 84, l. 2520. Mr. Wedgwood explains cayreden by turned, i.e. charred, and thinks that we here have the etymology of to char. But cayreden cannot well mean charred in this passage, but only 'carried.' The use of cayren for carien, to carry, is curious, but not without authority. See P. Plowman, B. ii. 161, where most MSS. have kairen, but two MSS. have carien; and all the MSS. have carien in the same, A. ii. 132.

P. 112. Note 4 should be called note 1.

P. 154, l. 4827. For jempour read jemp[er]our.

P. 168, third side-note. For Melior read Florence.

P. 203, l. 837. For has te read haste.

P. 207, l. 967. For ilt read gilt.

P. 238, note to l. 234. For Sededen read Seseden.

GLOSSARY.


Half. Add—behalf, 4831; pl. halues, sides, +344.

Hap. Add—pl. happes, +107, +385.

Hastely. In the references, for 233 read 323. Add—Hauntes, pr. s. F. practises, +815.

Malskrid.—We find also, in the very old glossary (8th century) printed in Wright's Vocabularies, vol. ii, p. 108, the entry— 'Fescinatio, malscrung'; where Fescinatio appears to be an error for fascinatio, a bewitching.

Stiued means simply 'stiffened'; and is wholly unconnected with Swed. stufva, &c., cited under the word.

Won. This signifies a quantity or abundance, as stated. See wán in Stratmann. It is not the same word as A.S. winn, but it may, perhaps, be from the same verb winnan.

March, 1881.
William of Palerne;

or

William and the Werwolf.

[Three leaves being lost at the beginning of the MS., their place is here supplied from the French Text.]

[No one should keep it to himself or be silent,
If he knows something that will please,
But should declare it openly;
For he hides and loses his knowledge
Who does not declare it openly,
In the presence of people
Wherefore I will not hide my knowledge
That all the wicked may come to naught;
And that those who would fain hear me
May be able to learn knowledge and what is good.
For knowledge hidden and unheard
Is just like, in my opinion,
Many treasures that are shut up,
Which do good or advantage to no one;
Just as they are when thus enclosed.
So is it with concealed knowledge;
Wherefore I will not conceal mine.
Thus it pleases me to recount
According to my knowledge and memory
The event of an ancient story,
KING EMBRONS HAD A SON NAMED WILLIAM.

That happened once in Apulia
To a king who ruled the land.
The king was named Embrons;
Very exceeding great was his power;
He governed well his country in peace,
And was of exceeding great renown.
He had to wife a beauteous queen,
A gracious dame of noble origin;
And who was daughter to a rich emperor,
Who ruled the dominion of Greece.
Felise was the lady's name;
She was much loved in her kingdom.
They had but one only child,
A little lad, not very tall.
The prince was four years old,
And was marvellously fair.
William was the child's name.
But the queen very specially (?)
Has entrusted him to two ladies
Whom she brought from her own country.
One is named Gloriande,
The other was called Acelone.
To these she entrusts him, to keep him,
To teach and instruct him.
To shew and instruct him the law,
As one ought to teach a king's son.
In them she confided,
But was betrayed and defrauded
And deceived shamefully;
You shall very soon hear how.
King Embrons had one brother,
To whom the kingdom would fall;
And he bribed and promised so much,
And so contrived and managed
With the guardians who kept the child,
That they have told him they would kill it.
et le roi meisme ensement.  
ja ont porquis lenherbement  
dont il andoi mort recevront,  
se Diex nel fait, li rois del mont.  

En Palerne orent sejorne,  
un mois entier en la cite,  
entre le roi et la roine.  
desous le maistre tor marbrine,  
ot .i. vergier merveilles gent,  
tot clos de mur et de cyment;  
si ot mainte sauvage beste.  
.i. jor par une haute feste  
i vint esbanoier li rois,  
si chevalier et si borjois;  
et maint baron i ot venu,  
la roine meisme i fu.  

celes qui lenfant ont en garde,  
(cui male flambe et maus fus arde !)  
lont mene avoec lautre gent;  
mais por ce ne le font noient  
que sel seussent la dolour,  
qui de lenfant avint le jor.  

Par le vergier li rois ombroie,  
et la roine, a mult grant joie.  
mais ne sevont com lor grans dex  
lor est presens devant lor ex.  
lenfes florietes va cuellant,  
de lune a lautre va jouant.  
atant esgardent la ramee,  
saut un grans leus, goule baee,  
a fendant vient comme tempeste;  
tuit se destornent por la beste;  
devant le roi, demainement,  
son fil travers sa goule prent,  
atant sen va; mais la criee  
fu apres lui mult tost levee,  

And the king himself at the same time.  
They have already provided the poison  
From which they will both receive death,  
If God, king of the world, permits it.  
In Palerme they have dwelt.  
A whole month in the city,  
With the king and the queen.  
Beneath the chief marble tower  
Was an orchard wondrously fair,  
All enclosed with walls and mortar;  
There was many a wild beast there.  
One day, on a high festival,  
The king came there to divert himself,  
His chevaliers and his burgesses;  
And many a baron had come there,  
The queen herself was there.  
Those who have the child in charge,  
(Whom evil flame and evil fire burn!)  
Have brought him along with the rest;  
But they would have done nothing of the kind,  
Had they but known the sorrow  
That happened that day because of the child.  
In the orchard the king shades himself,  
And the queen, with very great joy.  
But they know not how their great grief  
Is present to them, before their eyes.  
The child goes gathering flowers,  
And playing from one to the other.  
Just then they look at the bushes,  
A huge wolf, with mouth open, leaps in,  
Comes in at the opening like a tempest;  
All turn aside to avoid the beast;  
Before the king, noiselessly,  
He takes his son across his mouth,  
And then makes off; but the cry  
Was very soon raised after him.
lieve li dels, lieve li cris

del fil le roi qui est trais.

la roine souvent sescrie,

“aidies, aidies, Sainte Marie!

maisnie au roi, que faites vos?

ja me morrai sil nest rescous!”

L i rois demande ses chevax,

et fait monter tous ses vassax. 100

toute la vile si esmuet,

cascuns i keurt plus tost qu'il puct.

li rois le siut a esperon,

le gart acaingnent environ;

mais li leus ert fors saillis,

a la campagne sestoi mis;

lenfes souvent sescrie et brait,

li rois lentent qui apres vait.

garde sel voit monter .i. mont,

de tost aler sa gent semont,

donques se par efforecent tuit,

li leus a tout lenfant sen fuit.

fuit sen li leus, et cil apres,

qui del ataindre sont engres.

desi au far le vont chacant,

il saut en leve a tout lenfant.

le far trespasse, perdus lont

li rois et cil qui o lui sont;

ensi sen va en tel maniere

a tout lenfant la beste fiere.

li rois arriere sen retorne,

mult a le cuer et triste et morne,

de son enfant qua si perdu;

a la cite sont revenu.

L a roine maine tel duel,

morte voudroit estre, son yuel;

pleure sovent, et crie, et brait,

a la beste son fil retrait.

The plaint arises, the cry arises

Of the son of the king that is borne away.

The queen oftentimes exclaims,

“Aid me, aid me, Holy Mary!

Ye household of the king, what do ye?

Now I shall die if he be not rescued!”

The king calls for his horses,

And makes all his vassals mount.

All the town is in commotion,

Every one runs as quickly as he can.

The king follows the wolf on the spur,

Watches him, encircling (him) around.

But the wolf had leapt far away,

And betaken himself to the plain;

The child oft cries out and wails;

The king, who goes after him, hears him.

He looks and sees him mount a hill,

Summons his men to come quickly.

Then all hasten on very fast,

The wolf flees away with the child.

The wolf flees away, and they after him,

Who are very desirous of reaching him.

Unto the Far [Straits of Messina] they chase him,

He leaps into the water with the child.

He crosses the Far, they have lost him,

The king and they who are with him;

Thus in such a manner, flees away

The wild beast with the child.

The king returns back,

Very sorrowful and sad at heart,

For his child whom he has lost;

To the city have all returned.

The queen makes such a mourning,

She would fain be dead, had she her will;

She weeps often, and cries and wails,

And demands back her child from the beast.
"fix, doux amis," fait la roine,
"tendre bouche, coulor rosine,
chose devine, espiritex,
qui cuidast que beste ne leus
vos devorast! dix, quel eur!
lasse! por coi vir tant ne dur?
fix, ou sont ore ti bel oel,
il bel, li simple, sans orguel?
tes frons li gens, et ti bel crin,
qui tuit sambloient faic dor fin?
ta tendre face, et tes cler vis?
ha cuers! por coi ne me partis?
quest devenue ta biautes,
et tes gens cors, et ta clartes?
tes nes, ta bouche, et tes mentous,
et ta figure, et ta facons,
et ti bel brac, et tes mains blanches,
tes reins beles, et tes hanches,
tes beles jambes, et ti pie;
lasse! quel duel et quel pechic?
ja devoies tu estre fais
por devises et por sourhais!
or es a lou-garoul peuture,
li miens enfes, quelle aventure!
mais je ne cuit, por nule chose,
beste sauavage soit si ose,
qui ton gent cors ost adamer,
plaire, sans faire, ne navrer;
ne cuit que ja dame dieu place,
ne que tel cruauate en face!"

Ensi la dame se demente,
Ensi por son fil se gaimente,
Ensi le ploure, Ensi le plaint.
mais tant le castoie et constraint
li rois, que tout laissier li fait
la dolor quelle maine et fait;

"Son, sweet love," said the queen,
"Tender mouth, rosy colour,
Thing divine and spiritual,
Who could believe that beast or wolf
Could devour you? O God! what fortune!
Alas! wherefore live I or last so long?
Son, where are now thy beautiful eyes,
So beautiful, so innocent, without pride?
Thy fair forehead, and thy lovely hair,
Which seemed all made of fine gold?
Thy tender face, and thy clear looks?
Oh heart! wherefore hast thou not left me?
What is become of thy beauty,
Thy sweet body, and thy fairness?
Thy nose, thy mouth, and thy chin,
And thy form and fashion,
And thy fair arm, and thy white hands,
Thy fair reins and thy thighs,
Thy fair legs, and thy feet;
Alas! what sorrow and what fault!
Thou oughtest only to have been made
For pleasures and for desires!
Now art thou food for the werwolf,
My child! what a mischance!
But I cannot believe, on any account,
A wild beast would be so daring
As to hurt thy tender body,
To wound it, make it bleed, or tear it;
I cannot believe that it would please our
Lord God,
Or that He would do such cruelty to it."
Thus the lady is in despair,
Thus she laments for her son,
Thus she weeps, thus she complaines for him.
But the king so corrects and restrains her,
That he makes her altogether leave off
The grief which she was continuing and
making;
ens la dame se rappaie.
mais or est droits que vos retraie
del liu qui o lenfant senfuit;
tant la porte et jor et nuit,
et tante terre trespasser,
que pres de Roume en la contree
en une grant forest sarreste,
ou ot mainte sauiage beste.
la se repose .viii. jors entiers;
lenfant de quanques fu mestiers
li a porquis la beste franche,
conques de rien not mesestation.
en terre a une fosse faite,
et dedens herbe mise et traite,
et la feuchiere et la lihue,
que par dedens a espandue.
la nuit le couche juste soi;
li leus-garous le fil le roi
lavoie de ses .iii. pies.
si est de lui aprivoisies,
li fix le roi, que tot li plaist
ce que la beste de lui fait;]

Thus the lady becomes tranquillized.
But now it is right for me to tell you
About the wolf that fled with the child;
So far he carries it both day and night,
And traverses so much ground,
That in the country near Rome,
In a great forest, he stops;
Where was many a wild beast.
There he rests for eight whole days;
Whatever the child had need of,
The noble beast provided for it,
So that it had discomfort in nothing.
In the ground he has made a trench,
And in it placed and put grass,
And also fern and herbs (?)
Which within it he has spread.
At night, he lies down near him:
The werwolf embraces the king's son
With his four feet.
And so familiar with him
Is the king's son, that all pleases him,
Whatever the beast does for him:]

pat it aperty was apayed · for profite pat he feld,
& [wrouzt] t buxumly by pe bestes wille · in wise as it
coupe.

Hit bi-fel in pat forest · þere fast by-side,
þer woned a wel old cheal · þat was a couherde,
þat fele winternes in pat forest · fayre had kepud
Mennes ken of þe cuntrte · as a comen herde;
& þus it bitide þat tyme; · as tellen oure bokes,
þis cowherd comes on a tyme · to kepen is bestes.
Fast by-side þe borwȝ · þere þe barn was inne.
þe herd had wip him an hound · his hert to lȝt,

1 A verb is evidently wanting to complete the sense. Perhaps
we should read, "And wrouzt buxumly by the bestes wille, &c."—M.
forso bayte on his bestes · wan ne þai to brode went.
þe herd sat þan wip hound · azene þe hote sunne,
Nouȝt fully a furlong · fro þat fayre child,
clouetand kyndely his schoen · as to 1 here craft falles.
þat while was þe werewolf · went a-boute his praye,
what behoued to þe barn · to bring as he miȝt.
þe child þan darked in his den · dernly him one,
& was a big bold barn · & breme of his age,
For spakly speke it couȝe tho · & spedeliche to-wawe.
Louely lay it a-long · in his lonely denne,
& buskedede him out of þe buschys · þat were blewed
grene,
& leued ful louely · þat lent grete schade,
& briddes ful bremely · on þe bowes singe.
what for melodye þat þei made · in þe mey sesoun,
þat litel child listely · lorked out of his caue,
Faire floures forto feeche · þat he bi-fore him seye,
& to gadere of þe grases · þat grene were & fayre.
& whan it was out went · so wel hit him liked,
þe sauor of þe swete sesoun · & song of þe briddes,
þat [he] 2 ferde fast a-boute · floures to gadere,
& layked him long while · to lestenn þat merpe.
þe cowherdes hound þat time · as happe by-tidde,
feld foute of þe child · and fast pider fulwes ·
& sone as he it seij · so þe forto telle,
he gan to berke on þat barn · and to baie it hold,
þat it wax neij of his witt · wod for fere,
and comsed þan to crye · so kenly and schille,
& wepte so wonder fast · wife þou for sothe,
þat þe son of þe cry corn · to þe cowherde euene,
þat he wist witerly it was · þe voys of a childe.
þan ros he vp radely · & ran pider swipe,
& drow hym toward þe den · bi his dogges noyce.
bi þat time was þe barn · for bere of þat hounade,
drawe him in to his den · & darked þer stille,
& wept euere as it wolde · a-wede for fere;
& euere þe dogge at þe hole · held it at a baye.
& whan þe cowherd com þid[er]e 1 · he koured lowe
to bi-hold in at þe hole · whi his hound berkyd.
 þanæ of-saw he ful sone · þat semliche child,
þat so Loueliche lay & wep · in þat lopli caue,
cloped ful kouly · for ani kud kings sone,
In gode clopes of gold · a-greped ful riche,
wip þerrey & pellure · pertelyche to þe rittes.
þe cherl wounded of þat chaunce · & chastisid his dogge,
bad him blinne of his berking · & to þe barn talked,
acoyled it to come to him · & clepud hit oft,
& foded it wip floures · & wip faire by-hest,
& hîst it hastely to haue · what it wold zerne,
appeles & alle þinges · þat childern after wilnen.
so, forto sei; al þe spoþ · so faire þe cherl glosed,
þat þe child com of þe caue · & his criyngne stint.
þe cherl ful cherl þat child · tok in his armes,
& kest hit & clipped · and oft crist þonkes,
þat hade him sent þo sonde · swiche prey to finde.
þat þat lichliche wip þe child · he went to his house,
and bi-tok it to his wif · tijstly to kepe.
a gladere wommon wnder god · no miȝt go on erþe,
þan was þe wif wip þe child · witow for spoþ.
sche kolloed it ful kindly · & askes is name,
& it answered ful sone · & seide, "william þiȝt."
þan was þe godwif glad · and gan it faire kepe,
þat it wanted nouȝt · þat it wold haue,
þat þei ne fond him as faire · as for here state longed,
& þe beter, be ye sure · for barn ne had þei none
brought forþ of here bodies; · here bale was þe more.
buth soply þai seeide þe child · schuld weld al here godis,
Londes & ludes as eyer · after here lif dawes.
but from þe cherl & þe child · nov chaunge we oure tale,
THE WERWOLF FINDS THE CHILD GONE.

For i wol of pe werewolf · a wilヌ nov speke.

When the werewolf returned, he found the nest, but no eggs in it.

For i Avol of jje werwolf · a wilヌ nov speke.

He roared, rent his hide, and swooned.

For i Avol · i Avol of jje werwolf · a wilヌ nov speke.

Soon he found the cowherd's track,

For i Avol of jje werwolf · a wilヌ nov speke.

Looking through a hole, he saw how well the child was being tended,

For i Avol of jje werwolf · a wilヌ nov speke.

Looking through a hole, he saw how well the child was being tended,

For i Avol · i Avol of jje werwolf · a wilヌ nov speke.

Listen and hear how he became a werewolf.

WERWOLF was he non · wox of kinde,

ac komen was he of kun · pat kud was ful nobul;

For pe kud king of spayne · was kindely his fader.

1 Sic in MS; read wlonk? Cf. II. 468, 1634.  
2 See note.
This king's first wife died,
and he married the daughter of the prince of Portugal,
a lady skilled in witchcraft, named Braunde.

She, seeing her stepson's beauty,
fear'd that her own son would never be king.
She therefore studied how to harm her stepson,
and made a strong ointment, and anointed him with it.

He became a werwolf, but still had his wit.

This is a text from a page discussing how Prince Alphonse became a werwolf.

He gat him, as god 3af grace - on his first wyue,
& at pe burp of pat barn - pe bold lady deyde.
Sippen pat kud king so - bi his conseyl wrout,
another wif pat he wedded - a worshipful ladi,
pe princes dou;ter of portingale - to prone pe sope.
But lelliche pat ladi in soupe - hadde lerned miche schame,

For al pe werk of wieche-craft - wel y-nou3 che cou3pe,
nede nadde 3he namore - of nigramauncy to lere.
of coninge of wieche-craft - wel y-nou3 3he cou3de,
& braunde was pat bold quene - of burnes y-clepud.
pe kinges first child was fostered - fayre as it ou3t,
& had lordes & ladies - it lonelly to kepe,
& fast gan pat frely barn - fayre forto wexe.

pe quene his moder on a time - as a mix pou3t,
how faire & how fetis it was - & freliche schapen.
& pis panne pou3t sche proly - pat it no schuld neuer
kuere to be king per - as pe kinde eyre,
while pe kinges first son - were per a-line.
pan studied sche stifly - as stepmoderes wol alle,
to do dernly a despit - to here stepchilderen;
Fepli a-mong foure shore - vunepe fiandestow on gode.
but truly tijt hadde pat quene - take hire to rede
133
to bring pat barn in bale - botles for euer,
pat he ne schuld wizti in pis world - neuer weld reaune.
a noynement anon sche made - of so grete strengpe,
bii enchaunmens of charmes - pat euel chaunce hire tide,
at whan pat womman per-wijzt - hadde pat worli child
ones wel an-oyned pe child - wel al a-bowte,
he wex to a werwolf - wiztlly per-after,
al pe making of man - so mysse hadde 3he schaped.
ac his witt welt he after - as wel as to-fore,
but lelly op er likenes - pat longep to man kynne,
but a wilde werwolf - ne walt he neuer after.

& whanne pis witty werwolf - wiste him so schaped,
he knew it was bi pe craft - of his kursed stepmoder,
He sought to avenge himself, and tried to strangle her.

She cried out, and he fled,

We now return to the child.

Here ends the first Passus.

The cowherd's wife took care of William, who grew up as a herdsman.

He learnt to shoot well,
so plenteousliche in his play · pat, pertly to telle, 180 whanne he went hom eche niȝt · wip is droue of bestis, he com him-self y-charged · wip conyng & hares, wip tesaunus & feldfares · and oper foules grete; pat pe herde & his hende wip · & al his hole meyne 184 pat bold barn wip his bowe · by pat time fedde. & ȝit hadde fele felawes · in pe forest eche day, ȝong bold barnes · pat bestes al-so kepèd. & blipe was eche a barn · ho best niȝt him plese, 188 & folwe him for his fredom · & for his faire pewes. for what ping william wan · a-day wip his bowe, were it feþered foul · or foure-foted best, ne wold pis william neuer on · wip-hold to him-selue, til alle his felawes were ferst · feþed to here paię. 193 so kynde & so corteyes · comsèd he þere, pat alle ledes him louede · pat lokèd on him ones; & blesseden pat him bare · & brouȝt in-to pis worlde, so moche manhed & murþe · schewed pat child euere.

Hit tidde after on a time · as tellus oure bokes, 198 as pis bold barn his bestes · blyþpeliche kepèd, pe riche emperour of rome · rod out for to hunte In þat faire forest · feþely for to telle, wip alle his menskful meyne · þat moche was & nobul. þan fel it hap þat þei founde · ful sone a grete bor, & huntyng wip hound & horn · harde alle sewede. 204 þe emperowr entréd in a wey · euene to attele to have bruttenet þat bor · & þe abaie seþen; but missely marked he is way · & so manly he rides, þat alle his wies were went · ne wist he neuer whider, so ferþorþ þram his men · feþly for to telle, 209 þat of horn ne of hound · ne niȝt he here sowne, &; boutæ en yning lud · left was he one. þe emperour on his stif stede · a sty forþ þanne takes 212 to herken after his houndes · oper horn schille; so komes þer a werwolf · riȝt bi þat way þenne,
grimly after a gret hert · as þat god wold, & chased him þurth chaunce · þere þe child pleide, 216 þat kept þe kowherdes bestes · i carped of bi-fore. þemperour þan ne hastely · þat huge best folwed as stiffly as is stede miȝt · strecche on to renne; but by-þan he com by þat barn · & a-boute loked, 220 þe werwolf & þe wilde hert · were a-wye boþe, þat he ne wist in þis world · were þei were bi-come, ne whiderward he schuld seeche · to se of hem more. but þanne bi-held he a-boute · & þat barn of-seye, 224 how fair how fetys it was · & freliche schapen; so fair a siȝt of seg · ne sawe he neuer are, of lere ne of lykame · lik him nas none, ne of so sad a semblant · þat euere he say wijd eijyen. 228 þemperour wend witerly · for wonder of þat child, þat feiȝpily it were of feyrye · for fairenes þat it welt, & for þe curteys cuntenaunce · þat it kudde þere.

Riȝtly penne þemperour · wendes him enene tille, 232 þe child comes him agayn · & curtesliche him gretes. In hast þemperour hendeȝly · his gretyng him yeldes, and a-non riȝttes after · askes his name, & of what kin he were kome · komanded him telle. 236 þe child þanne soberliche seide · "sir, at þoure wille I wol ȝow telle as tyt · trewely alle þe soppe. william, sire, wel y wot · wyes me calles; I was boren here fast bi · by þis wodes side. 240 a kowherde, sire, of þis kontrey · is my kynde fader, and my menskful moder · is his meke wiue. þei han me fostered & fed · faire to þis tyme, & here i kepe is kyn · as y kan on dayes; 244 but, sire, by criȝt, of my kin · know i no more." whan þemperour ¹ hade herd · holly his wordes, he wondered of his wis speche · as he wel miȝt, & seide, "þow bold barn · bilue i þe praye, 248

¹ Read "themperour." The bar across the ð is deficient.—M.
Go calle to me þe cowherde · þow clepus þi sadere,  
For y wold talk [wif] him ¹ · tipinges to frayne.  
"nay, sire, bi god," quaþ þe barn, "be þe riȝt sure,  
bi crist, þat is krowned · heye king of heuen,  
For me non harm schal he haue · neuer in his liue!"  
"ac perauenture þurth goddis [grace] ² · to gode may it  
turne,  
Forþi bring him hider · faire barn, y preye."  
"I schal, sire," seide þe child · "for saufliche y hope ³  
I may worche on þour word · to wite him fro harm."  
"þa, saufliche," seide þeþemperor · "so god þif me ioie!"  
þe child witly þanne wende · wip-oute ani more,  
comes to þe couherdes hows · & clepud him sone;  
For he feȝtliche wen[d] ⁴ · þat he his fader where;  
& seide þan, "swete sir · s[o] þou crist help!  
Goþ yond to a gret lord · þat gayly is tyred,  
& on þe feirest frek · for soþe þat i haue seie;  
and he wilnes wȝtli · wip þou to speke;  
For godis loue goþ til him swipe · lest he agreued wex."  
"what ? sone," seide þe couherde · "seidestow i was  
here?"  
"þa, sire, sertes," seide þe child · "but he swor formeet  
þat ȝe schuld haue no harm · but hendely for gode  
he prade þou com speke wip him · & passe a-ȝein sone."  
þe cherl grocching forþ goþ · wip þe gode child,  
& eueneto þeperour · þei etteleden sone.  
þeperour a-non riȝt · as he him of-seie,  
clepud to him þe couherde · & enetteysly seide;  
"now telle me, felawe, be þi feijþ · for no þing ne  
wonde,  
sei þou euers þeperour · so þe crist help?"  
¹ The sense and cadence of the line seem to require "with"  
before "him."—M.  
² Read "þurth goddis grace."—M.  
³ MS. for y saufliche y hope, where there seems to be a y too much.  
⁴ See note.
"Nay, sire, bi crist," quaph pe couherde. "Pat king is of heuen,

I nas neuer set so hardi · to nezh him so hende
pe i schuld haue him seie · so me wel tym[e]."

"Sertes," seide pemperour · "Pe sope forto knowe,
pat y am pat ilk weizh · i wol wel pou wite;
al pe regal of rome · to riʒtliche y weld.

Perfore, couherde, i pe coniure · & comande att alle,
bì vertu of Ŝing pat pou most · in Ŝis world louest,
patow telle me tijtly · truly pe sope,
whethe ‹pe bold barn · be lelly Ŝin owne,
ofer comea of ofer kin · so pe crist help!"

Pe couherd comsed to quake · for kare & for drede
whanne he wist witerly · pat he was his lorde,
& bilieue in his hert be-pout · zif he him gun lye,
he wold prestely perceyue · pertiliche him pout.
Perfore trewly as tyt · he told him pe sope,
how he him fond in pat forest · þere fast bi-side,
clothed in comly cloþing · for any kings sonc,
vnder an holw ok · þurth help of his dogge,
& how faire he hade him fed · & fostered vij winter.

"Bi crist," seide pemperour · "y con þe gret þonke,
pat pou hast [seide] 1 me þe sope · of þis semly childe,
& Ŝine schalt þou nouȝt þi trawayle · y trow, at þe last!

Ac wend schal it wip me · witow for sope,
Min hert so harde wilnes · to haue þis barne,
þat i wol in no wise · þou wite it no lenger."
whan pemperour so sayde · sope forto telle,
pe couherde was in care · i can him no-jing white.

Ac witerly dorst he nouȝt werne · þe wille of his lord,
but graunted him goddeli · on godis holy name,
Forto worchen his wille · as lord wip his owne.
whan william þis worþi child · wist þe sope,

and knew þat þe couherde · nas nouȝt his kinde fader,

1 Read "thou hast seide me the sothe."—M.
he was wistliché a-wondered & gan to wepe sore, & seide saddely to him-self • sone þer-after, "a ! gracious gode god! • þouȝ grettest of alle ! 312
Moch is þi mercy & þi miȝt • þi menske, & þi grace ! now wot i neuer in þis world • of wham y am come, ne what destene me is diȝt • but god do his wille ! ac wel y wot witerly • wip-oute ani faile, 316
to þis man & his meke wif • most y am holde ; For þei ful faire han me fostered • & Þed a long time, þat god for his grete miȝt • al here god hem yeld. 319
but not y neuer what to done • to wende þus hem fro, þat han al kindenes me kyð • & y ne kan hem þelde !" "bi stille, barn," quaþ þemperour • "blinne of þi sorwe, For y hope þat hal þi kin • hastely here-after, 323
jif þou wolt þeue þe to gode • swiche grace may þe falle, þat alle þi frendes fordedes • faire schalstow quite." "þa, sire," quaþ þe couherde, "jif crist wol • þat cas may tyde,
& god lene him grace • to god man to worþe." & þan as tit to þe child • he taugþ þis lore, 328
& seide, "þou swete sone • seþ þe þou schalt hennes wende,
whanne þou komest to kourt • among þe kete lordes, & knowest alle þe kuppes • þat to kourt langes, bere þe boxumly & bonure • þat ich burn þe loue. 332
be meke & mesurabul • nouȝt of many wordes, be no tellere of talis • but trewe to þi lord, & prestely for pore men • profer þe euer;
For hem to rekeene wip þe riche • in riȝt & in skille. 336
be feȝtful & fre • & euer of faire speche, & scruisabul to þe simple • so as to þe riche, & felawe in faire manere • as falles for þi state ; so schalstow gete goddes loue • & alle gode mennes. 340
Leue sone, þis lesoun • me lerde my fader, þat knew of kourt þe pewe • for kourteour was he long, & hald it in þi hert • now i þe haue it kenned ;
pe bet may pe bi-falle · pe worse bestow neuere.” 344

The child weped al-way · wonderliche fast,
but pemptour had god game · of pat gomes lore,
& commande¹ pe couherde · curteysli and fayre,
to heue vp pat hende child · bi-hinde him on his stede.
& he so dede deliverly · pouōh him del pouēt,
& bi-kenned him to crist · pat on croice was peyned.

panne pat barn as blīue · by-gan for to glade
pat he so realy schuld ride · & redeli as swipe
Ful curteisle of pe couherde · he cacces his leue,
& setwen seyde, “swete sire · i bes[el]che ² you nowpe,
For godes loue, gretes ofte · my godelyche moder,
pat so faire hāp me fed · & fostered till nowpe.
& lellyche, ʒif our lord wol · pat i liif haue,
sche ne schal nouēt tyne hire tranayle · treuly for sope.
& gode sire, for godes lone · also gretep wel oft
alle my freyliche felawes · pat to pis forest longes,
han pertilyche in many places · pleide wip ofte,
hugonet, & huet · pat hende litel dwerp,³
&abelot, & martynet · hugones gai sone;
& pe cristen akarin · pat was mi kyn fere,
& pe trewe kinnesman · pe payenes sone,
& alle ʒer frely felawes · pat pou faire knowes,
pat god mak hem gode men · for his mochel grace.”
of pe names pat he nemned · pemptour nam hede,
& had gaynliche god game · for he so grette alle
of his compers pat he knew · so curteysliche & faire.

The emperor then rides away.

¹ In l. 236 we have “komanded;” but see the note.
² MS. “befche.” Read “besche.”—M. ³ See note.

and the child was pleased to think
he should ride royally.

William bids the cowherd farewell,
and sends a message to his
foster-mother,

and to his old playmates,
[Fol. 9.] Hugonet, and Huet, Abelet, Martynet, and Akarin,

and all the rest.

The emperor tells
the cowherd to
set William on
his horse,

and the child was
very sorrowful,
THE EMPEROR BRINGS WILLIAM TO ROME.

and his wife weeps most bitterly.

No more of them now.

The emperor finds his men, and the spoil which they had taken.

All wondered at seeing the child, which, said the emperor, "God had sent him."

[Fol. 9 b.]

He rides to Rome, and alights at his palace.

Now the emperor had a dear daughter of the same age as William, named Melior.

To her care the emperor commends William,

... how that child from here warde was wente for euer-more, per his man on his mold that might half telle he wo & he weeping that woman made. sche wold haue sleie hire-self there so ply, as bluie, ne had he kind kouherde comforted here he betere, & pult hire in hope to haue gret help per-of after. but trewely of hem at his time he tale y lete, of emperour & he bold barn to bigynne to speke.

Lordes, lustenep her-to 3if you lef pynkes! emperour blye of he barn on his blank rides Fast til he forest, til he fond al his fre ferd, pat hadde take pat time moche trye game, bope bores & beres fele hors charge, hertes & hindes & euer bestes manye, & whan he loueli ludes seie here lord come, pei were geinliche glad & gretten him faire, but alle a-wondered pei were of he barn him bi-hinde, so faire & so fetyse it was & freliche schapen; & freyned faire of emperour whar he it founde hadde. he gaf hem answere a-gayn pat god it him sent, euer-wise wist non where he it founde. pan rod he forp wip pat rowte in-to rome euene, & euer pat bold barn by-hinde him sat stille. so passed he to pe paleys & and presteliche a-list, & william pat choyes child in-to his chaumber ledded, a dere damisele to douzter his emperour hadde panne, of alle fasoun pe fairest pat euer freke seije, & witerly william & the were of on held, as euene as ani wizt schuld attely bi sigt. & pat menskful mayde melior was hoten, a more curteyse creature ne cunningere of hire age, was nouz panne in pis world pat ani wizt knewe. emperour to pat mayde mekliche wendep, & william pat worpi child wip him he ladde, and seide, "dere douzter y do pe to wite,
I haue a pris present to plese wip pi hert.
haue here pis bold barn & be til him meke,
& do him kepe clently for kome he his of gode;
I hent pis at hunting swiche hap god me sent;"
& told here panne as tit treweli al pe sope,
how he hade missed is mayne & malskriid a-boute, 416
& how pe werwolfe wan him bi wip a wilde hert,
& how sadly he him sewed to haue slayn pat dere,
til pe hadde brouȝt him bere pat barn bestes kept,
& how some of his seiȝt be bestes septron ware; 420
& how pe cowherde com him to & was a-knowe pe sope,
how he him fond in pat forest ferst, pat faire child,
& how komeliche y-cloped for ani kinges sone;
& how pe cowherde for kare cumseed to sorwe,
whanne he wold wip pe child wende him fromme;
& how boldely pat barn bad pe cowherde panne
to grete wel his gode wiif & gamely pe-afte
alle his freliche felawes bi-forn as i told.
424
" & per-fore, my dere douȝter" pemperour seide,
" For mi lof loke him wel for lelly me pinkes,
bis menskful maneres & his man-hede,
pat he is kome of god kin to crist y hope; 432

[The next folio (Fol. 10) being lost, its place is here supplied from
the French text.]

[car mult par est et biax, et gens,
de cors, de vis, et de faiture.
encor errons, par aventure,
de quex gens est estrais et nes.
ma douce fille, or retenes
lenfant que je vos amain ci."
"ce soit la vostre grant merci,"
dist melior, "biau sire chiers,
je le retieng mult volentiers."
puis prent lenfant et si lenmaine, 10
en la soie chambre demaine,

For he is very fair and handsome
In body, in face, and in fashion.
We shall yet hear, peradventure,
Of what kin he is descended and born.
My sweet daughter, now take care of
The child whom I here bring you."

"Great thanks are due to you for this,"
Said Melior, "fair father dear;
I take care of him very willingly."

Then she takes the child and leads him away,
Brings him into her chamber,
uns dras li a fait aporter, sel fait vester et courrire.
Quant des dras fu apareillies, et a sa guise fu chaucies, or fu si gens et si tres biax et si apers li damoisiax, con ne recourast son pareil, desos la clarte du soleil, de sa biaute, de sa semblance, et meliours, qui tant et francois, li a fait par i. sien Sergant aporter le mangier devant, et cil manga qui fain avoit, or revient aques a son droit, por cou sc il est fix de Roi, nest desours, si com ie croi, sil sert a cort dempereor, et pucele de tel valor com meliours estoit la bele. ensi remest o la pucele Guilliammes, com poes oir; mult se paine de li servir et des autres tous ensement. mult si acointe belement, si com li hom qui nestoit mie Norris en cort nentre maisnie, mais aques le prueve nature, et il sor tote creature sentente et tot son cuer velt metre a quanque se doit entremetre, nus damoisiax de nul service a cort si haute ni si riche.
Tant i a lenfes son cuer mis, et tant entendu et apris, quancois que fust passes li ans, fu il si prex et si sachans,

Has a robe brought for him, And has him clothed and well cared for. When he was dressed in the robes, And fittingly provided with shoes, So gracious and so very fair And so frank was the boy, That his equal could not be met with Beneath the light of the sun,

20 For his beauty, for his appearance. And Melior, who was so bountiful, Caused one of her servants To carry a repast before him. And he, being hungry, ate it, And returned then to his duty. Wherefore if he is a king's son 'Tis no dishonour, as I believe, If he serves at the emperor's court And (serves) a damsel of such worth

30 As was Melior the beautiful. Thus remained with the damsel William, as you may hear; Much pains he takes to serve her And all the others likewise. Very excellently he demeanes himself, Like, indeed, a man who had never been Nourished in court or household, But nature also proves him, And he, above every creature, Gives attention and puts his whole heart To whatever he ought to undertake. There was no youth, in any service, So high and so rich at court. The child so gave his attention there, And understood and learnt so much, That before the year was passed, He was so prudent and so wise,
And grows up beloved by all.

Quil nest hom qui le puist reprendre, That no one could reprove him
tant i sache garder, entendre (So well can he take care), nor perceive
de riens nule que veoir sace, 50 For anything that he could see,
que riens mesprenge ne mefface. That he mistook or mislid anything.
Oi aves pieca retraire, Ye have long ago heard say
que li oisix de gentil aire That the bird of gentle breed
safaite meisme aparlui, Learns even by himself,
tot sans chastiement dautru; Without correction by another:
comme vos ci oir poes, Even as ye here may hear,
sest si Guilliaumes doctrines. William thus taught himself.
Ensii Guilliaumes est a cort, Thus William lives at the court,
a tos desert que on lounort, He deserves that all should honour him,
ne fait riens qui doi despleiere, 60 And does nothing to displease.
mult par est frans et debonnaire, He is very frank and amiable,
servicable, cortois, et prous, Serviceable, courteous, and prudent.
et mult se fait amer a tous, And makes himself much loved by all,
et larges de quanquavoir puet. And (he is) bounteous as far as he is able.
et sachies bien, pas ne lestuet And know well, there is no need
a chastoier de ses paroles, To correct him for his words,
ques soient laides ne foles, Which are neither rude nor silly,
mais asises et delitables. But staid and pleasing.
Si set plus desches et de tables, He knew more of chess and tables,
doisisax, de bois, de chacerie, 70 Of hawking, of the woods, of the chase,
que nus qui soit en Lombardie, Than any one in Lombardy,
Nen toute la terre de Rome; Or in all the territory of Rome;
Nia vallet, fil a haut home, There is no lad, son to a great man,
Na riche prince natural— Nor rich prince by birth
quant Guilliaumes siet a cheval, (When William sits on his horse,
Lesu au col, el poing la lance— Shield on his neck, lance in his fist),
tant par soit de fiere semblance, Can be of such fierce appearance.
si gens, ne si amanevis; So gracious, nor so dexterous;
ne sai que plus vos en devis; I know not that I can tell you more about it.
que tuit samblent a lui vilain, 80 So that all seem plebeian beside him,
et li Lombart et li romain. Both Lombard and Roman.
Bien samble a tos estre lor sire He seems to be the lord of them all
En tot le regne nen lempire. In all the kingdom and empire.
ni a . . seul, ne bas ne haut, a cui il soit, de ce me vant(l), des biens, de Lui que la gens conte; chascuns en fabloie et raconte, tous li pueples, communement, et lempereures ensement li porte honor, aime, et tient chier comme le fil de sa moilliier; et quant il va en esbanoi, toudis mainc Guillaume o soi; en grant afaire ou en besoing toa jors iva, soit pres ou loing, et cil del regne deviviron, li grant signor et li baron, por lamor a lempereor, laiment et portent grant honor, et plus encor por sa franchise, dont chascuns tant le loe et prise, et ke diroie des puchieles, des dames et des damoisieles? certes, et se diex me doinst joie, ne cuit que nule qui le voie ne qui son los oie retraire, tant par i soit de haut afaire, bele, cortoise, ne prisie, nestraite de haute lignie, ne sage, orgelieuse, ne cointe, qui ne vausist estre sa-cointe! Mult a boin los par la contree, par toa en va sa renoumee, si fut a cort . . ans toa plains Guillaume entre les Romans, com vos dire maves oi, forment crut et bien enbarni; et devint gens li damoisiax, et fors et aformes et biax; There is no one, low or high, Who possesses—whereof I boast(?)— The virtues, which people relate of him; Every one speaks of them and tells them. All the people, in common (honour him), And the emperor, in like manner, Honours, loves, and holds him dear As the son of his own wife; And when he goes out for amusement, He always takes William with him; In great affairs, or in case of need, Always he goes there, whether near or far. And those of the country round about, The great lords and barons, For love of the emperor, Love and greatly honour him, And still more for his bounty, For which every one praises and esteems him. And what can I say of the maidens, Of the ladies and the damsels? Certes, so God give me joy, I believe there is none who sees him Or hears his praise told, Of however great consideration she may be. However fair, courteous, and estimable, However noble by birth, However wise, proud, or clever, But she wishes to be his love! He has great good praise in the country, Everywhere spreads his renown. Thus at the court three full years Was William, among the Romans, As ye have heard me tell, Well grown and of good stature; And the youth became gracious, And strong and of fine form and hair;
de la chambre est merveilles bien; 120
les puceles sur tote rien,
por sa franchise et sa valor,
li portent mult tres grant honor.
Quant meliors la debonaire
ot del vallet le los retraire,
et les grans biens qui en lui sont,
et voit quil na si bel el mont,
ne damoiseil de sa valor,
fil de roi ne dempereor,
ne di boine renounne,
trestot son cuer et sa pensee
tot maintenant vers lui atorne.
or est si tres pensive et morne
quele nentent a autre chose.
son cuer reprent et blasme et chose,
et dist sovent, "cuers! que as tu?
quas tu esgarde ne veu,
que tout mi oel moustre ne fait,
qui mas embatue en cest plait?
que je ne sai que puisse avoir,
ne quel error me fait doloir,
ne plaindre plus que je ne suel.
Diex! quex maus est dont tant me
duel,
qui si me fait estendillier?] & sëppe sike i & sing · samen to-gedere,
& melt neigh for mournyng · & moche ioie make.
Min hert hol i hane now · for al pat hard y fele,
saue a fers feintise · folves me oft,
& takes me so tenefully · to telle al pe sope,
pat i mase al marred · for mournyng neigh hondes,
but redeliche in pat res · pe recuuerere pat me falles,
as whan i haue ani hap · to here of pat barne,
For wham myn hert is so hampered · & aldes so
nobul,
In the chamber he is very admirable;
The maidens above everything,
For his frankness and his valour,
Accord him very great honour.
When Melior the amiable
Hears the praise of the lad told,
And the great goodness that is in him,
And sees there is none in the world so fair,
No youth of his worth,
(Whether) son of king or of emperor,
Nor any of such good renown,
Soon her heart and her thought
Very quickly turns she towards him.
Then she is so very sad and sorrowful,
That she minds nothing else,
She reproves and blames and rebukes her
heart,
And says often, "Heart, what hast thou?
What hast thou beheld or seen—
For mine eye shews or tells me nothing—
That has cast me into this debate?
So that I know not what is the matter,
Nor what fault makes me grieve,
Or complain more than I am wont.
Oh God! what evil is it I thus grieve for,
That makes me thus move restlessly?
[fol. 11.] I sigh and sing together.
A faintness often seizes me.
I recover when I hear of that
MELIOR BLAMES HER HEART BITTERLY,

pat flour is of alle frekes of fairnes and mist.

prince is non his pere ne in paradis non aunigel,
as he semen in mi sijt so faire is pat burne.

I haue him portreide an payted in mi hert wip-

inne,

pat he sittus in mi sijt me pinke esuer-more.

& faire so i his figure is festened in mi 3out,2

pat wip no coyntise ne craft ne can y it out scrape. 448

& be marie, pou3h i mi3t to mengge al pe sope,
I ne wold nou3t for al pis world so wel it me likes,
pe13h i winne wip mi werk pe worse esuer-more!

so gret liking & loue i haue pat lud to bi-hold, 452

pat i haue leuer pat loue pan lac al mi harms.

Nou certes, seppe it is so to seie pe trewepe,

pann haue y had gret wrong myn [hert] so to blame,
For eni werk pat he wrou3t seppe i wol it hold, 456

ne wold i it were non oper al pe world to haue.

whom schal i it wite but mi wicked eijen,

pat lad myn hert prou3 lokin pis langour to drye?

nad pei [ben, i mi3t] boute 3 bile haue schaped; 460

redeli bi resoun ferefore hem rette i mai mi sorwe."

but pane pou3t che pat prow e in pis selue wise,

"Min eijen sorly aren sogettes to serue min hert,

& buxum ben to his bidding as boie to his master; 464

ek eite i al pe wrong pe werk of mi eijen,

& pou3h sertes, so may i nou3t by no sope ri3t;

For seppe i knowe pat mi sijt is servaut to mi hert,

& alle my nope werl wolck writtes to wirechen his hest. 468

For pou3h i sette my sijt sadly on a ping,

be hit brii3tter oper broun better oper worse,

Mi sijt may in no maner more harme wireche,

but 3if myn hauteyn hert pe harde a-sente. 472

ek eike soply my sijt is soget to my hert,

& dop nou3t but his deuer as destine wol falle.

1 so faire (?) 2 pou3t (?) 3 MS. "nad pei i am a boute." See note.
Pan has my hasty hert · holly pe wrong,
him wol i blame & banne · but he my bales amende, 476
pat hap him so strangely set · in swiche straunge burne,
pat wot neuer in pis world · whennes pat he come,
but as mi fader him fond · in pe forest an herde,
keping meanis kin · of pe kuntre a-boute. 480
what? fy! schold i a fundeling · for his fairenesse tak?
nay, my wille wol nouȝt a-sent · to my wicked hert.
wel kud kinges & kaysers · krauen me i-now,
I nel leie mi loue so low · now at pis time ; 484
desparaged were i disgrisili · zif i dede in pis wise,
I wol breke out from pat baret · & blame my hert."
MELIOR WILL BLAME HER HEART NO MORE.

his manors were so menskful, a-mende hem mist none,
& seppe forsope til pis time, non vn-tetche he ne wrouȝt,
but hap him bore so buxumly, pat iche burn him preysen, &
vch a burn of pis world, worchipe him one,
Kinges & kud dukes, keke kniȝtes and other, 512
pouȝh he were komen of no ken, but of kende cherls,
as i wot witterly, so was he neuere!
3ut wip worchepe i wene, i mist him wel loue.
& seppe he so perles is preised, ouer princes & oper, 516
& eche lord of pis lond, is lef him to plece
For most souereyn seg, & semlyest of þewes,
þanne haue i wited alle wrong, þe werk of myn herte,
For he has don his deuere, dignely as he out,
he let me most worpi of wommen holde in erpe,
Kindely purth kinrade, of cristen lawe;
For þi myn herte hendely, has wrouȝt, in his dedes
to sette him-self so sadly, in þe soueraynest burne 524
þat leuis in ani lond, of alle ludes preised,
I ne wot neuere in þis world, what wise he mist betere
wirche for me in þis world, my worschipe to saue,
For þif eny man on mold, more worpi were, 528
Min hert is so hauteyn, þat herre he wold.
& for i so wrongely haue wrouȝt, to wite him, me
grenes;
I giue me holly in his grace, as gilty for þat ilk,
& to mende my misse, i make myn a-vowe. 532
I wol here-after witerly wip-oute more striu, 
wirche holly mi hertes wille to harde & to nesche,
þe my loue on þat lud, lelly for euere.
to god here i gi a gift it gete schal neuer oper, 536
wile him lastep þe liif, my loue i him grante."

And whan sche so was a-sented sche seide sone after,
sadli sikand & sore, for sorwe atte here herte,
"Alas! i trowe þis bitter bale, botlesse wol hende! 540

1 MS. "worngely"
For i not in pis world 1 · how þat worþi child schal euer wite of my wo · wip-oute me selue. nay! sertes my-selue · schal him neuer telle; For þat were swiche a woth · þa neuer wolde be mended. For he miȝt ful wel · for a fol me hold, & do him lope mi loue · 3i[t haue y leuer deie! nay! best beþ it nouȝt so · þi[f better miȝt bi-falle, Ich mot worche op[er wise · þi[f i wol out-spede. 548 what, i suppose þe selue · þi[f it so bi-tide þat i wrouȝt so wodly · & wold to him speke, þat were semlyest to seye · to saue my worce[hp? 3i[f i told him treuli · my tene and myn anger, what li[fr for longyng of loue · i lede for his sake, He wold wene i were wod · or witerly schorned, or þat i dede for despit · to do him a schonde; & þat were a schamly schenchip · to schende me euer. what þi[f i saide him sadly · þat i sek were, & told him al treuly · þe enteches of myn euele? he knowþ nouȝt of þat kraft · bi krist, as i trowe, wherfore he ne schold in no wise · wite what i mente; but whanne i hade al me mened · no more nold he seie but “sertainly, swete damisele · þat me sore rewes.” þanne wold mi wo · wex al newe, & doubel is now mi duel · for i ne dar hit schewe. 564 allas! whi ne wist þat wiȝh · what wo þat me eyle, what sorwes & sikingges · i suffer for his sake! I sayle now in þe see · as schip bout[e mast, bout[e anker or ore · or ani semlyche sayle; 568 but heȝh heuene king · to gode hauene me sende, op[er laske mi liif daywes · wip-inne a litel terme.” þus þat maiden meliers · in mornyng þa liuede, & hit held hire so harde · i hete þe for soþe, 572 & schorttily wip-in seueniȝt · al hire slep sche leues, here mete & al merthe · sche missed in a while, & secclede in a seknesse · þe soþe for to telle,

1 MS. "world pis;" instead of "pis world."

[fol. 12 b.] for I will never tell him my love.

He mught think me foolish.

Or suppose I did speak to him,

he would think me mad, or that I mocked him.

he would not understand me.

My grief would only be doubled.

I sail in the sea like a mastless ship, without anchor, oar, or sail.”

Thus Melior lamented.

She sickened and pined,
pat per nas leche in no lond  

pat liif hire bihiȝt,  

3it coupe non by no craft  

knowen hire sore;  

but duelfulli sche dwined a-waie  

boþe dayes & nijtes,  

& al hire clere colour  

comsed for to fade.

Mclior's favourite maiden

was Alexandrine,  

daughter of the duke of Lombardy;

who said to her,  

"Tell me the cause of your sickness;"

I may be able to help you."

"Dear cousin,"  

said Melior,  

"thou speakest comfort to me."

I will tell you all my grief.

—

Here follows the catchword—"3it coupe."

1 Here follows the catchword—"3it coupe."  

2 MS. "he."

3 This line and the next are transposed in the MS.
sarteynly pis seknesse: pat so sore me greues

Is feller pan any frek: pat euer hit hadde.
& ofter pan [ten]¹ times: hit takep me a-daye,
& [ix.]¹ times on pe miȝt: nouȝt ones lesse;
and al comes of a proly pouȝt: pat pirles min hert;
I wold meng al mi mater: ȝif i miȝt for schame.
ac wond wold ich nouȝt to pe: witow for sope,
ay whan ich hent pe haches: pat so hard aren.
It komses of a kene pouȝt: pat ich haue in hert
of william pat bold barn: pat alle burnes praisen;
nis no man vpon mold: pat more worship winnes.
him so propirli haue i painted: & portreide in herte,
pat me semes in my sit: he sittes euer meke.
what man so ich mete wip: or mele wip speche,
Me pinkes euerich prowé: pat barn is pat oþer;
& fele times haue ich fonded: to flitte it fro pouȝt,
but witerly al in wast: pan worche ich euer.
be-for, curteise cosynes: for londe of crist in heuene,
Kþe nouȝt þi kindenes: & konseyle me þe best;
For but ich haue bote of mi bale: bi a schort time,
I am ded as dore-nail: now do al þi wille!”

Panne alisanandrine a-non: after þat ilk,
 wax grely a-wondered: & wel hire bi-pouȝt,
what were hire kuddest comfort: hire care to lisse;
& seide panne til hire softily: sone þer-after;
“a! madame, for marie loue: mornes no lenger!
nis it no sekenes bote þat: so sore ȝouȝt eiles,
I schal þurth craft þat ich kan: þeuer þou i hope,
Mow i geten a grece: þat i gaynli knowe!
haue þe fleiliche ²: it seie: & a-saide ones,
& feled þe sauor: þe swetnesse: þat sittes in þe rote,
hit schal veraly þurth vertue: do vanisch þour soris!”
oper-wise wold sche nouȝt: wissen here ladi
bi what maner che ment: last sche were a-greued.

¹ See note. ² MS. “þe fleiliche it.”
Melior thanked her, and prayed her to get it.

She said she would try.

Alexandrine planned how to let William know of this,

and, by her craft, as he lay asleep,

she made him dream a dream,

that Melior came to him, and said,

"Oh take me, love, in thine arms!"

He tried to do so, but seized his pillow,

and awoke, kissing it.

\[ \text{Alexandrine makes William dream} \]

\[ \text{pan pat melior ful mekli } \cdot \text{ pat mayden tanked,} \]
\[ \& \text{preide hire priucli } \cdot \text{ wip pitous wordes,} \]
\[ \text{to gete hire pat gode gras } \cdot \text{ as sone as shee miȝt.} \]
\[ \text{& alisandrindrie a-non } \cdot \text{ answeres and saide,} \]
\[ \text{"Madame, I wol do mi miȝt } \cdot \text{ wip-oute more speche."} \]
\[ \text{panne pis maiden melior } \cdot \text{ gan menden here chere,} \]
\[ \text{hus was first here sad sorwe } \cdot \text{ sesed pat time.} \]
\[ \text{alisandrindrie algate pat } \cdot \text{ after [pat] prose} \]
\[ \text{bi-pouȝt hire ful busily } \cdot \text{ howe best were to werche,} \]
\[ \text{to do william to wite } \cdot \text{ pe wille of hire lady,} \]
\[ \text{properly vnparceynueth } \cdot \text{ for reprove after.} \]
\[ \text{Ful conyng was shee } \cdot \text{ & coynt } \cdot \text{ & coupe fele pinges,} \]
\[ \text{of charmes } \cdot \text{ & of chau[yn]temens } \cdot \text{ to schewe harde castis;} \]
\[ \text{So purȝh pe craft pat sche coupe } \cdot \text{ to carpe pe sope,} \]
\[ \text{as william pat worpi child } \cdot \text{ on a miȝt slep,}\]
\[ \text{boute burn in his bour } \cdot \text{ but him-self one,} \]
\[ \text{a ful selcoupe sweneuene } \cdot \text{ set sche him to mete;} \]
\[ \text{pat melior, pat menskful may } \cdot \text{ mekli al-one} \]
\[ \text{com ful comliche clad } \cdot \& \text{ kneled him bi-fore,} \]
\[ \text{al bi-woped for wo } \cdot \text{ wisly him pouȝt;} \]
\[ \& \text{ sikand ful sadli } \cdot \text{ seide hus him tille—} \]
\[ \text{"a ! loueliche lemmann } \cdot \text{ loke on me nowpe!} \]
\[ \text{I am Meliors, neȝh marred } \cdot \text{ man, for pi sake.} \]
\[ \text{I meke me in pi merci } \cdot \text{ for pow me miȝt saue!} \]
\[ \text{Leue lord, mi lemmann } \cdot \text{ lacche me in pi narmes,} \]
\[ \& \text{ wirche wip me pi wille } \cdot \text{ or witterli in hast} \]
\[ \text{Mi liif lelly is lorn } \cdot \text{ so loue now me hampris."} \]
\[ \text{hus william pouȝt witterly } \cdot \& \text{ wiȝtly wip pat ilk,} \]
\[ \text{as a gone ful glad } \cdot \text{ for pat grace fallen,} \]
\[ \text{He wend to haue launȝt pat ladi } \cdot \text{ loueli in armes;} \]
\[ \& \text{ clipte to him a pulwere } \cdot \& \text{ propirly it gretes,} \]
\[ \text{and welcomes hir worpli } \cdot \text{ for wisseli him pouȝt} \]
\[ \text{pat it was pe menskful mayde } \cdot \text{ melior his ladi!} \]
\[ \text{pat puluere clepte he curteisly } \cdot \& \text{ kust it ful ofte,} \]
\[ \& \text{ made per-wip pe most merpe } \cdot \text{ pat ani man schold;} \]
\[ \text{but pan in his saddest solas } \cdot \text{ softili he a-waked.} \]
ak so liked him his layk \* wip pe ladi to pleie,  
pat after he was a-waked \* a ful long prow,  
he wende ful witerly \* sche were in is armes;  
ac peter! it nas but is puluere \* to prone pe sope.  
but whan he witterly was a-waked \* he wayted a-boute,  
to haue bi-hold pat burde \* his blis to encrese.  
panne perceyued he pe puluere \* pertely in his armes,  
oper wist was non \* wip-inne pat chambur.1  
pan brayde he vp of his bed \* as burn nei3h amased,  
& loked after pat ladi \* for lelli he wende  
pat sche here had hed in sum hurne \* in pat ilk time,  
to greue him in hire game \* as pei3h he gyled were,  
but whan he wist it was wast \* al pat he soujt,  
he gan to sike & sorwe \* & seide in pis wise:—  
"a! ihesu crist, iustise \* now iugge pou; pe ri3t,  
how falsy has fortune \* founde me nowpe.  
nas mi menskful ladi \* meliors h[er]e-inne,2  
& lowed hire to be mi lemmann \* & lai in myn armes,  
op er elles sopl, sche seide \* pat sche dei schuld?  
is, i-wisse, was it sche \* y wot wel pe sope;  
Metyng3 mi3t it be non \* in no maner wise;  
so louely lay pat ladi & ich \* layking to-gaderes.  
& sopl, sope it is \* a selcoup, me pinkes,  
whider pat ladi is went \* & wold no lenger dwelle."  
panne lep he vp ly3tel \* & loked al a-boute,  
but fe3tly al was fanteme \* & al was in wast.  
panne seide he to him-self \* sikinde ful soft:—  
"For sope, ich am a mad man \* now wel ich may knowe,  
Forto wene in pis wise \* pis wrong metyng sope.  
Min hert is to hauteyn \* so hye3 to climbe,  
so to lene pat ladi \* wold louwe hire so moche,  
pat is an emperours eir \* and euen his pere,  
to come to swiche a caytif \* nay, crist it for-bede  
pat ich more of pat matere \* so misseli3he pe3ke!  

1 MS. "chanbur."  
2 MS. "he inne." Read "here inne."—M.  
3 MS. "Metynt."
For per nys lord in no lond \* pat pe liif weldes, emperour ne kud king \* knowen so riche, pat sopli nere simple i-nouʒ \* pat semly to haue. ek witterli am i wod \* to wene swiche a ping, purth a mys metyng \* pat swiche a maide wold Leye hire lone so lowe \* lemmman me to weld. nay, ich haue wound al in wast \* ac i nel na more Leie mi loue so heije \* mi ladi for to wilne, pouȝh it nere for nouȝ[t] elles \* but for non in erpe 720 no wot i neuer wisseli \* of whom i am come. Mi-self knowe ich nouȝt mi ken \* ne mi kontre noiper, For-pi me [bi-]houes ¹ \* pe buxumlier me bere, Oper-wise pan a wiȝh \* pat were wiȝp his frendes. 724 For ȝiȝf ich wurout oper-wise \* & it were perceyued, & knowe in pis kourt \* mi kare were pe more. for seipli, frend haue ich non \* pat [for] ² me wold speke, ȝiȝf emperour were wiȝp me wroȝp \* his wrappe forto sake. per-for mi hauteyn hert \* bi-houes me to chast, 729 & bere me debonureli \* til better mow bi-tide."

Yet her image so dwelt in his heart, Lo, in pis wise william \* wende to haue schaped, but certes pat semly \* sat so in his hert, for merpe of pat metyng \* of melior pat schene, pat heng heuni in his hert \* & so hard cleued pat, to winne al pe world \* a-wai wold it neuer. but gan to studie stoundemele \* so stifly per-onne, 736 pat lelli be a litel while \* his languere gan wex, so pat he morned neiȝh mad \* & his mete left, & forwardreþ in wo \* & wakeþ i-wisse on niȝtes, swiche listes of loue \* hadde lapped his hert, 740 pat he nist what bote \* his bale best niȝt help. but in his mochel morning \* on a morwe he rises, For kare pat kom to his hert \* & cloped him sone, & whan he geinliche was greiped \* he gript his mantel,

¹ MS. "houes;" but see l. 729, and the note. ² Read "that for me." — M.
as a we13h woful · he wrapped him per-inne,
For no man · he met · his mornyng schuld knowe.
pat vnglad gom · pan goP · in-to a gardin euene,
& wynli wip heie wal · was closed al a-boute.
pat preui pleyng place · to proue pe sope,
Joyned wel iustly · to meliors chamber,
pider went william euene · wittow for sope,
& vnder a tri appeltre · tok him tid a sete,
pat was braunchd ful brode · & bar gret schadue,
& was euun vnder a windowe · of pat worpeis chaunber,
For pat william for wo · was bounde so harde.
pat tre so fayre was floured · & so ful leued,
pat no wi3th mi3t william se · but zif he were pe neere.
ac will[i]am to pe window · witterli mi3t seue
zif meliors wip hire maydenes · in meling pere sete.
whan william vnder pat trie tre · hade taken his place,
he set his si3t sadli · to pat windowe euene,
boute fleechinge or feyntise · from morwe til eue.
but oft cumsed his care · and his colour chaunge[d],
so sore longed him to se · pa semly burde.
swiche a sorwe he suffred · a seue-ni3t fulle,
pat neuer mannes mete ne mi3t · in his bodi sinke,
but held him finliche i-fed · his fille to loke
on pe mayde meliors chaunber · for whom he s[o]
morned.
euer when it ni3d ni3t · noysted was he sore,
pan wold hewend to his chamber · & gret wo make;
but no seg · pat him serued · mi3t pe sope wite
whi him was panne so wo · ne where he was on dayes;
non durst for drede · him dernly a-spie,
but lett him worche his wille · as wel as him liked.
ac deliererly was he di3t · uch day at morwe,
& feipli bouts felachipe · fond wold he walke,
& go in-to pe gardyn · his greues for to slake,
THE LADIES ALSO GO TO THE GARDEN.

looking towards Melior's window,

weytende to pe windowe • & his wo newene,
& sike ful mani si[p • and sum time quake ;  

swiche drede & dol • droȝ to his hert,
lest he ne schold neuer in world • winne þat he zerned.

þurh þe sorwes þat he sufred ¹ • sop forþ to telle,
al his cler colour • comsed forþ fade.  

Febul wax he • & faynt • for-waked a-niȝtes,
ac no wiȝt of þis world • miȝt wite of his care.

but þan(tid on a time • as þis tale minges,
þat william went til þis gardin • his wo fort² slake, 788
& vnder his tri appeltre • turned to sitte,
as weiȝ al for-waked • for wo vpon niȝtes.

and as he a-weitid to þe windowe • wiȝtly þer-aft(e,r,
he slod sliȝli a-doun • a-slepe ful harde, 792
as a wo wery³ weiȝ • for-waked to-fore.

but menge we now of meliors • þat morned þanne
as sadli in hire siȝt • or sorer þif sche miȝt,
þe loue of loueli william • lay hire so nere.  

þanne asked sche þis of alisandrine • as þe hap tidde,
Riȝt as william woiful • so was wox a-slepe,
wher sche hade gete hire gras • þat schold hire greues hele?

"nay, madame, nouȝt ȝut" • seide þe maide þanne, 800
"þouȝ haue i fele times fonde • to finde it þif i miȝt,
but euer wrouȝt i in wast • þe wors hap me liked.
ac were it þour wille nowe • to worche bi mi rede,
Go we to þe gardyn • to gode may it turne ; 804
For feire floures schal we finde • of foulen song here,
& þurh comfort may cacche • swiche happ mai falle,
to haue þe better hele • at þoure hom-kome."  
þarto þis menskful meliors • mekeliche hir graunted,
Forte worche al hire wille • as sche wold deuise. 809
þanne a-ros sche raddely • & romden rïȝt in-fere,
& gan doun bi a grece • in-to þe gardin euene,

¹ MS. "sufrede." See l. 1014. ² See note. ³ Or, "werp."
ALEXANDRINE FINDS WILLIAM ASLEEP.

boute burde or barn · but hem-self tweyne. 812
for alisaunadrine anon · atteled pat time,
& knewe wel bi hire craft · pat sche hade cast bi-fore,
pat pei witterli panne schold · wip william mete.
& whan pe gaye gerles · were in-to pe gardin come, 816
Faire floures pei founde · of sele maner hewes,
pat swete 1 were of sauor · & to pe siXt gode;
& eche busch ful of briddes · pat blipeliche song,
bope pe prusch & pe prustele · bi xxti of bope,
Meleden ful merye · in maner of here kinde.
& alle freliche foules · pat on pat frip songe,
for merpe of pat may time · pei made moche noyce,
to glade wip uth some · pat here gle herde.
ac meliers for al pat merpe · mornede so stronge,
so harde hacches of loue · here hert hadde pirled,
pat per nas gle vnder god · pat hire glade miXt,
but feipli fo[r] febulnesse · feynt wax sche sone,
pat vnder a semli sikamour · sche sett hire to reste,
& pat burde hire by · pat al hir bale wiste.
pansion Meliors munge · pe meschef pat hir eyled;
pat oper comsede to carp · of cumfort & ioie,
& oper munged of pe mater · pat pai most louede.
buthlisauadrine per-after · a-non bi a wile,
peredward as william was · wayted wel zerne,
For sche wiste wel y-now · where pat he laye.
836
& panne seide sche as swipe · to pat semly mayde,
"Madame, melior, so dere · be Marie in heunene,
Me pinkep ich se a seg · a-slepe here bi-side.
wher he be kniXt or bachiler · wot i neuer for sope,
ac he semes bi semblant · in sekenes ful harde.
841
per-for, lady, go we loke · wat seknes him eyles,
& what barn pat he be · pa in bale lenges."
pesenskful mayde meliors · pan mekliche saide,
"a! madame, melior · now mendes 3oure chere,
For y-wisse, 3ond is william · pat 3e so wel louẹp,

1 MS. "sweto."
sum hard hacche has he had & hider com to pleize
Forto lissen his langour & lyes here a-slepe,
For pe swete sawour of pise semly floures!

Panne was pat menskful melior & muchel y-gladed,
& gon pan to pat gome a god pas al bope.
& as tit as pei come him to pe sophe for to telle,
pei sett hem doun softly pat semly be-for.
& wanne pe mayde melior miȝt se his face,
sche pouȝt proly in herte pat leuer hire were
haue welt him at wille pan of pe world be quene;
so fair of alle fetures pe frek was hire pouȝt.
& fayn sche wold pan in feip haue fold him in hire
armes,
to haue him clipped & kest kenely pat tide,
ac sche dreed it to done for oper derne a-spyes.
Alysaunderine pan a-non attlede here pouȝtes,
& wiȝtly wip here whiles dede william to mete
pat pat time him pouȝt pat melior pe hende
and alysaunderine al-one com him po tille,
& pe mayde melior ful mekly him brouȝt
a ful real rose & redly it him takes.
& whanne he in hond hit hade hastely hit semede,
pat he was al sauf & sound of alle his sor greues.
& for his langor was so lissed swich likyng he hadde,
& so gretyly was gladed pat he gan a-wake.
& whan he seij pat semly sitte him bi-fore,
He was al a-wondred & wiȝtly he vp-rises,
& kurteyslyche knelijng pat komli he grett,
& afterward alysaunderine as he wel out.
& pe mayde melior ful mekly pan saide,
"Mi loueli swete lemmman oure lord zif pe ioye!" & william pan vnderstod pe word pat sche saide;
at pat sche him called "leue lemmman" it liked so his hert,
at witerly he couse no word long per-afers speken
but stared on here stily a-stoneyd for ioye,
fat he cast al his colour · and bi-com pale,  
and oft red as rose · in a litel while.
so witerly was fat word · wounde to hert,  
fat he ferd as a mased man · an marred nei; honde,  
so lonely loue fat time · lent him an arewe  
hetterly þurth his hert · for þat hende mayde  
cald him "leine lemman" · he les al his miȝt.

Bot alisaundrine wiste wel · what þat him eyled,  
& seide to him soberly · þise selue words:—  
"swete william, seie me now · what seknes þe greues?  
þi faire hewe is al fade · for þi moche sore;  
&  þif ich miȝt in ani maner · þe amende, y wold."  
þan william wȝtly · in þis wise answered,  
sikende ful sadly · for sor at his hert,  
"Mi dere gode damisele · my deþ is al ȝare,  
so a botteles bale · me byndeþ so harde,  
nas neuer feller feuer · þat euer froke hadde.  
for merthe & alle metes · it makes me to leve,  
slep sertes may [i] nouȝt ¹ · so sore it me greues.  
& al þis mochel meschef · a meting i wite,  
þat me com on a miȝt · a-cursed be þat time!  
for so hard haches · hane hold me seþþe,  
þa i not in þe world · what is me to rede."  
"now swete," seide alisaundrine · "seie me in what  
wise  
þat þat hache þe haldes · & how it þe takes?"  
"I-wisse," seide william · "i wol it nouȝt layne,  
sum-time it hentis me wip hete · as hot as ani fure,  
but quicliche so kene a cold · comes þer-after;  
sum time i siȝh & singe · samen to-geder,  
& þan so þroli þouȝtes · þurlen myn herte,  
þat i ne wot in þe world · where it bi-comse,  
For seipli in my-self · y fele it nouȝt þanne."  
panne alisaundrine a-non · þer-after seide,  
¹ Read "may i nouȝt."—M.
"How was it all
inging to a
dream?"

"That I will
never tell you,"
he replied.

"Your sickness is
perilous," said
Alexandrine.

Then said Melior
to herself,
[Fol. 18.]

"God help us
twain; my sick-
ness seems like
his.

If he only knew
what I suffer!"

Alexandrine
perceived all by
their looks;

and told William
she felt sure he
was in love.

"william, i wold be pray · patow me woldest telle
bi what cas al 3i care · comshed bi a sweuene?"

"nai seretes, sweeting," he seide · "pat schal i neuer, 916
For no meschef on molde · pat me may falle!
I haue leuer it layne · & 3is langour pole,
pech i for drezing of 3is duel · deie at pe last ;
per schal [no] wi3th of pe world · wite whi it comshed !"
panne seide alisandrine · "auntrose is pin euel,
ful wonderliche it pe weues · wel i wot pe sope."
"3a i-wisse," seide william · "wonderli me greues,
for my sekses wip my si3tes · sumtime slakes,
& mani times dop me mourne · mor pan to-for."
Melior pat milde mayde · in pe mene tyme pou3t,
& seide softly to hire-self · 3ise selue wordes,
"a! gracious god · grettest of us alle,
tak hede to pin hond-werk · & help now vs tweyne !
For seretes, 3is same sekenes · mi-self it holdes
In alle wise as it dop william · & wors, as ich wene.
& pouh ich se pat is sekenes · sore hit him haldes, 932
for pitously he is a-peyred · pat perles was to si3t
of fairnesse and of fasoun · pat ani frek schold haue—
but weilawe ! pat he ne wist · what wo y drye,
& haue do lelly for is loue · a wel long while !
936
& but he wi3tly wite · y-wisse, y am done ;
For y dar nou3t for schame · schewe him mi wille,
but yf he wold in ani wise · him-self schewe fornest."
while Meliors in here maner · mened to hire-selue, 940
alyaunderine a-non · attlede alle here pou3tes,
sche knewe wel bi kuntenaunce · of kastyng of lokes.
3an wi3tly to william · 3ise wordes sehe sede,
"i see wel be 3i semblant · what seknesse 3e eyles, 944
hele pou it neuer [so] hard 1 · al holliche y knowe,
pat it ben lestes of loue · pat 3e so hard helden ;
pou waltres al in a weih · & wel y vnderstande
whider 3e belaunce bremliest · bouwes al-gate. 948

1 Read "‘neuer so hard.”—M. See the next line.
and sepe y se it is so sophi y pe warne,
I wol a litel and litel laskit in hast.”

Pan william wel vnderstod sche wist what him ciledes,
& knew al is koueyne for ouyt he koupe hide,
he was a-drail to pe dep last sche him dere wold.
Pan sette he him on kne & soft sayde hire tille,
“Mercy, menskful mayde for Marie loue of heuene!
I gif me al in pi grace my greunes to help,
For pou miyt lenghe mi liif zif pe likes sone.”

Pan alysaundrine a-non answered & saide,
“how miyt i pe help? what haue i to pi bote?”
“I-wisse,” pan sayde william “i wol no lenger hele,
My liif, my langor, & my dep lenges in pi warde;
but i pe sunner haue socour of pat swete mayde,
pe comliche creature pat in pi keping dwelles,
alle the surgens of salern ne schul saue mi liue.
per-for louliche ladi in pe lis al min hope,
pou miyt me spakly [saue] oper spille zif pi-self likes.”

Alysaundrine a-non panne answered & sayde,
“now i-wisse, william witow for sope,
Sepe pou sadli hast me said pe sope of pi cunsaille,
& tellest me trenly pou trestes to my help,
zif miyt in ani maner mende pi sorwe,
but i were busi per a-boute to blame i were.
per-for certes, be pou sur sep it may be no oper,
holliche al min help pou schalt haue sone.”
Pan william was gretliche glad & loueliche hire ponked.
Pan alysaundrine a-non as sche wel Coupe,
clepad pat mayde meliors mekeliche hir tille,
& seide, “a mercy, madame on pis man here,
pat nezh is drine to pe dep al for youre sake!”
“how so for my sake?” seide melior panne;
“I wraped him neuer pat i wot in word ne in cede.”
“no sertes, madame, pat is sop saide pat oper,

1 Read “spakly saue other spille.”—M.
WILLIAM AND MELIOR ARE BETROTHED.

“ac he has langured for your love: a ful long while; 
& but ye graunt him your grace: him greipli to help, 
& late him be your leman: lelly for euer, 
his liif nel nouȝt for langour: last til til morwe.

perfor, comeliche creature: for crist pat pe made, 
les nouȝt is liif ȝut: for a litel wille.

seppe he so lelly pe loues: to leman he pone take.”
pan meliors ful mekliche: to pat mayde carped, 
and seide ful soburli: smyland a litel,

“nou bi god pat me gaf: pe gost & pe soule, 
I kepe ȝut for no creature: manquellere be clepud, 
ac leuer me were lelly: a manes liif to saue.

seppe he for me is so marred: & has misfare long, 
ful prestely for þi praire: & for þe perile als, 
þat i se him set inne: and to saue his liue,
h[er]e i graunt him greiðli: on godis holi name,
lelliche mi loue for euer: al mi liif time, 
& gif a gift here to god: & to his gode moder,
whan william herd þise wordes: i hete þe forsoþe,
he kneled quikli on knes: & oft god þonked, 
þat oper lud, whil i liue: schal i loue neuer!”

Then thanked God heartily,

and he and Melior 
were pledged to 
each other.

Then they clasped 
and kissed each other, and told 
each other of their sufferings.

Alexandrine thought she 
would not be 
missed,

who has 
lanquished for 
thy love a long 
while.

Take him for thy 
love.”

“I would rather 
save a man’s life 
than kill him,” said Melior.

[ Fol. 19.

“To save his life, I will grant him my love.”

Then William

and he and Melior 
were pledged to 
each other.

Then they clasped 
and kissed each other, and told 
each other of their sufferings.

Alexandrine thought she 
would not be 
missed,
AT SUNSET THE LADIES GO AWAY.

for sche trowed trewly to talke þe soþe,
were sche out of þe wye þat william wold fonde
for to pleie in þat place þe prirne loue game,
& to hete here þan to layke þere likying þat time.
sche goþ a-boute in-to þe gardyn for to gader floures,
& to wayte þat no weȝht walked þerinne,
for drede of dessaueryng of þat was do þere.
william wel wip meliors þis wille þan dede,
& layked þere at lyking þat þe long daye,
til þe sunne was neȝh set þ sopli, to reste.
þanne alisaundrine at arst þan antresse hem tille,
& mekle to meliors þat madame, þan sche seide,
"haue þe geten þe gras þat i þou geynliche hiȝt?"
I trowe trewli þe þis þyme þour sorwe be passed;
eijer of þou, as þy leue is god leche til oþer,
alle þe surgyens of salerne so sone ne couþen
haue þour langoures a-legget i þe for to soþe.
þan william wax wiȝly wonderli a-schamed,
& he þe meliors mercy mekle hire criede
to kuuerel wel her cuneisde for cas in þis erþe,
& þroli hire þonked moni þousand sipes;
"For sche hade brouȝt hem of bale boþe, þei seide,
"& i-lengþed here lif mani long þere."

A

alisauandrine anon after þat ilke
bad meliors manly þere merþe þan stinte,
& seide, "it is so neȝh niȝt þat nedes mote ye parte;
I drede me of dessauering for þe haue dwelled long."
"allas! þis mochel meschef" saide melior þanne,
"þis day is schorter to siȝt þan it semed euere!"
& william seide þe same þ sopli þat þyme.
but alisaundrine anon answerede & seide,
"Make þe no mourning for þe may mete eft
dernli hennes-forþ eche day whan þou dere likes;
for þi hasteli boþe heigne þou a-sunder."

1 Read "& to-gedere þan" (?). But see note.
THE DUKE OF SAXONY DECLARES WAR.

So they kissed, and took leave of each other, and returned happy, for they were quite cured.

William was beloved both by rich and poor, and especially by the emperor.

Alexandrine kept their counsel well.

Now it befell that the Duke of Saxony made war on the emperor of Rome.

No stone walls withstood his assaults.

The emperor was greatly grieved, and sent messengers to all his lords to come to him fully arrayed.

\[\text{Panne seij pei no sociour but sunder panne pei moste; wip clipping & kessing pei kauzt here leve, } 1053\]
\[\& eiper tok tit is way to his owne chaumber, blissful for pei were botned of here bales strong, seppen hastely were pei hol & haden alle here wille, wip alle listes of loue alle longe zeres } 1057\]
\[\text{Priveli vnperceyued pei pleyed to-gedere, pat no seg vnder sunne souched no gile. }\]
\[\text{William was bi-loued wip riche & wip pore, so fre to fesse alle frekes wip ful faire ziftes, pat emperour soli him-self soucreynli him loued, & seppe alle oper seges pat seijen him wip eijen; }\]
\[\text{& algate alisaundrine at alle poyntes hem serued so slijliche, pat no seg souched non euele, but alle gauen god word to gomes pat hem plesede. }\]

Hit tidde after bi time as pe tale minges, pe dou3ti duk of saxoyne drow to pat londe 1068
\[\text{wip ouer-gret ost godmen of armes, wrongly forto werre wip emperour pat time. wip bobanne & wip bost brent fele tounes, } 1072\]
\[\text{no strengpe him wip-stod of sad stonen walles, but bet a-doun burwes & brutned moche peple, so pat duel was to deme pe duresse pat he wrouzt. whanne pese tyding were told to emperour of rome, he was gretly a-greu2 no gome port him blame, 1076}\]
\[\text{pat eni weigh of pe world schuld werre on his lond. his sondes panne he sente swipe al a-boute to alle pe lordes of his land to lasse & to more, pat ouztten him omage or ani seute elles, 1080}\]
\[\text{& warned hem werfore he wiughty hem of-sent, & het hem alle hize pider as harde as pei mift, wel warnished for pe werre wip clene hors & armes. whanne emperours komaundment was kud al a-boute, } 1084\]

1 MS. "ouer gart gret;" see note. 2 MS. "a-greues."
Mani was pat bold barn · pat busked pider sone, kings & kud dukes · & knij' tes ful gode, & ope bold burnes · a-boute sexti pousand, alle boue to batayle · in ful bri3t armes, and ri3t in-to rome · alle pe rinkes drowe, to wite pempourours wille · how he wircfe pou3t.

Whanne william pat worpi child · wist of pat fare, was no glader gom · pat euer god made, he went even to pempour · & enys him sayde, knelyng on his kne · curteysli & faire, "Gode sir, for goddis loue · grant me a bone; 3if me pe ordur of kni3t · to go to pis dedus, & i hope to heuene king · mi help schal nou3t fayle, pat i nel manly wi3p mi mi3t · meynete[ne] 3our ri3t." pempour was gretly glad · & graunted his wille, & made him kni3t on the morwe · & mo for his sake. of proude princes sones · dou3ti men toward, Fulle foure shere · for williames lone, & 3af hem hors & armes · as an hend lord schold, & made williwm here wardeyn · as he wel mi3t, to gye & to gourne · pe gay yong knij' tes. & whanne pemp[e]j'ours ost · was holli a-sembled, he told to-fore pe grete · his tene & his harmes, how pe duk of saxoyne · dede him gret wrong, brent his nobul burwes · & his burnes quelled, & komande hem kendely · here cuzseile to 3eue, In what wise were best · to wreke him panne. & alle seide at o sawe · "sire, we 3ou rede, streches for3 wip 3our ost · stinte3 no lenger, & fondes to do pe duk · what duresse 3e may. hampres him so harde · to sum cost pat be drawe, sewes him to sum cite · & a-sege him pere, til 3e wip fin fors · pe freke haue wonne."

Whanne pempour wist wel · [e] wille of his cun-sayle,
PREPARATIONS FOR THE BATTLE.

They soon came to where the duke was.

The duke sends to defy and challenge the emperor.

The emperor tells William of this challenge.

William says he hopes they will abate the duke's pride.

Both hosts prepare for the battle.

he diȝt him deliuerly • & dede him on gate holly wip al his herde • pat he hade a-sembled. 
& wel þei were warnesture • of vitayles i-now, plentiuosly for al peple • to passe where þei wold. & so harde þei hized þan • i hote þe for soþe, þat al þe clene cumpanye • com to þe place 1120

neþ þere as þe douȝti duk • duresse so wrouȝt. to þe duk was it told tit • trewli þe soþe, how þemperour wip ost1 • þider was come, to a-wreke him of þe wrong • þat þan was wrouȝt þere, & swiþe for bobonance & bost • burnes he sent 1124
enuiously to þemperour • & egged him swiþe bi a certayne day • bataile to a-bide, or elles, he sent him to say • schortely he wold 1129
bruttene alle his burnes • & brenne his londes. þise tyding were told • to þemperour sone, & wiȝtly whan he þanne wist • william he calle[d],2 þat ȝong bold bachiler • & blisse him told 1132
how despitosly þe duk • of þat dede him warned, to be boun be a certayne day • bataile to holde. sir william ful wisly • þise wordes þanne seide, "sir, god for his grace • graunt ȝou wel to spede," 1140

to a-bate þe bost • of þat breme duk.
& so hope i wel, sire • we schal atte best." ful menskfully to þe messangeres • þemperour þan seide, he wold be boun bleþeli • þe bold batayle to hold, 1144
& þei blisse dude hem forþ • & þe duk tolde.
þan boþe partijes prestly • a-paraylde hem þat time of alle tristy a-tir • þat to batayle longed, & made hem alle merie • in þe mene while, 1148
til þe selue day þat was set • soply was come, & boþe partijes here place • pertiliche hade chosen In a ful fayre feld • feþly to telle. þanne busked þei here batayles • on þe best wise, 1152

1 M.S. has a blank space between "ost" and "þider;" see note.
2 Read "called." — M.
& whanne þe renkes were arayed redly as þei wold, bugles & bemes men gun blowe fast, & alle maner menstracie þere was mad þanne, forto hardien þe hertes of here heigh burnes. 1156 þanne bi-gan þe batayle breme for þe nones; Mani strok in litel stounde sternely was þer þeuen, & mani a bold burne a sone brouȝt of liue. but shortly for to telle þe schap of þis tale, 1160 þe duk hade þe douȝtire men to deme þe soþe, & mani mo þan þemperour & þei so manly fouȝten, þat balfull þe first batayle þei brutned to deþe, & þai ful fast for fere guane cle þan þat miȝt; . 1164 but þe almanus seweden sadly & slowe douȝ riȝtes. whan þemperour say þat siȝt þis men so i-quelled, him was wonderli wo þe witow for soþe. ful pitousli þan preciede he to þe prince of heuene 1168 forto giȝt him grace þis gomes to saue, & seide, "heigh king of heuene for þi holy name, ne fauore nouȝt so my [fo] 1 þat falsly me so marres. for god what 2, i na gult him neuer to giȝt him enche-
soun 1172 forto wirch me no wrong ne werre on my londe. & lord! he is my lege man lelly þou knowes, for holly þe londes þat he has þe holdes of mi-selue, þer-for þe wronger he wirches al þe world may know. for þi a mynde on me, lord for þi moder loue, 1177 help me haue þe herre hand her-affter in my riȝt!"

William þe ȝong kniȝt was so neigh be-side, þat he herd þe pytouns pleiȝt þat þemperour made, & siked for sorwe þer-of sore wip-alle. 1181 but quicly clepud he þe ȝong kniȝtes alle, & seide, "leue lordinges lestenes to mi saue; nouȝ go we kypȝe oure kniȝthod for crîstes lone of heuene, 1184 that it is time to prove their knighthood. 1 Read "my fœ that falsly."—M. 2 Sic. Read "wot."
Lo, our folk gyncep to falle: for dufaute of help.

lettès nouȝt for ȝoure lüres: ȝour lord forto socoure,
hasteli wip god hert nouȝ: hiȝes ȝou to pe dede, 1187
& ho-so failep for feyteynce: wild fur him for-brenne!"

pan wiȝtly boute mo wordes: william gynnes ride,

dresly toward here fos: as frek out of witte;
þere þe pres was perelouste: he þrked in fornest,
& blessed so wip his briȝt bront: a-boute in eche side,
þat what rink so he rauȝt: he ros neuer after. 1193
& sopli forto seie: wip-inne a schort while,
william wip his owne hond: so wiȝtliche pleide,
þat he slow six of þe grettes: sop forto telle, 1196
& þat dousȝiest were of dede: of þe dukes ost.
þat on was his neuwe: a nobul kniȝt of armes,
þat oþer was his stiward: þat stiȝted al his meyne.
Þe oþer were lórdes of þat lond: lelly of þe best. 1200
& whanne þe duk was war: how william him demeyned,
& how balfullly he brutned: his burnes to depe,
& namelige for his newe: þat nam he most to herte,
he wax neij ousȝt of his witte: for wrap & for anger,
& clepud on his kniȝtes: þat kene were & nobul, 1205
& seide, "lordinges for my loue: no lenger ne stinetes,
but chases þat kene kniȝt: þat þis kare vs werches.
Loo, how luperly þat lud leyes on ȝoure burnes, 1208
non may is sterne strok: wipstande þat he hittes."
þus despitusly þe duk: drayed him þanne,
þat his kniȝtes swipe swore: what [so] it bi-tidde,
þei wold winne william wiȝtly: oþer quik or dede. 1212
þan ride to-gedere a gret route: of rinkes ful nobul,
& went enen to sir william: & wonderli him bi-sette;
ac he wip dousȝi dentes: defended him long,
but, sopliche for to telle: so was he ouer-macched, 1216
þat þei wip fyȝn force: for-barred his strokes,
& woundede him wikkedly: & wonne him of his stede,
& bounden him as bluȝ: him bale to wiche,
& drowen him toward þe duk: his dom forto here.
HE TAKES THE DUKE PRISONER.

but william whipes \* pat wistly of-seizyen, & demened hem douztili \* dintes te dele, pe zong kene kni\'tes \* so kudden here strenge, pat pei wonne hem wistly \* weyes ful large, 

til pei hadde perced pe pres \* pertily to here maister, & rescude him rediliche \* for \(^1\) rinkes pat him ladden. pan pei him vnbond bliue \* & brou\'t him his stede, & triliche was he a-tired \* in ful tristy armes;

his scheld on his schulder \* a scharp swerd in honde. & whan pis william was zare \* he waited him a-boute, leperly as a lyoun \* he lepes in-to pe prese, prestly per as pe pres \* of peple was pikkest. panne lente he swiche leuere \* to ledes pat he of-

raunt, pat pe lif sone he les \* pat lau\'t ani dint, & euer pan drow he to pe duk \* deland swiche paye. & as sone as he him seiz \* he sesed a spere, & dressed him to pe duk \* presteli to iuste. & whan pe duk was war \* pat he wold come, boute feyntice of feuer\(^2\) \* he festned his spere, & grimly wi\' gret cours \* eizper gerde\'p opur. & william wi\' god wille \* so wel pe duk hitt, pat furth scheld & scholder \* pe scharpe spere grint, & hetterly bope hors \* man \* he hurled to pe grounde, panne li\'zily lep he a-doun \* & lau\'t out his brond, delierliche to pe duk \* duoteliche he seilde, "sire, pou seidest me zer-while \* pou schuldest me do quelle, & madest pi men me binde \* meschef to pole; but gretly y ponek god \* pat gart me a-chape, & dede pe wante pi wille \* for pou wrong poutest. but, sire, in pe same seute \* sett artow nou\'\', & y am prest as pi prisoun \* to paye pe my ransum! 

3eld pe to me 3eply \* or zerne pou schalt deie, For alle pe men vpou mold \* ne mow it now lette."

1 Read "fro." 
2 Read "boute feyntice, on feuter" (?)
The duke yields up his sword, and asks for mercy.

William takes his sword, and takes him to the emperor.

who embraces and kisses William for joy.

Then William delivered the duke to the emperor.

[Fol. 23.]

The duke’s men fled away as fast as they could.

The Romans pursued them, slaying and taking prisoners,

so that very few of them got away.

Night fell, and it grew very dark, and some got away in the darkness.

pe duk þan was in drede · & wend to deie sone, & lelly, þough him lop þouȝt · no lenger to strine, swipe he ȝald vp his swerð · to same þanne his lue, 1256 & seide, “man, for þi mensk · haue mercy on me nouȝte, lette me nouȝt lese þe liif ȝut · lord, y þe bi-cheche.” þanne williȝam witly · as a wigh hende, recceyued of þat riche duk · realy his swerde, 1260 & euen to þemperour · wip him þan he hijed. wanne þemperour seijȝ williȝam come · & wip him þe duke, he was on þe gladdest gome · þat miȝt go on erþe; & williȝam þanne to welkome · he wendes him aȝeynes, & cliȝte him kindeli · & kest fele sipes. 1265 þan williȝam wiȝtly · as he wel couȝte, proffered him þat prisoner · prestely at his wille to do þan wip þe duk · what him dere þouȝt. 1268 þemperour þat worþi williȝam · wel ofþ þan ponked of þe grete grace þat god · godliche þere schewed, & strokes was þer delt na mo · fram þe duk was take. For al his folk þan guinne fle · as fast as þei miȝt, 1272 & he þat hadde best hors · þan held him best sauad. but þemperours men manly · made þe chace, & slowen doun bi eche side · wham þei of-take miȝt, but þif þei manly hem meked · mercy to cri. 1276 & euer williȝam so wiȝtly · went hem a-mong to þe boldest burnes · as he bi-fore hadde, þat soply dar y seie · þurth his socour þanne, Riȝt fewe went a-wey · vn-woundet or take. 1280 ac hadde þe day last lenger · lelli to seye, no wiȝt a-wei hadde schaped · i wot wel þe sope. but þe niȝt was so neiȝ · þat non miȝt sen oþer þe furþe del of a furlong · from him þat time. 1284 & in þat derk þe dukes [men]1 · wip-þrow hem manie, & ho-so hardest miȝt hize · held him nouȝt bi-giled. þemperour2 wip moche merþe · his men þan meled;

1 Read “the dukes men.” —M.
2 MS. “þempour.”
& whanne pei samen were a-sembled · sop for to telle, 
pei hadde take pat time · of trie grete lordes 1289
Fulle five hundered · of ful nobul prisouns, 
wipe-out alle pe burnes · pat in batayle deide. 
pan was pempourer gretei glad · & ofte god poked, 
& williams werk · pat he so wel hadde spedde. 1293
& holliche panne wipe his host · hizede to here tentes 
wipe merpe of alle menstracye · & made hem attese, 
& turned to rest at time · til erliche a morwe. 1296
& wanne pei were a-rise · pei renewed to cherche, 
& herden holly here masse · & afterward sone pempourer al holliche · his cuenseyle dede clepe, 
& sone bi here a-sent · at pat selue time, 1300
Riȝt as william wold · pat wisly him radde, 
alle pe douȝthi lordes · of pe dukis were take;
he dede feche hem him bi-fore · & freyned hem swipe,
3if pei wold of him holly · halde alle here londes. 1304
& pei graunted godli · ful glad of pat sawe, 
& alle anon riȝtes · pere omage him dede, 
& pempourer wel loueliche · deliuered he[m] penne, 
& sente wipe hem sondes · to saxoyne pat time, 1308
& nomen omage in his name · nouȝt forto layne,
Foro riȝteleche pat reaume real · of riche & of pore.
whanne pat dede was do · dernly at wille, 
and alle lele lawes · in pat lond sette, 1312
& alle pe peple held hem payed · pes forto haue;
whanne pempourer it wist · he was wel a-payed, 
& loueliche wipe alle his lordes · to lumbardie faires, 
wipe alle pe merpe vpon molde · pat man niȝt diuise;
but feiphi his felachipe · for wipe him he hadde. 1317
pe douȝty duk of saxoyne · pe duel pat he made, 
for his peple was slayn · & to prison take, 
& wist pan he hade wrongly · wrouȝt purȝth his pride; 
& swiche duel drow to hert · for his dedus ille, 1321
pat he deide on pe fifte day · to talke pe sophe, 
whanne pempourer pat wist · wiȝtily he comanded,

Five hundred had been taken, and many slain.
The Romans retire to their tents.
Next morning, they go to church and hear mass.
The prisoners are brought, and asked if they will submit to the emperor.
They gladly do him homage, and are released.
All being thus settled as regarded Saxony,
the emperor marched to Lombardy.
The duke of Saxony felt such grief for the wrong he had done,
that he died on the fifth day.
The Emperor's Message to Melior.

He is buried honourably.

The emperor returns to Rome, sending messengers before him to his daughter.

The messengers greet Melior, and tell their message.

[Fol. 24.] Melior asks if the enemy gave them much trouble, and they say, it was a very sharp encounter.

The duke's numerous host would have prevailed, but for the succour of a certain knight, i.e., William, the one but newly knighted.

to burye him as out to be swiche a burne nobul, wip alle worchipe & wele; so was he sone.\footnote{This line and the preceding one are transposed in the MS.}

pan remued pempour toward rome euene, & wistly william wip him pat was wounded sore; but lelly nobul leches loked to his woundes, \footnote{MS. "al."}

pat seide he schuld be sauf & sweteliche heled. messangers ful manly pempour panne sente, by-føre to his dere dou3ter to do hire to wite pat he come wip his companie as\footnote{Read "al oure lines."—M. Cf. l. 1360.} crist wold, al saf. pe messangers ful manly to meliors panne spedde, & gretten hire godli whan bei pat gode seie, \footnote{1334}

& mynged here message to pat mayde hende, how hir fader in helpe hom wold come feipli wip-inne pe fourtene-ni3t wip his frekes bold. Gret merpe to pe messangers meliors pan made, 1338 for pe tidy tidinges pat ti3tly were seide.

"nou3 faire frendes, be your feip fond 3e ani lette of segges pe oper side pat sette 3ou a-geynes?"

"o madame!" seide pe messagers "what mele 3e noupe? seppe crist deide on pe croyce mankinde to saue, 3e ne herde neuer, y hope of so hard a cunter, 1344 ne of so fele burnes at on batayle slayne!" "telles how 3ou tidde" seide meliors panne.

"Madame," seide pe messagers "be marie in heuen, pe duk hadde so gret an host of gode men of armes, pat sopli al oure side sone slayn hadde bene, 1349 nadde pe socour of o seg pat in oure side dwellep, pat hap lengped al oure [lines]\footnote{3} leue 3e forsope, purth pe dou3ti dedes pat he hap do pere." 1352 "swete sire, what is he?" pat seide meliors sone. "I-wisse," he seide, "it is william pat is newe kni3ted, he may lelly be hold a lord & ledere of peples, Forto weld al pe world to wisse & to rede, 1356
for þer nis king vnder crist · þat he ouer-com nolde. L-wisse, made his werk be · we mow nouȝt for-sake, þi fader and al his folk · so misfaren hadde, þat alle here liues in a stounde · hadde be lore." 1360 þanne told þei hire tiȝtly · al þe trewe soþe, at how miche meschef · here men were formest, & seþ þe how wiȝtly williȝam · went to here foos, & dede delierly nym þe duk · to talke þus formest; & seþ þe grettes[t] lordes · he garte here liif tine, 1365 & also þei told trewli · how he was take him-selue, & redelly wip his owne rinkes · rescued after;¹
& seþ þe what dedes he dede · he tok þe selue duk, 1368 and brouȝt purth is bolde dedes · þe batayle to hende; & seþ þe how þe duk for duel · deyde in here ward, & how al saxoyne was set · wip wel sadde lawes, to wirche here faderes wille · þurȝth williȝam dedes, & whan þis tale was told · meliors tyt seide, 1373 "leue lordinges, for my loue · lelly me telles, comes þat williȝam wip my fader · & weldes his hele?" "þe sertes, madame," seide þei · "he sewes your fader; but wel weldes he nouȝt his hele · for wonded was he sore, 1377 þat greuȝn him gretly · but god may do bote."
"For mary loue," seide meliors · "mai he be heled?"
"þa certes, madame · he is so sounde now þe, 1380 þat he may redly ride & rome · whan þat hime likes."
Meliors to þe messageris · þan made gret ioye, for þe tyding þat þei told · touchend hire fader. but i hote þe, in hert · sche hade swiche blisse, 1384 þat neuer womman in þis world · miȝt weld more, for hire louely lemman · hade swiche los wonne, to bere him best in þat batayle · wip so breme dedus. þanne made þei hem [merie]² · to make schort tale, 1388

¹ The MS. has "rescued him after"; but either wip or him must be struck out.
² The alliteration would lead us to supply merie.—M. See l. 1409.
After a week, the emperor arrives. So plly al pat seueni;t; & so, atte last, pemperour & alle peple to his palays come; Recceyued was he of romaynes realy as lord. 

Melior goes out to meet him. panne meliors ful mekly wip maydenes fele, 1392 ferde out a-jens hire fader & faire him gret, & hire louely lemmen lelly next after, & made hem as moche ioye as mit all any burde; Kyndeliche clipping & and kessing hire fader, 1396 & wip a curteise cuentenaunce william next after, for no seg pat it seye schuld schoche but gode. but priueli un-perceyued sche praire william panne, to secche softily to hire chaumber as sone as he mit. & he bi quinte contenance to come he granted, 1401 for he ne durst openly for ouer-trowe of gile; but wel sche knew purth konnyng at pat cas his wille. to long mater most it be to myng al pe ioye, 1404 & pe real romayns array for here lordes sake, & pe mochel mornyng pei made for here frendes, whanne pei wist wittyer whiche in batayle deyde. but confort for pe conquest pei cau3t sone after, 1408 & made hem as mery as ani men coue.1 & william went to meliors when he seij time, & layked him at likyng wip pat faire burde pleyes of paramours vn-parceyued longe time, 1412 so siliche, pat no seg scouched non ille. but algate alysaundrine atte wille hem serued, pat non knew here cuunseile but pei pre one.

One Easter-tide, the emperor summons all his lords and ladies. But panne tidde on a time titly per-after, 1416 pemperour erded stille in rome at pe ester tide, & for pat solempne sesoun 2 dede somoue alle pe grete, of lordes & ladies pat to pat lond partened. and alle to his comandement komen ful sone, 1420 & derly at pat day wip deynteues were pei serued. as pei were meriest at mete to menge al pe sope, 1 Catchword —"& william." 2 MS. "sofou."
xxx busy burnes · barounes ful bolde,
comen in manly message · fro emperour of greece, 1424
& bi kinde of kostant-noble · keper was panne.
pe messageres rïst reall · were arayde, for sope,
al in glimerand gold · grebang⁴ to rïstes,
It were tor for to telle · al here atyr riche. 1428
but euer to emperour · alle pei zede in-fere,
& kurtesliche vpon here knes · pei komseid him grete
Godli fro emperour of greece · & fro his gode sone.
& emperour ful semly · seide to hem tanne, 1432
"he pat made man mest · 3our liues mot saue,
& alle 3oure clene companie · crist 3if hem ioye
for pe menskfulles[t] messageres · pat euer to me come!"

On of pe barons bold · bi-guame to scheewe here nedes,
pat was a gret lord in greece · roachas he hitz, 1437
& seide soberly to emperour · in pis selue wise,
"Leue lord & ludes · lestien to mi sawes!
pe gode emperour of greece · pe grettest of us alle, 1440
whas messageres we be mad · to munge 3ou his wille,
sendes you to seie · he has a sone dere,
on pe triest man to-ward · of alle dou3ti dedes,
pat any man vpon molde · may of here, 1444
pat schal be emperour after him · of heritage bi kynde.
& he haþ oft herde sayd · of 3oure semly dou3ter,
how fair, how fetis sche is · how freli schapen; 1447
& for pe loos on hire is leide · & loue of 3our-selue,
he prayeth, lord, vowche-sauf · pat his sone hire wedde.
Gruche nou3t per-a-gayn · but godli, i rede,
Graunte pis faire forward · fulfillen in haste.
& zif ye so dop, i dar seic · & sopliche do proue, 1452
sche schal weld at wille · more gold pan 3e siluer;
& haue mo solempne cites · and semliche casteles,
pan 3e treuly han smale tounes · o[r] vntydi houses,
& herof, sire, wiȝtly · 3our wille wold we knowe. 1456

⁴ We ought probably to read greithed.—M.
As the emperor's lords are all there, he can give his answer at once.

He and his lords assent.

The marriage is to be made at Midsummer.

The messengers return to Greece, loaded with gifts.

The report of the marriage is spread through Rome.

William heard of it as he was at play,

[Fol. 26.]

and rode home, feeling well-nigh mad.

He went to bed and fell sick.

All who heard of it were much grieved.

pe grete lordes of 3our land · bep lenged now here, 3e mow wijstly now wite · 3our wille & 3our rede, & wijstly do vs to wite · what answeres 3ou likes." 1459 Jjemperour calde his cunseil · for to knowe here wille, & godli boute grucching · alle graunted sone, & setten a serteyne day · pat solempne to holde ; & sad seurte was sikered · on bope sides panne, pat menskful mariage to make · at midesomer after. 1464 sone were pe messagers made · mildli at ese, while hem liked lende · & lelly, when pei wente, Grete giffes were giue · & of gold & of seluer, & pei wijstly went hom · wiip ioye & wiip merpe. 1468 pe answeres of here herend · Jjemperour pei tolde; Gret mwrpe was mad · for pat message in rome, & pe word went wide · how pe mayde was 3eue rifliche purth-out rome · & eche a rynk was blipe 1472 pat pe milde meliors · so mariede scholde bene to Jjemperours eir of 3reece · & euerich man wiip ioye told it forp til ope · ti3tli al a-boute.

but pe worpi william · per-of wist he nou3t, 1476 For he was atte a bourdes · per bachiliers pleide, whanne pe tidin' was per told · witow forsope, out of pat faire felachip · ferde he pan sone as mekeli as he mi3t · lest eni mysse trowede ; 1480 but when he was passed pe pres · he prikke as swipe as he mi3t hipe his hors · for hurtyng of spors ; nei3h wod of witte · for woo of pat sawe, for he schold lese his lemman · his liif pan he hated. 1484 wiip care was·he ouer-come · bi pat he com to his inne, pat he for bale as bluie · to his bed went, & siked panne so sore · pe sope forto telle, 1487 pat uch wiip pat it wist · wend he ne schuld kene. & when hit was wist in rome · pat william was sek, mochel was he mened · of more & of lasse ; for a beter bi-loued barn · was neuer born in erpe,

MS. "diting" ; cf. l. 1493.
IS TO MARRY THE GREEK EMPEROR'S SON. 55

than he was wiþ ich wiȝt · wil he woned inrome. 1492

tiding þan were tiȝtly · to pemptour i-told, & þan swoned for sorwe · & swelt neiȝhonde; but kniȝtes him vp cauȝt · & comfort him better.
& when þan purth comfort · was comen of his care, 1496 he went wiȝtli to william · to wite how he ferde, & kniȝtes folwed him forp · fine oþer siȝxe.
anon as he com him to · he asked how he ferd. "sire!" þan seide he softly · "certes, so ille. 1500

þat i leue my lif · last nouȝt til to morwe, but god, sire, for his grete miȝt · graunt you ioye, for þe worchip þat þe · han wrust to me iore." when þemperour hade herd · holly his wordes, & seie him so sekly · þat he ded semed, swiche sorwe sank to his hert · þat miȝt he nouȝt suffre þer to be, bot he miȝt · his bale hane slaked;
of him wiȝtly he tok his leue · & went hom aȝeine, weping as he wold wide · for wo & for sorwe, 1509 & deliuerli to his douȝter · his del þan he made, how william hire worþi nory · was neiȝe atte deþe.
& sche hire fader cumfort · fast as sche miȝt, 1512 but worse was neuer woman · for wo at hire herte.
as fast as hire fader · was faren of þe weie, sche wept & weiled · as sche wold haue storuce,
& swoned ofte siþe · her sche sese miȝt. 1516 but alisandrine anon · þat al hire cuȝseile wist, comfort hire as sche couþe · wiþ alle kinde speches,
& bad hire wiȝtly wende · to wite how he ferde. " & sopliche, madame · so may hit bi-tide, 1520
3our comfort mai him keuere · & his sorwe slake." þan meliors mekly · hire maydenes dede calle,
& many of hire meyne · for drede of missespeche, & went ful wiȝtly · to will[î]ams inne, 1524 as nouȝt were bot [to] wite · how þat he ferde.
& when sche drow to his chaumber · sche dede ful sono
here maydones & oper meyne · mekeli a-stente, al but alisaundrine · alone pei tweyne.
pei went in-to william · wip-oute any more, & busked hem euen to his bed · & bi him gunne sitte, & seide sone softly · "my swete lemmaw dere, allone but alisaundrine · am i come to pe 1532 ferto wite of pi wo · & what pat pe eiles. Mi perles paramours · my pleye & my ioye, spek to me spakli · or i spille sone."

William tijtly him turned · & of hire tok hede, 1536 & seide aswipe · "sweting, wel-come!
Mi derworpe derling · an my dere hert, Mi blis & mi bale · pat botelesse wol ende! but comliche creature · for cristes lone of heuene, 1540 for what maner misgelt · hastow me forsake, pat lelly haue pe loued · & wile i liue penke? feipli boute feintyse · pou me failest noupe, pat hast turned pin entent · ferto take a-noper. 1544 Gret wrong hastow wrouzt · & wel gret sinne, to do me swiche duresse · to deye for pi sake. but loueliche lemmaw · oure lord mot pe zeld pat pi worpi wille was · to come to me noupe; 1548 for pou hast lengped my liif · & my langour schortet burth pe solas & pe si3t · of pe, my swete hert!" & whan melior hadde herd · holly al his wille, sche siked sadly for sorwe · & wel sore wepte, 1552 & seide, "loueliche lemmaw · leue pou for sope, alle men vpon molde · no schuld my liif saue, zif pou wenestow of pis world · pat i ne wende after! me, lemmaw, lore hastow me nou3t · leue pou forsopce, for pouh mi fader folliche · haue forwardes maked, 1557 wenestow pat i wold · his wille now parfourme? nay, bi god pat me gaf · pe gost and pe soule, al pat trauaile he has tynt · what euer tyde after! 1560

1 MS. "paramours."
for pere nis man upon molde · pat euer schal me haue but 3e, loueliche lemmam · leue me for trewe,
In feip pei y schold per-fore · be fordon as swipe, doahun dep quic on erpe · to-drawe or on-honged!" 1564
"3e, wist y pat," seide william · "witterly to speke, of alle harms were ich hol · hastily ript noupe!"
"3is, be marie," seide meliors · "misdrede sow neuer;
I wil fulfille alle forwardes · feipli in dede!" 1568
pan was william ful glad 1 · witow for sope, & eiper kindeli clipped ope · and kest wel ofte, & wrout elles here wille · whil hem god liked.
& treuly whan2 time com · pat pei twyne scholde, 1572
Meliors wip hire meyne · mekeliche hom wente;
william a stounde stinte stille · at his owne inne, of alle his harde haches · heled atte best.
alle pe surgens of salerne · so sone ne copen, 1576
haue lesed his langour · and his liif saued, as pe maide meliors · in a mile wei dede.
pe word wide went sone · pat william was heled, & vche gome was glad · and oft god ponked, 1580
& william on pe morwe · wel him a-tyred
Gayli in clopes of gold 3 · & ope gode harneis, & komes euyn to kourt · as kni3t hol & fere,
heriend heiliche god · pat his liif saued. 1584
& sopli as sone as pemerour · say him wip eisen, he hized him hastily · & hent him in his arnes, & clupte him & keste · kyndeliche ful ofte, & jus pei left in likyng · a god while after. 1588

But now more to ming[e · of pe messagers of grece.
as tyt as pei had told · trewli to here lord, how realy pei were rescuyeud · in rome pe riche, & pe gracious graunt · pei gaten of here herande, 1592
pemerour of grece gretly · was gladed in herte.
swipe sent he sondes · to somoun pat time

1 MS. "gald." 2 MS. "wahan." 3 MS. "glod."
The emperor of Greece summons his lords, and they set off to ride to Rome.

When they draw near Rome, the Roman emperor comes to meet them.

The emperors embrace and greet each other.

All ride to Rome, where they find flowers strewn, and rich hangings, and hear minstrels and songs.

The Greeks are harboured in tents outside the city.

Meetings of the Greeks and Romans.

When Emperor of Greece summoned his lords, pat no mon vpou mold · mitz ayne pe noumber; 1596 and pat real aray reken · schold men nener, ne purueaunce pat prest was · to pepul a-greipéd. but sop atte pe day set · wip solempne merpe, pis gaye genge of greece · to rome guane ride, 1600 & riden in real aray · to-ward rome ecuene. forte reken al pe arai · in rome pat time, alle pe men vpou mold · ne mitz hit deuice, so wel in alle wise · was hit arayed, 1604 & plente of alle purueaunce · purueyed to ritttes. whan peperour of greece · neiyd neiþh rrome, wip alle his bolde burnes · a-boute pre mile, peperour of rrome redeli · romed him a-zens, 1608 & whan pe clene cumpanyes · comen to-gader, pe siȝt was ful semly · and louely for to se, whan eiper of peperour · er pei wold stint, 1612 eiper oper keste · kindeliche pat time, & seppe pe same wip pe same · also he wrouȝt; pe murpe of pat metyng · no man may telle. Into rrome al pat route · riden forþ in-fere, 1616 & eche a strete was striked · & strawed wip flourys, & realy railed · wip wel riche cloþes, & alle maner menstracie · maked him a-zens; and also daunces disgisi · redi diȝt were, 1620 & selcoup songs · to solas here hertes; so pei sopli to say · peiȝh i sete euer, I schuld nouȝt telle pe merpe · pat maked was þere; forþ to ming of þat matere · no more i ne þenk 1624 but alle pe genge of greece · was gayli resseyued, & herbarwed hastely · ich hete pe for soþe, In a place, pei were piȝt · paulyouns & tentes, bi o side of þe cite · for swiþe moche pepul; 1628 for þei pat seie it forsoþe · saiden þe truþe, þe place of þe paulyouns · & of þe price tentes
semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.

semede as moche to siȝt as pe cite of rome.

William and Melior plan their escape.
ALEXANDRINE SEWS UP HER FRIENDS

to kenne hem sum coyntise · 3if sehe any coupe,
to wisse hem forto wend · a-vey vnperceyued.
alisaundrine a-non · answered pan and seide,
wepend wonderli fast · for pei wende wold,
"bi pat blissful barn · pat bouȝt us on pe rode,
I kan bi no coyntyse · knowe nouȝ pe best,
how ȝe mowe un-hent · or harmles a-schape.
for be hit witerly wist · pat [3e] 1 a-went bene,
eeche a kunte worp kept · wip kud men i-nouȝ,
eeche brug, eche payp 2 · eche brode wye,
pat noper clerk nor kniȝt · nor of cunte cherle schal passe vnperceyued · & pertiliche of-souȝt.

& ȝe ȝe were disguised · & diȝt on any wise,
I wot wel witerli · ȝe wold be aspied.
sepȝe no noper nel be · but nedes to wende,
craftier skil kan i non · pan i wol kupe.

In pe kechene wel i knowe · arn crafti men manye,
pat fast fonden alday · to flen wilde bestes,
hyndes & hertes · wip hydes wel mayre,
bukkes and beris · and opȝer bestes wilde,
of alle fair venorye · pat falles to metes.
ac pe bremest best · pe beres me semen,
pe gon most grisli · to eche gomes sigȝt ;
Miȝt we by coyntise · com bi tvȝ skynnes,
of pe breme beres · & bi-sowe souȝ per-inne,
Þer is no liuand lud · i-liue souȝ knowe schold,
but hold souȝ ouȝt of heie gates · for happes, i rede.

rediliche no better red · be resun i ne knowe,
pan to swiche a bold beste · best to be disguised,
for pei be alle maners · arn man likkest."
pan willam ful wiȝtli · & his worpi burde
ful proly hire ponked · many pouȝand sipȝ
of hire crafty causayl · & kindliche hire bi-souȝt,
wigȝly wip sum wyl · winne hem tvȝ skinnes
of po breme bestes · pat beres ben called,

1 Read "that ze a went bene."—M.
2 Or " papȝe."
IN TWO WHITE BEARS' SKINS.

pruely vnperceyued · for peril þat may falle, 1700
& alisaunderine a-non · as an hende mayde,
seide sche wold deliuerly · do þer-to hire miȝt,
Forto saue hem fro sorwe · hir-self forto deye.

Wystly boute mo wordes · sche went fó[r]þ p stille, 1704
& blie in a bourde · borwed boþes clópes,
& talliche hire a-tyred · tiȝtli þer-inne,
& bogeysliche as a boye · busked þe kychene,
þer as burnes were busy · bestes to hulde;
& manly sche melled hire · þo men forto help,
til sche say tidi time · hire prey for to take.
þche a-wayted wel · þe white bere skinnes,
þat louelî were & large · to lappen inne hire frendes,
& went wiȝtly a-weī · wel vnperceyued,
& leþ þer-wip to hire lady · & hire leman dere,
seide softly, “now seþ · how sone i haue spedde!”
& þe ðu glad of þe gere · gretly here þonked,
& prested here ful prestelî · to put hem þe þer-inne,
so semli þat no seg · miȝt se here clópes,
& sche melled hire meliors · ferst to greipþ,
& fastened hire in þat fel · wip ful gode þonges
above hire trie a-tir · to talke þe soþþ,
þat no man vpoz mold · miȝt oþer percyue
but sche a bere were · to baite at a stake;
so iustislich echþ liþ ioynd · þi ihesu of heuene. 1724
whan sche in þat tyr · was tiffed as sche schold,
Meliores in here merþe · to hire maiden seide,
“Leue alisaunderine, for mi loue · how likes þe nowþe?
am i nouȝt a bold best “a bere wel to seme?” 1728
“þis, madame,” seide þe mayde · “be marie of heuene,
þe arn so grisli a gost · a gom on to loke,
þat i nold for al þe god · þat euere made,
abide þou in a brod weie · bi a large mile;
so breme a wilde bere · þe bi-seme nowþe.”
alisaunderine þanne anon · after þat ilk,
Then she faces up William in the other skin;

who, when sewn up, asks Melior what she thinks of him?

"I am quite frightened at so hideous a sight."

William proposes that they start at once.

Alexandrine lets them out by a postern-gate.

She prays that they may be preserved from all peril.

(Fol. 30.)

I must now tell you about the two white bears.

As they went through the garden on all fours, a Greek, who had come there for amusement,

In that order bere-skyn · be-wrapped william panne, & laced wel eche leme · wip lastend ponges, 1736

craftiil a-bone his clopes · pat comly were & riche.

& whan he was sowed · as he schold bene, william ful merili · to meliors pan he seide,

"se i me, loueli lemmam · how likes pe me nowpe?" 1740

"bi marie, sire," seide meliors · "pe milde quen of heuene,

so breme a bere 3e be-seme · a burn on to loke,

pat icham a-grise · bi god pat me made,

to se so hidous a si3t · of youre semi face!" 1744

pan seide william wiztli · "my derworpe herte,

heij vs hastily henne · ich hope be pe best,

euenly pis euen while · or men to mochel walk."

& she to worche as he wold · wiztli pan graunted. 1748

alisauadrine sone · as sche saw hem founding,

wept as sche wold a-wede · for wo & for sorwe,

but napeles as bluie · sche brou3t hem on weie

pruely be pe posterne · of pat perles erber,

pat was to meliors chaumber · choisli a-joyned.

& alisauadrine as sone · as pei schuld de-parte,

swoned fele sipe · & sappen when sche mi3t,

preide ful pituosi · to pe prince of heuene

to loke fro alle langour · jo lovely makes,

pat put hem for paramours · in perriles so grete;

& sopli ferto say · a-sunder pann pei went.

alisauadrine anon · atteledo to hire boure,

& mored nei3h for mad · for meliors hire ladi. More to telle of hire pis time · trewly i leue,

telle i wil of pe beres · what hem tidde after.

William & pe mayde · pat were white beres, 1764

gon forpa purzth pe gardin · a wel god spede,

Fersly on here foure fet · as fel for swiche bestes.

pan 3ede a grom of grece · in pe gardyn to pleie,

to bi-hold pe estres · & pe herberes so faire, 1768
& or he wiste, he was war of pe white beres,  
pei went a-wai a wallop as pei wod semed.  
& neiz wod of his witt he wax neiz for drede,  
& fled as fast homward as fet miȝt drie,  
for he wend witterly pei wold him haue sewed,  
to haue mad of him mete & murpered him to depe.  
whanne he his felawes founde of his fare pei wondere,  
whi he was in þat wise wexen so maat,  
& he hem told tiȝtly whiche two white beres  
hadde gon in þe gardyn & him agast maked,  
for he wende witerli pei wold him haue slawe,  
"but pei seie me nouȝt soþli i hope,  
to me tended pei nouȝt but tok forþ here wey  
wilfulli to sum wildernesse where as pei bredda."  
þanne were his felawes fain for he was adradde,  
& lauce of þat gode layk of hem ich leve nouþpe,  
to telle forþ what tidde of þe beres after.  
nouȝt fro þe gardin þei gon a god sped  
toward a fair forest fast þer bi-side,  
whilum þei went on alle four as doþ wilde bestes,  
& whan þei very were þei went vp-riȝttes.  
so went þei in þat wildernesse al þat long miȝt,  
til it dawed to day & sunne to vp-rise,  
þei drow hem to a dern den for drede to be seiȝen,  
& hedde hem vnder an holw hok was an huge denne,  
as it fel a faire hap þei fond þer-on to rest.  
Fer it was fro weȝes & of wode so pikke,  
þat no wiȝt of þe world wold hem þere seche,  
þei for-waked were weri wittow for soþe,  
& hiȝliche þei heriede god of þat hap fallen,  
þat had hem diȝt swiche a den derly on to rest.  
þen seide william soberli to meliors so hende,  
"a! my loundliche lemmaz our lord now vs help,  
he þat was in bedleem born & bouȝt vs on þe rode,  
schilde us fram schenchip & schame in þis erpe,  
& wisse vs in what wise to winne vs sum mete;  
perceived them galloping along.  
1772 He fled home in extreme fear.  
1776 His fellows asked him what aliéd him.  
He said he had seen two white bears in the garden,  
which, fortunately, did not perceive him.  
The two bears went to a fair forest,  
going on all night till the sun rose.  
In the day time they hid them-selves in a den.  
[Fol. 30 b.]  
They were very weary, and praised  
God for their good fortune.  
Then said William, "God preserve us, and teach us how to  
get some meat."
Mellor says they can easily live on love,

and bullaces and blackberries,

and haws, hips, acorns, and hazel-nuts.

William says she is not used to such hard fare.

He had better go and see if he can find any churl or child with meat or drink.

"Nay," said she, "for the loser will raise the cry, and tell it in Rome.

[fol. 31.]
Better to live upon fruit."

They rested in the ten all that day.

must now tell about the werwolf.

THE WERWOLF PROVIDES THEM WITH FOOD.

For, dere lef, i drede · we Schul deie for hunger." soburlie seide meliors · "sire, leues youre wordes, we schul first bi oure loue · lelli atte best;

& purth pe grace of god · gete vs sumwat elles, 1808 bolaces & blake-beries · pat on breres growen, so · pat for hunger i hope · harm schul we neuer; hawes, hepus, & hakernes · & pe hasel-notes, & oper fruit to · pat in forest growen;

I seie 3ou, sire, bi mi liif · pis liif so me likes." "nay, i-wisse," seid william · "mi worfpliche herte, better be-hous it to be · or baleful were ·

For here-to-fore of hardnesse · hadestow neuer, 1812 but were brouȝt for in blisse · as swiche a burde ouȝt, wiȝ alle maner gode metes; · & to misse hem nowȝe, It were a botles bale · but beter haue i ment.

I wol wend to sum weie · onwhar here nere, 1820 & waite ȝif any weighe · comes wending alone, oper cherl oper child · fro chepinge or feyre, pat beris out him a-boute · bred oper drinke, & redeli i wol it reue · & come a-ȝein swiȝe, 1824 oper coynytse know i non · to kepe wiȝ our liues." "nay, sire," sche seide · "so schul ȝe nouȝt worche; For ȝei pat misseden here mete · wold make gret noyse, & record it redeli · in rome al a-boute, 1828 so · pat we miȝt purth hap · haue harm in · pat wise. per-for is fairer we be stille · & bi fruit to lune, pat we finde in wodes · as we wende a-boute."

& bope ȝan as bliuę · a-sented hi a stounde, 1832 & kindeli eche oper elipt · and kessed ful oft, & darkeden þere in þat den · al þat day lunge, slepten wel swetly · samli to-gadere, & wrouȝt elles here wille; · leef we now here, 1836 & a while to þe werwolfe · i wol a-ȝen turme, þat þe tale touȝeþ · as tellþ þis soþe. þe self niȝt þat william · went wiȝ his leef dere, Þe werwolfe, as god wold · wist alle here happes, 1840
& pe fortune pat wold falle · for here dedes after.  
whan pei went in pat wise · wistli he hem folwes,  
Ful blide hem bi-hinde · but pei nouȝt wist.  
& whan pe werewolf wist · where pei wold rest,  
he herd how hard · for hunger pei hem pleyned,  
& gop him to a gret heiȝ-waye · a wel god spede,  
3if he miȝt mete any man · mete of to winne.  
Pan fel pe chaunche pat a cherl · fro cheping-ward com,  
& bar bred in a bagge · and fair bouf wel sode.  
1844

pe werewolf ful wistli · went to him euene,  
wip a rude roring · as he him rende wold,  
& braid him dow be pe brest · bolstrauȝt to pe erpe.  
pe cherl wende ful wel · haue went to depe,  
& harde wip herte · to god ȝan ne he prayde,  
to a-shape schaples · fram pat schamful best.  
he brak vp fro pat beste · & bi-gan to flene  
as hard has he miȝt · his liif for to sane.  
his bag wip his bilfodur · wip pe best he lafte,  
glad was, he was gon · wip-oute gretter harms.  
pe werwolf was glad · he hade wonne mete  
& went wistli per-wip · per as William rested,  
be-fore him & his burde · pe bagge per he leide,  
& busked him blide a-ȝein · boute more wordes,  
For he wist ful wel · of what pei nede hadde.  
1853

William ȝo wondred moche · of pat wilde best,  
what he brouȝt in pe bag · & wold nouȝt a-bide.  
he braide to him pe bagge · & blide it opened,  
& fond pe bred & pe bouf · blipse was he ȝanne,  
& mekli to meliors · “mi swete hert,” he saide,  
“lo! whiche a gret grace · god hap vs schewed!  
he wot wel of our werk · & wel is apaizd,  
pat he sendep þus his sond · to socour vs atte nede,  
so wonder a wilde best · pat woldes no mynde.  
1860

For he wist ful wel · of what pei nede hadde.  

William opens the bag, and finds the beef.  
He knew all their fortunes, and followed them all the way.

1 MS. “pe þerpe.”

Knowing their hunger, he goes to a highway,  
where he saw a man with some bread in a bag and some boiled beef.  
He rushes on him, roaring, and frightens the man terribly,  
who broke away and fled for his life, glad to get off.

The werewolf goes off with the meat, and lays it before William, and runs away.

Such a wonder was never seen.”
THE WERWOLF GETS THEM SOME WINE.

1876

1880

1884

1888

1893

1896

1900

1904

1908

1 MS. "dredre." See l. 1909.
& slept in here semly denne, till it wax so neijh niet thenere it no ni3t. 1912
pan a-waked pe wi3tli & went on here gate, faire on per tvo fet · pe ferde vp-on ni3t, but then it drow to pe dai · pe ferde as bestes, ferd on here foure fet · in fourme of tvo beres; and eneu.pe werwolf · ful wi3tly hem folwed, pe willaem ne wist · hendeli hem bi-hinde; but whan pe were loged · where hem best liked, Me3 & al maner ping · pat hem mister neded, pe werwolf hem wan · & wi3tli hem brou3t. 1920
pan pei lade pis liif · a ful long while, cairende ouer contres · as here cas ferde.
Leue we now pis lesson · & here we a-noper; to hem a3eyn can i turne · when it time falles. 1924
I wol minge of a mater · i menende of bi-fore, of pe reaute a-raied · in rome for here sake, & of pe worpi wedding · was bi-fore graunted bi-twene pe meyde meliors · & pe prince of greece; now listenes, lef lorde · pis lessoun bus i ginne.

Manly, on pe morwe · pat mariæge schuld bene, pe real emperours a-risen · & richeli hem greip3d, wip alle worpi wedes · pat wi3hes were schold. 1932
no man vpon molde · schuld mow denne men richlier a-raid · to rekene alle pinges, pan eche rink was in rome · to riches pei hadde; pe grete after here degre · in pe gaiest wise, 1936
& menere men as pei mi3t · to minge pe sope.
pe sesoun was semly · pe sunne schined faire; emperour of greece · & alle his gomes riche hijed hem to here hors · hastili and sone;
but for [to] telle pe a-tiryng · of pat child pat time, 1940
pat al pat real route · were araied fore, he pat wende haue be wedded · to meliors pat time, It wold lengep pis lessoun · a ful long while.
but sojli for to sce · so wel\(^1\) was he greiped,  
pat amendid in no maner · ne mït it haue bene.  
& whan pe gomes of grece · were alle to horse,  
araied wel redi, of romayns · to rekene pe numbre,  
treuli twenti pousand · a-tired atte best,  
alle on stalworp stedes · stoutliche i-horsed.  
alle maner of menstraeye · maked was sone,  
& alle merpe pat any man · euer mït deuise ;  
and alle real reueles · rinkes ri3 bi-gunne,  
Ridende purth rome · to rekene pe sope,  
Rï3t to pe chef cherch · pat chosen is sute,  
& clepud purth cristendom · pe cherche of seynt petyr.  
pe p[ope]\(^2\) wip many prelates · was purueyd to ri3tes,  
wip cardenales & bischopus · & abbotes fele,  
allege richelie reuested · pat reante to holde,  
wip worchep of pat wedding · pat bei wende haue.  
pe gryffiouns pan gayli · gonne stint atte cherche,  
pe bri3t burde meliors · to abide pere.  
pe pempour of rome ãanne · was rede 3are,  
& alle pe best barounes · & boldest of his reaume.  
pe pempour wax a-wondred · wite ãe for sope,  
whi his dou3ter pat day · dwelled so longe,  
seppe pe gomes of grece · were gon to cherche.  
pan bad he a baroun · buske to hire chaumber,  
to ãi3en hire hastily · to him for to come,  
& wï3lïi he wendes · wite ãe for sope.  
he fond pere burde no barn · in pat bour ãanne,  
for no coyntise pat he coupë · to carp him a3ens;  
he li3lïi ãazen lepes · & pe lord so telles.  
pe pempour when pe it wist · wod wax he nere,  
& went him-self in wrapë · to pat worpies chaumber,  
& drives in at pat dore · as a deuel of helle.  
he gan to clepe & crie · & gan to kurse fast ;—  
“where dwelle ãe, a deuel wai · ãe damiseles, so long ?”

\(^1\) MS. repeats “wel.”
\(^2\) This word is purposely erased; part of the \(p\) can be traced.
Alexandrine's Excuses for Melior.

Alexandrine was delfulli a-drad · pe dep for to suffre, 1980
ac bi a coutynt compacement · caste sche sone,
how bold 3he miȝt hire bere · hire best to excuse,
pat pempour ne schuld souche · pa ȝhe at sent were,
pat his douȝter wiȝp william · was went away panne.
boldli wiȝp milde mod · ȝhe buskes of hire chaunber,
& kom ketly to pempour · & kurteisly him gret, 1986
& what pat his wille were · wiȝtly pan asked,
& he seide ful sone · "sertes, ich haue wonder
where my douȝter to-day · dwelles þus longe?
for al pe pepul is parayled · & passed to cherche.
I haue sent hire to seche · seȝpe a gret while,
ac no frek mai hire finde · per-fore i am tened."
alisandrine a-non · answered þanne & seide,
"to blame, sire, ar þo burnes · þat so bleþeli gabbe;
For my lady lis ȝit a-slaþe · lelly, as i trowe." 1995
"Go wiȝtly," seide pempour · "and a-wake hire þerne,
bid hire busk of hire bed · & blieue be a-tyrid."
"I dar nouȝt, for soþe" · seide alisandrine þanne;
"wiȝp me sche is wroþ · god wot, for liȝtel gilt," 1999
"whi so?" saide pempour · "saie me nouȝ blieue!"
"Ful gladli, sire," sche seide · "bi god þat me made,
3if ȝe no wold be wroþ · whan ȝe þe soþe wist."
"nay, certes," seide pempour · "þer-fore seie on sone."
alisandrine þan anon · after þat ilke, 2004
seide ful soberli · sore a-drad in herte,
"sire, for soþe, i am hold · to saie you þe treuþe;
Mi ladi made me to-niȝt · long wiȝp hire to wake
boute burde or barn · bot our selue twtie."
2008
panne told sche me a tidying · teld was hire to-fore,
of on þat knew þe kostome · of þe cuntre of greece,
þat euerych gome of greece · as of grete lordes,
whan þei wedde a wiȝp · were ȝhe neuer so nobul,
of emperours or kinges come · & come into greece,
sche chold sone be bi-schet · here-selue al-one.
THE EMPEROR IS VERY WROTH.

In a ful tristy tour • timbred for pe nones, & liue per in langour • al hire lif-time, 2016
neuer to weld of worldes merpe • pe worp of a mite. per-fore for sope • gret sorwe sche made, & swor for pat sake • to suffur alle peynes, to be honget on heiz • or wip horse to-drawe, 2020
sche wold neuer be wedded • to no wiph of grece. hire were leuer be weded • to a wel simplere, pere sche miȝt lede hire lif • in liking & murpe. & also, sire, sertaynly • to seie pe treupe, 2024
sche told me a-noper tale • pat me tened sarre, wher-fore i wan hire wrap • er we departed.”

"warfore?” seide þeperour • “seye me now þerne.” “For sope, sire,” quaþ alisauadrine • “to saue þour mensk, 2028
I wol swow telle tiȝty • what turn sche as wrouȝt,
sche clepud me to cuȝnseil • whan sche pis case wist pat sche schold be wedded • & seide me þanne, sche hadde leid hire loue • þer hire beter liked, 2032
on þe boldest barn • þat euer bi-strod stede, & þe fairest on face • and i freyned is name. & sche me seide shortly • þe sope to knowe,
It was þat worþi william • þat wipes so louen, 2036
& þat brouȝt ȝou out of bale • wip his cler strengþe. & when i wist of þis werk • wite þe for sope, It mislikaide me mochel • miȝt no man me blame, & manly in my maner • missaide hire as i dorst, 2040
& warned hire wȝȝty • wip-oute disseyte,
I wold alle hire werk • do ȝou wite sone. & when sche þat wist • for wrap al so þern, sche dede me deliuerly • deuoyde þer hire chaumber, & het me neuer so hardi be • in hire siȝt to come. 2045
& i busked of hire bour • sche barred hit sone, & seþpe saw i hire nouȝþ • sire, bi my treuþe.
I ne dar for drede • no more to hire drawe, 2048
þer-for, sire, ȝour-self • softili hire a-wakes,
HE SEEKS FOR MELIOR EVERYWHERE.

When þemperour had herd · holly þise wordes, 2052
he wax neizh out of wit · for wrap þat time,
& for dol a-doteþ · & dop him to hire chaumber,
& busked euene to hire bed · but 1 noping he no fond,
þip-inne hire comly cortynes · but hire clopes warme.
wiȝtly as a wod man · þe windowe he opened,
& souȝt sadli al a-boute · his semliche douȝter,
but al wrouȝt in wast · for went was þat mayde.
& whanne he miȝt in no manere · meliors þer finde,
he deraied him as a deuel · & deye him out a-ȝeine,
& asked of alisaurdrine · anon after þanne, 2062
"þou damisele, deliuerli · do telle me now þerne,
whider is mi douȝter went · þe nis nouȝt in bedde."
alisaurdrine for þat cas · was sorwful in herte, 2065
& seide, "sire, i seiȝ hire nouȝt · seþ hieȝ midnizt,
I wene sche went to william · for wrap of my sawe,
sendeþ swiftili þeþir · to scheche hire at is inne. 2068
& zif william be nouȝt went · witeþ þe forsoapþe,
Mi ladi for ani lore · lengþep in þis cite ȝut.
& zif william be went · neuer leue þe open,
Mi ladi lengþep him wip · for lif or for dede."
þemperour for treiȝ & tene · as a tyrant ferde,
wax ney wod of his witte · & wropliche seide,
"a ! has þat vntrewre treytour · traysted me nouþe,
For þe welþe & welfare · i haue him wrouȝt fore, 2076
& fostered fro a fundeling · to þe worpiest of mi lound?
& for his dedes to-day · i am vndo for euer;
eche frek for þis fare · false wol me hold,
þe grewes for gremþe · ginneþ on me werre, 2080
& eche weigþ schal wite · þat þe wrong is myne.
þe-per-fire bi grete god · þat gart me be fourmed,
& bitterly wip þis blod · bouȝt me on þe rode,

1 MS. "bud."

The emperor at this was mad with grief,
and went to Melior's bed, but found only the warm bed-clothes.

[Fol. 34 b.]

Finding her nowhere, he asks Alexandrine where she is gone to.

"Sire," she says, "I have not seen her since midnight; perhaps she is with William.
If he is not gone, she is there; but if he is gone, be sure Melior is with him."

"Ah!" said the emperor, "has that traitor deceived me?"

The Greeks will make war upon me.
THE WEDDING IS PUT OFF PERFORCE.

"If he is taken, he shall be hanged and drawn in pieces."

Sixty sergeants are sent to look for William.

[fol. 35.] They were glad when they could not find him.

The emperor swoons for sorrow and shame.

His lords advise him to tell the emperor of Greece the whole truth.

He does so, and asks him how he can best avenge himself.

All mirth ceases in the city.

The Greek emperor, seeing how he of Rome was grieved,

"if thiat traytour now be taken to-day, er i ete, he schal be honged heie & wiþ horse to-drawe!" pemperour ful kenely dede kalle kniȝ̂ttes fele, and oper semly seriamus sixti wel armed, het hem wiȝ̂li to wende to williams inne, & jif pei found out pat freke for out pat bi-tidde, to bring him blīue bounde fast him to-føre, pai durste non oper do but dede hem on gate, & souȝ̂te him wiþ sore hertes so wel pei him louede. fėiȝ̂pli when pei founde him nouȝ̂t fayn were pei alle, & turned aȝ̂in to pemperour & told he was a-weie, pan brayde he brayn-wod & alle his bakkes rente, his berde & his briȝ̂t fax for bale he to-twīȝ̂t; & sowany sixe sipe for sorwe & for schame, pat fals he schold be founde ful ofte he seide "allas," & banned bitterli pe time pat he was on-liue. panne kinges & kud dukes conftorted him beter, bede him sese of his sorwe & swiftili wende, & telle pemperour of greece treuȝ̂e pe sope, & meke him [in]1 his merci for his misse-gilt. & he kety for al kas after curey walȝ̂te, & goþ to pempemour of greece vnglad at his herte, knelep to him karfully & merci him kriþ̂p, and told him as titly al pe treupe sone, how his douȝ̂ter was went wiþ on pat he fostred, & preide him par charite pat he him wold wisse, In what wise pat he miȝ̂t best him a-wrek. & whan pis tiding was told trowep he sope, In pat cite was sone many a sori burne, for missing of pat mariage al muþ̂pew 2 was seced, riuedliche þruth rome & reuþ̂pe bi-gunue. pe gode emperour of greece was a-greued sore, of pat fortune bi-falle but for he sei pat oper so meken in his mercy pat misgilt,

1 MS. omits in. Sec l. 2118. 2 MS. "muþ̂pe."
The Greek Emperor gives his advice.

He listere he let per-of ac lourand he seide;
"sire, be god pat me gaf pe gost & pe soule, 2120
wist i now witerli pis were wrougt for gile,
alle pe men vpon mold no schuld make it ofer,
pat i nold brenne pi borwes & pi burnes quelle,
& sece neuer til pi-self were chamly destroyed. 2124
but i wene wip pi wille was neuer wrougt pis gile,
pere-fore pe cunseil pat y kan i schal pe kippe sone,
do quikliche crie purth eche cuntre of pi king-riche,
pat barouns, burgeys, & bonde & alle ofer burnes,
pat mowe wiztly in any wise walken a-boute, 2129
pat pei wende wiztly as wide as pi reaume,
purth wodes & wastes & alle maner weies,
forso seche pat seg pat he hap so bitraied;
& pat mayde him mide Meliores pi douzter.
& to make eche man pe more beter wilned,
bi-hote hoo-so hem findes to haue so gret mede,
Riche to be & reale redly al his liue time. 2136
& ho-so hastely nouzt him hie3 pis hest to worche,
do him in hast he honged & wip horse to-drawe.
& loke pat hirde-men wel kepe pe komme passage,
& eche brugge pe a-boute pat burnes ouer wende,
& to seche eche cite & alle smale propes, 2141
& vnparcuyed passe pei nouzt if pi puple be treuwe."

He real emperour of rome panne redli him thonked
of pat konyng cunseyl & his kynde wille. 2144
& bluwe pan bi eche side pat bode let he sende;
as hastyli as men miȝt hize his hest was wrouȝt,
& sone was semblde swiche an host to take hem tweie,
pat neuer burn to no bataile brouȝt swiche a puple,
pei souȝt alle so serliche purh cites & smale townes,
In wodes & alle weies pat was pe a-boute, 2150
pat no seg for no sleiȝpe no schuld haue schapit.
but ȝit as god zaf pe grace no gom miȝt hem finde,
þere pei leye louely a-slepe lapped in armes. 2153

says, that had it been done in guile, he would have burnt all his towns;
but as it is not so, he will give him his counsel.

[Fol. 36 b.]"Proclaim through all your lands that every man shall seek everywhere,
till they find William and Mellor.

Whoever finds them is to be richly rewarded, and whoever is remiss is to be hanged.
Passes and bridges should be guarded,"

The emperor sends the message everywhere, and all men set out to hunt them.

They sought in every wood and path, but fortunately did not find them.
ALL SET OUT TO SEEK THE BEARS.

but when pis bode was brouȝt to þemperour[s] bope, þat no wiȝt in no wise · ne miȝt william finde, ne þe maide Meliors · in no maner wise,

When it was told that they could not be found,

2156 per stod a gome of grece · þat god gif him sorwe! he þat of þe white beres · so breml was a-fraied, he seide sone to þemperours · "sires, wol þe here? I sai a selkouþe siȝt · mi-self sîfle-neue,

the Greek who had seen the bears told his adventure, [Fol. 36.]

wel wip-inne niȝt · as i went in the gardyn;

and how the bears had not noticed him, but went away by the postern-gate.

tvo þe bremost white beres · þat euer burn on loked, & semede þe most to siȝt · þat euer ȝut i sawe.

I wende deliuereþi for drede · þe dêp to haue suffred, but treuly þe beres · to me tok no hede,

The Greek emperor says it will be best to send to the kitchen and see if any skins are missed.

but passeden out priueli · at þe posterne gate, ac whiderward þei went · wot i no more.”

"be god,” quaþ þemperour of grece · “þat gart me be founded,

I der leye mi lif · hit was þe lîper treytour

went a-vey in þat wise · for he ne wold be knowne.

Lete wite swipe at þe kichen · weþer þei misse any

skinnes.

whan men kome to þe koke · he was be-knowe sone, þat sum burn a-wei had bore · tvo white beres skynnes.

when men kome to þe koke · he was be-knowe sone, þat sum burn a-wei had bore · tvo white beres skynnes.

Two white bears’ skins are missing.

þan was it kenly komanded · a kri to make newe, þat eche burn schuld bisily · tvo white beres seke, his trauayle schold nouȝt tyne · þat tittest hem founde.

All set out again, with hounds, to hunt the bears,

þan hastely hiȝed eche wiȝt · on hors & on fote,

and some came close to their hiding-place.

huntyng wiȝt houndes · alle heie wodes, til þei neyȝped so neiȝh · to nympe þe sope,

The werewolf determined to save them,

þere william & his worþi lef · were liand i-fere, 2180 þat busily were thei a bowe schote · out of þe burnes siȝt.

but when þe witthi werewolf · wist hem so nere,

and to get the hounds away.

& seize blod-houndes bold · so busili seche, he þouȝt, wil his lif last · leten he holde, 2184 forto saue and serue · þo tvo semli beres;

& prestly þan putte him out · in peril of deþe, bi-fore þo herty houndes · hauteyn of cryes,
THE BEARS ARRIVE AT BENEVENTO.

75
to winne hem alle a-weiwardes · fro pe white beres.
whan pe houndes hadde feute · of pe hende best, 2189
pei ssesed al here sechynge · & sewed him fast,
ouer mountaynes & mires · many myle peannes.
alle men pat mut herde · of pe muri houndes, 2192
sewedan after ful swipe · to se pat mury chase,
& left pe loucli white beres · ligge in here rest,
at wisten no-ping of pis werk · pat was hem a-boute.
pe puple þanne porsewed forþ · & of here prey pei
missed, 2196
as god gaf pe werwolf grace · to go a-wei so 3erne,
pat horse ne houode for non hast · ne miȝt him of-take.
when þemperour was warned · in wast pat pei 3ede,
alle gergeis for grame · gonne take here leue, 2200
& cayred to þaire cuentre · carful and tened.
but ward was þer set · wide wher a-boute,
of bold burnes of armes · þe beres forto seche,
 þat þe witti werwolf · so wel þanne hem helped, 2204
 þat no wiot for wile · miȝt wite where þei lenged ;
& hastili when þei hade nede · halp hem of mete,
& wissed hem wel þe weiȝes · to wende a-wei bi niȝt ;
& whan it douȝ to þe dai · ful dernli he hem tauȝt,
bi contenaunce wel thei kneu · where þei rest schold
take, 2209
& busily him-self · wold buske in eche side,
to help hem fro harm · ȝif any hap bi-tidde.
þus þat witti werwolf · þe weyes hem kenned ; 2212
lorkinde þurth londes bi niȝt · so lumbardie þei passed,
& comen into þe marches · of þe kingdam of poyle.

Hit bi-tidde þat time · þei travailed al a niȝt,
out of forest & friþes · & alle faire wodes ; 2216
no couert miȝt þei kaicche · þe cuentre was so playne.
& as it dawed liȝt day · to mene þe sopȝe,
þai hadde a semli siȝt · of a cite nobul,
enclosed comeliche a-boute · wiþ fyn castel-werk ; 2220

The hounds followed him many miles over mountains and mires,
and left the bears lying there.
[þol. 36 b.]
The chase being all in vain, all the Greeks go home.
Watches are set everywhere.
But the werwolf found them food, and was their guide.
Thus they passed Lombardy, and came to Apulia.
THE BEARS FALL ASLEEP IN A QUARRY.

bonunet þat riche borwe · burnes þut clepun.
whan william þer-of war was · he wax a-drad sore,
lest eny segges of þat cite · hem of-se schuld,
& mekly seide to meliors · "myn owne swete herte,
our lord, ȝif his liking be · oure liues now sane!" 2225
for i no wot in þis world · where we mowe vs hide.
þe perles prince of heuen · for his pite & his grace,
saue vs for his pite · þat we ne slayn bene!" 2228
"amen, sire," seide meliors · "Marie þat vs graunt,¹
for þat blessed barnes loue · þat in hire bodi rest!" ²
panne wiȝtly wiþ-inne a while · as þei waited a-boute,
þei saie a litel hem bi-side · a semliche quarre, 2232
vnder an heiȝ hel · al holwe newe diked;
deliverli þei hiezed hem þider · for drede out of doute,
& crepten in-to a caue · whanne þei þeder come,
al wery for-walked · & wold take here reste. 2236
In armes louely eche laȝt òper · & leide hem to slepe,
al bonden in þe bere skynnes · bi-fore as þei ȝede.
& þat witty werwolf · went ay bi-side,
& kouchid him vnder a kragge · to kepe þis tvo beris.
ac þei ne hadde redly rested · but a litel while, 2241
þat werkmen forto worche · ne wonne þider se, 
stiffly wiþ strong tol · ston stiffly to digge,³
& as þei come to þe caue · to comse to wirche, 2244
on of hem sone of-sei · þo semliche white beres,
loueli ligand to-gadir · lapped in armes,
but feipli as fast · to his felawes he seide,
"herkenes nowe, hende sires · þe han herd ofte, 2248
wich a cri has be cried · purth cuntres fele,
purth host of þemperour · þat hap rone to kepe,
þat what man vpon molde · miȝt onwar finde,
tvo breme wire beres · þe bane is so maked, 2252
he schold winne his wareson · to weld for enere,

¹ MS. graunt; but the a has a crooked line over it (the contraction for ra or a) instead of a straight one.
² Catchword—"panne wiȝtly." ³ Read "ston for to digge"(t).
purth pe grete god of gold · pat him bi 3iue scholde.”
“3a, forsothe,” seide his felawes · “ful wel pat we knowe;
but wharbi seistow so · so pe god help?”
“pe sothe, felawes, ful sone · pe schol it wite,
3if 3e tentifly take kepe · & trewe be to-gadere ;
I wol winne our warisun · for i wot where þei are.”
“jis, certes,” seide þei · “so trewe wol we bene,
pat no fote schal we fle · for nouȝt bi-tides.”
“ek, sires,” seide þat oper · “so zouȝ crist rede,
standes alle a stounde stille · in þis ilk place,
I wil busk to bonenent · of þe beris telle,
to þe provost & oper puple · & hem preie in hast
to come hider & hem cacche · for in caue þei lyen,
& slepen samen y-fere · y saw hem riȝt nowe.”
þenne were his felawes ful fayn · & fast bad him reune,
& þei wold a-bide boldly · þe beres þere to kepe.
þat oper [went],1 wiztly þenne · to warne þe provost
lelige hou he hade seye · in þe harde quarrer,
þe tvo white beris · & bad him-self þerne
to come wip gret pouwer · & cacche hem in haste.
“wostou wel,” seyede þe provost · “þat þei are þere
ȝete?”
“zte, certes,” seide he · “y saw hem riȝt now boȝe;
& siue of my felawes · ful faste þere hem wayten,
þat þei no wende a-way · wil þe hider sterte.”

The provost þan prestely · þe pepul dede warne,
as þei nold lese here lif · here londes & here godes,
þat alle hiezden hastily · on hors & on fote,
& bi-set sone saddeli · þe quarrer al a-boute,
tiȝtli for to take · þe tvo white beres,
þat þeureour comanded crie · in eutre al a-boute,
sone eche man þat miȝt · ful manliche him armed,
& heȝeden hastily to hors · po þat hade any,

1 Perhaps we should read “That other went wiztly.”—M.
and frekes on fotc · hijede hem fast after,
sotat pe cuntre þunþ þat cri · was al bi-cast sone,
& quikliche a-boute þe quarrer · were kene men of
armes, 2288
twenty hundered & tvø · trewli in nymbre,
to take as bliu þe beres · but god now hem help,
slayn worp þei slepend · ac seleouþ now heres.
as þo bold beres · so neiþ here bale slepten, 2292
Meliors þurth a metyng · was marred neiþ for fere,
& þurth þat sorwful sweuene · swepe sche a-waked,
& wiþly to william · þese wordes sche sede,
“a! louely lemman · lestene now my sawe, 2296
I am ney marred & mad · þis morwe for a sweuene.
for me þouv þat per com · to þis caue nouþe
wilde beris & apes · bores, boles, and baucynes,
a brem nymbre of bestes · þat a lyoun ladde, 2300
þat his kene komandment · kidden wel to wirche,
to haue taken vs tvø · to-gader in þis deune.
þan was þer a litel lyoun · of þe lederes bi-þete,
come wip þat companye · þis case to bi-holde. 2304
& riþt as þe breme bestes · vs boþe schuld haue take,
our wurþi werwolf · þat euor wel vs helpeþ,
com wip a grete kours · & for alle þe kene bestes,
& laüþt vp þe þong lyoun · lijtly in his mouþe, 2308
& went wip him a-wei · whedir as him liked.
& alle þe breme bestes · þat a-boute vs were,
for-lete vs & folwed him forþ · for þe þong lyouns sake ;
& certes, sire, of þat sweuen · riþt so y a-waked, 2312
& am a-drad to þe deþ · for destine þat wol falle.”

“Nay, loueli lef,” seide william · “leue al þat sorwe,
forsope it is but fanteme · þat þe fore-telle ;
we mowe reste vs redili · riþt sauf here at wille.” 2316
ac sopli, as che had seide · riþt wip þat ilke,
þei herd an huge route of horse · þat hel al a-boute,
& herd þat quarrere vmbe-cast · & al þe cuntre wide.
WILLIAM BIDS MELIOR SAVE HERSELF. 79

William ful wiȝtly · wayted out at an hole, 2320
& seie breme burnes busi · in ful briȝt armes,
brandissende wiȝ gret bost · & of þe beres speke,
In what wise þei wold wirche 1 · wiȝtly hem to take.
þe prouost wiȝ al þe puple · presed forþ formast, 2324
& many miȝt man manliche · medled þat time,
& sopliche for to seie · swiche grace god lente,
þat þe prouost sone · a semli þong barne,
was brut þider wiȝ burnes · þe beres to bi-holde, 2328
for þe selcouþe sijþ to se · how þei schuld be take.
whan william was war · þei were so neijþ nome,
to meliors wiȝ mornyng · mekliche he sayde,
"allas ! my loueliche lemmen · þat euer y lif hadde,
to be for al our bale · brouȝt to swiche an hende ! 2333
allas ! lemmen, þat our loue · þus luþerly schal departe,
þat we now dufulli schul deye · ac do now, god, þi grace,
& late me haue al þe harm · heijeliche i besche ; 2336
for i haue wrouȝt al þis wo · & worþi am þer-tille.
for meliors, my dere hert · be marie in heuene,
holly al þis harde · þow hast al for my gelt ;
þer-fore, þif godes wille were · i wold haue al þe payne,
to mede þe were fro þis quarrere · quitly a-schaped. 2341
& dere hert, delinerli · do as ich þe rede,
dof bluþ þis bere-skyn · & be stille in þi cloþes,
& as sone as þou art seie · þou schalt sone be knowe,
þan worþ þi liif lengeyd 2 · for loue of þi fader ; 2345
so miȝtow be saued · for soþe, neuer elles ;
& þouþ þe miȝrper me þanne · i no make no strengeþe,
but god for his grete grace · gof i hadde now here 2348
horse & alle harneyes · þat be-houes to werre,
I wold wend hem tille · wiȝ-oute ani stiȝt,
& do what i do miȝt · or ich þe deth sôffred ; 2351
summe þat bere hem now brag · schuld blede or euen.

1 MS. "wirthe."
2 Or "lengbed," miswritten for lengbed (?). Cf. ll. 1040, 1944.

and William sees
men-in-arms,
and hears them
speak of the
ears.

The provost's son
was in the
company.

William laments
their hard fate.
[Fl. 38 b.]

He says he ought
to have all the
harm.

He advises
Melior to doff her
bearskin, and
reveal herself.

No matter if
they murder him;
yet he wishes he
had a horse and
armour,

and he would do
what he could.
ac botles is now pis bale but be hit a goddes wille, & buske pe of pis bere fel bi-lieu, i pe rede, & wende listly hennes & late me worp after; 2355 swipe saue pi-self for so is pe best.

Melions wepande wonder sore to william pan seide, "what? leuestow, leue lemmen · pat i pe leue wold for dep or for duressse · pat men do me mijt? 2359 nay, bi him pat wip his blod · bouxt vs on pe rode, pe beres fel schal neuer fro my bac·siker be per-fore.
al pis world to winne · i no wold be aline, sopli after i seie you · suffere pe depe; wip god wille take we pe grace · pat god wol us sende." 2364

When pat sawe was seid · sop for to telle, pe provost bad bold burnes · pe beres go take, & pei hastily at his best · hized inward atte roche. but godli, as god wold · swiche grace bi-tiddle, 2368 pe werwolf was war · & wist of here tene, & be-pout how best wore · pe beres to saue; & wistly as a wod best · went hem a-zens, Gapand ful grimli · & gop panne ful euene 2372 to pe semli provost sone · & swipe him vp-cauht be pe middel in his moupe · pat muche was & large, & ran 1 forp for al pat route · wip so rude a noyse, as he wold pat barn · bluie hane for-frete. 2376 when pe provost pat perceyued · to pe puple he cried, "helpes hastily, hende men · i hote, vp yor liues! ho wol winne his wareson · now wistily him spede forto saue my sone · or for sorwe i deye!" 2380 ful sone after pat sawe · se peere men mijt Many a bold burn · after pat best prike, & oper frekes on fote · as fast as pe mijt, so holliche to pat hunting · i hote pe forsope, 2384 pat noioper burde ne barn · bi-laft at pe quarrer,

1 MS. "pan." Both sense and alliteration require "ran."
but went after pe werwolf • & wayned from pe beres, 2388
hotend out wip hornes • & wip huge cries,
& sewed him sadly • wip so selkoup noyse,
pat alle men vpon molde • mijd be a-wondred.
euer when pe werwolf • was out to-fore
pe mountaunce of half a myle • or more 3if it were,
lest pe segges wold have sesed • here sente to folwe, 2392
he wold abide wip pe barn • pe bliper hem to make,
In hope pei schuld of him • hent pe litel knaue.
but whan pei were ou3t him nei3 • nou3t he nold abide,
but dede him delienurli away • as he dede bi-fore, 2396
& fus lelly he hem ladde • alle pe lone daie,
pat neuer man vpon molde • mijd him of-take ;
& schete durst pei nou3t, for drede • pe child to hurte,
but folwed him so forp • as fast as pei mijd. 2400
whanne pe wite beres wist • pat were in pe quarrer,
pat al pe puple was passed • to pursue pe best,
of pat witti werwolf • to winne pe child,
& sei wel for here sake • he suffred po peines 2404
to socour hem • saue • fram alle sory depes,
& bope bline for pat best • bi-gunne to preie
pat god for his grete mijd • schuld gete him fro harm ;
witterli pei wist wel • pat pei nere bot dede, 2408
nere goddes grete mijd • & pe gode bestes help.
& whan pei bope had so bede • pei be-pout after,
It were best as blinc • to buske hem of pat caine.
& william pese wordes wijkstra • to meliors seide, 2412
“Mi swete wijkstra, sop to seie • me semeth 1 it pe best,
to buske 2 vs of pe bere felles • to be pe lasse knowe.
for eche wиж wol more a-weite • after pe white beres,
pan pei wol after any wi3t • pat walkeп i-cloped, 2416
perfor wijkstra in oure owne wedes • wende we hennes.”
Mekli seide meliors, “sire • be marie in heuen,
to do holli as pe han seide • i hope be pe best.” 2419
as blinc pe bere schinnes • from here hodi pei hent,

   1 MS. “semeht.”
   2 MS. “buskes.”
WILLIAM AND MELIOR HIDE IN A FOREST.

& wistly wrapped hem to-gadere · wittow for sope, & blipe were pei bope Ḥanne · to bi-hold on oper; for feipli a fourteniȝt · non hadde seie iperes face. Ḥanne clipt pei & kest · for al here cares colde, & williȝam ful wistly · waited out of pe caue, & bi-huld ful busili · a-boute on eche a side, ʒif eny wist were walkende · but he non seie. he lauȝt lonelī Meliors · & ladde hire bi þe honde; cloped in here clopes · out of þe caue pei went, wip hem bope bere felles · pei bere in here armes, so lop hem was po to lese · or lene hem bi-hinde; & deden hem deliverly · ouer dales and helles, ferrest fro alle weies · þer any folk walkes.

dolfulli pei were adrad · dar no mon hem wite, last pei schuld mete any man · þat miȝt hem be-wrie; but þan as god wold · or eny man hem seye, pei hade walked in þat wise · wel a þre myle, & founden þan a fayr forest · floriched ful þik, & þider wistly þei went · wel vnparceyued. what of here hard heizing · & of þe hote weder, Meliors was al mat · sche no miȝt no furþer, & prestly in a þicke place · of þat pris wode, wel out from alle weyes · for-wery pei hem rested, & þonked god grethicli · þat so godliche hem saued; & seþen softli to slepe · samen pei hem leide, as þei þat were wery · for-waked to-fore. 

Noȝ leue we of hem a while · & speke we a-nɔper ; For of þe witti werwolf · a while wol i telle.  

82 glad to see one another once more.

William looks out, but can see no one near.

They take the skins with them, being loath to part with them.

They were in much dread, but [Fol. 40.] happily met with no one.

After going three miles, they find a forest.

Meliors is so tired, she can go no farther.

So they rest in the forest, and fall asleep.

The provost and his men chased the werwolf till sunset.

The werwolf thought there was no need to go farther:

Sō long þat ferli folk · folwed him after, to haue be-nom him þe barn · þat he nam þat time, hunteýng holliche þat day · on hors & on fote, till þe semli sunne · was setled to reste.  

& whan it was so neiȝ miȝt · to neuen þe sope, þe werwolf wist wel · it was no more nede to bere þat [barn] no fɔrþer 1 · for þe beres sake.

1 Read "to bere that barn."—M. See l. 2459.
pei hadde folwed him so fer • pat forsope he wist, 2456
pat no seg • pat hade sewed • no schuld hom winne,
hijed pei neuer so hard • of al pa long niȝt.
& panne as blīue • pat barn • pe best a-doun sette,
wiȝ-oute eny maner wem • pe worse it to greuc, 2460
for non schold in • pat barnes bodi • o brusure finde
as of • pat bold best • but bold it was & faire,
& as sone as he hade • sette it a-downe,
he went wīȝtly a-weie • wiȝ-oute eny more, 2464
deliuerli as he nadde • pat day • gon half a myle.
when pe • prouost & pe puple • parceyued • pat ilk,
• pat • pe best hade left • pe barn • blipe were • pei • panne.
pe • prouost bi-fore • pe puple • priked • pider fornest, 2468
& hent it vp in • hast • ful hendli in • his armes,
and clipt it • & • k'est • oft & • many siþes ;
bi-hulde a-boute on • his bodi • ȝif • it • blenchede • were ;
whan he saw it al • sound • so glad • was he • panne, 2472
• pat • na • gref • vnnder • god • gayned • to • his • ioye.
al • pe • puple • prestli • • pat • him • porsewed • hadde,
gretliche • honked • god • of • pat • grace • bi-falle,
& tij̄tli • al • here • tene • • was • turned • in-to • ioye, 2476
& as blīue • wiȝ • blisse • • pei • busked • hem • homward,
wiȝ al • pe • murpe • vpon • molde • • pat • men • miȝt • diuise.
but • eche man • al • niȝt • inned • him • where • miȝt, 2480
& • whan • hit • dawed, • deliuerli • • dede • hem • homward.
& • wiȝtli • whan • pei • hom • come • wittow • for • sope,
• pe • prouost • ful • prestli • • al • pat • puple • warned,
to • buske • blīue • to • pe • quarrer • • pe • beres • to • take.
pei • went • wiȝ • god • wille • • but • wan • pei • pider • come, 2484
pei • founde • al • awei • fare • • bi-fore • pat • per • wore.
po ne • wist • pei • in • • wele • • whider • hem • to • seche,
but • hijed • hem • homward • • fast • as • pei • miȝt, 2488
& • token • redli • here • rest • • at • here • owne • wille.
pei • prouost • dede • pertli • • profer • al • a-boute,
what • man • vpon • molde • • miȝt • pei • heres • take,
he • schuld • gete • of • gold • • garissoun • for • euere.

The provost rides up, recovers his son,
[ Fol. 40 b. ]
and looks to see if he is harmed,
and is glad to find him whole.
The people's sorrow is turned into joy.
They rested all night where they could,
and repaired next day to the quarry.
Finding nothing there, they return home.
The provost proclaims a reward for taking the bear;
Many man by his miȝt · medled him þer-aftær, a-bont[e] bi þe side · þe bestes for þo seche, 2492
but as god þæf þe grace · no got miȝt hem finde, 2496
so happiliche þei hem hidde · þei hadde swiche grace.

pat niȝt þat hadde · þe þrouoste sone for-left, 2500
he wan a-ȝen to williȝm . & to his wœrp make,
wel i-charged wip wyn . & wip gode metes,
þat he wan bi þe weic · as he þider went.

þerof was williȝm a-wondred · & meliours als,
why þe best nold abide · þat so wel hem helped,
þis best has mænes kynde · it may be non óper,
se what sorwe he suffres · to saue vs tweine!

& namli, when we han nede · neuer he ne fayleþ, 2504
þat he ne bringeþ when we ben · þat to vs bi-houes.
he þat suffred for our sake · sore wondes fiue,
he our buxum best saue · & hald vs his liue.”
“amen, sire,” seide meliours · “marie þat graunt! 2512
nade his help hende ben · we hade be ded þore.”
þei made hem þan merye · wip mete þat þei hadde,
& eten at here ese · for þei were for-hungred,
& rested þere redeli · al þat longe day, 2516
& al þei niȝt next after · to neuen þe soþe,
for meliours was so wery · þat sche ne walk miȝt.
& erliche on þe moȝwe · er þe sumne gan schine,
choliȝers þat cayreden col · come þere bi-side, 2520
& óper wises þat were wont · wode forto fecche,
fast þer williȝm was · & his wœrp burde.
þe kolieres bi-komsed to karpe · kenedy i-fere;
on of hem seide sadli · þise selue wordes · 2524
“wold god þe white beres · were here nowþe,
alle þe men on mold · ne schuld here liues saue,
for wiȝtly wold ich wende · & warne þe þrouost,
& titliche schuld þei be take · & moche tene suffre;
for breme beres [be] 1 þei none · as þei be-semen, 2529
It is þemperours douȝter · þat so digised wenedþ, 
wap a [comliche] kniȝt 2 · þat kauȝt hap hire lone. 
þer-fore þese cries ben · so kenliche made, 2532
what man on molde · mow hem first fynde, 
he mai gete so moche gold · þat pore worþ he neuer;
wonderli a werwolf · yesterdye hem sawed, 2536
þat pertly þe prouost barn · þar a-way from alle ;
while men hunted after hem · þei han a-wai schaped. 
bi him þat me bouȝt · were þei boþe here, 2540
þei schuld wicche wel · þif þei a-wai went, 
þough þer were werwolfs · wip hem foure schore !")
þen was meliors neiȝ mad · al-most for þere, 2541
lest þat foule felþe · schold haue hem founde þere, 
& darked stille in hire den · for drede, boute noyse.
wiȝtly a-noper werkman · þat was þer be-side 2544
gan flite wip þat felþe · þat formest hadde spoke, 
seide, "do þi deuer · þat pow hast to done.
what were þe þe beter nouȝ · þeisȝ þe beris were here, 
to do hem any duresse? · þei misdede þe neuer. 2548
Mani hard hape · han þei a-schapet, 
& so i hope þei schal ȝit · for al þi sori wille.
god for his grete miȝt · fram greues hem saue, 2552
& bring hem boþe wip þe þere þei be wold.
do we þat we haue to done · & diȝt we vs henne, 
sum seluer for our semeȝ 3 · in þe cite to gete."
þei hadde bluie here burpenes · & bi-gunne to wende, 
william ne is swete wiȝt · seie hem na more ;
but holliche had herd · al here huge speche. 2556
þan seide william wiȝtly · þese selue wordes, 
"Meliors, my swete hert · now mow we no more."
In þis breme bere felles · a-boute here walke, 2560

1 Read "beres be thei none."—M.
2 Read "With a komli kniȝt," or something similar.—M. See l. 2637.
3 See note.
Melior says that any one who meets them in their own clothes will know them.

What is to be done?

Just then, the werewolf killed a huge hart and a hind, and left them.

William perceived that the werewolf meant them to use the skins, and to leave the bearskins.

They pray that the werewolf may never come to harm.

Said William, "Let us slay these beasts, and array ourselves in the skins."

William slays the hart, and Melior the hind.

They sew each other up in the skins.

If we wist in what wise how to worche better.
"certes, sire, pat is sope" seide melior s pan,
"if we walken in pes wedes i wot wel for sope, & al pe cunte knowep what cas we ben inne, what man so vs metes may vs sone knowe. I ne wot in wat wise to worche be best."
"nor ich, i-wisse," sede william "but worpe god wip alle."

While pe tvo derlinges talked to-gadere, pe werewolf an huge hert hade hunted ryst pider, & ryst be-fore hem bope broust hit to depe; & hostilyche pan hized & an hinde broust, serued it in pe same wise as pe hert bi-fore, & went wistyly a-wei wit-outy any more.

Pan wist william wel bi pe bestes wille, pat he pe hert & pe hinde hade pere slayne, him & his loueliche lemm man to lappe in pe skinnes, & bilee pe pere pe beres felles pat so busili were a-spied, & mekli pan to meliors he munged what he pouzt, & seide, "se wich a selcoup pis seminalche best worchep, for pi crist crowned king kepe him fro sorwe, late man neuer haune miȝt him to misedone."

"pat graunt god," seide meliors "for his swete miȝt; for nere pe help of heuen king & pe hende best, oure liues hadde be lore many a day seppe."

"3a, i-wisse," seide william "my derworp herte; for pi at oure bestes wille worche we noupe. hastili hulde we pe hides of pise bestes, Greipe we vs in pat gere to go ferper hennes."

William hent hastili pe hert & meliors pe hinde, & a[s] smartli as pe couppe pe skinnes of-turned. eiper gamliche gan greipe opere gailiche per-inne, pat pe skinnes sat saddeli sowed to hem bope, as hit hade ben on pe beste pat hit grewed.

& better pei semed pan to siȝt seminalche hertes,
pan þei semed be-fore · beres when þei were, 2595
so iustili on eþer of hem · were ioyned þe skinnes.

And when þei were greïped · gayli in þat gere,
þei seten in here solas · til susze þede to rest.
whan it neiʒet niʒt, þei nold · no lenger a-bide, 2599
but went for þ on here weie · for wel list hem gone,
& here semli werwolf · sewed fast after,
þat wittily tauʒt hem þe weies · whider þei wende
scholde,
sechande towarde cisle · þe sotilist weyes.
& namliche on þe morwe · many men hem souʒt 2604
In wodes & wildernesse · wide where a-boute,
& as þei walked in wodes · wip ful gode houndes,
þei founde þe beres skinnes · & þe bestes flayne.
þat it was an hert & an hinde · hastili þei knewen,
& wist wel þat þei went · wrapped in þe skinnes, 2609
þei þat bi-fore had be · as tvō white beres,
& wist þat þai in wast · wrouʒt þer to-fore
for al þe hard huntyng · þat þei hadde maked. 2612
& folwe hem durste þei no ferre · for a gret werre,
þat was wonderli hard · in þe next londe,
& þo þe seute sesed · after þe swete bestes.
Munge mai [i] 1 no more · of noman þat hem folwed,
ac of þe hert & þe hinde · herkenes now ferþer. 2617
þei went fast on here way · þe werwolf hem ladde
ouer mures & muntaynes · & many faire pleynes ;
but alwei as þei went · wasted þei it founde. 2620
for burwes & bold tounes · al for-brent were,
but þit were þei wip walles · warchet a-boute.
& al was william landes · wittow wel for soþe,
he þat þere was an hert ; · heres þenchesoun,
whi þe wer & þat wo · þo was in þat londe.
þe han herd here bi-fore · as ich vnderstonde,

1 Read "mai i no more."—M.
of ebrouns þe kud king · þat þat kingdom out
of poyle & of cisile · of palerne & calabre,

& was williams fader · þat went þere as an hert,
& þed was & doluen · mani a day bi-fore.

& his comeliche quene · as god wold, 3it linede,
þat was williams moder · & was a menskful lady. 2632
she had a derworþe douȝter · to deme þe soþe,
on þe fairest on face · and frelokest i-schapan,
þat euere man vpon molde · mijt [on] diucose;¹

she was þonger þan william · bi fulle þre þeres. 2636
& þe kud king of spayne · hade a comeliche sone,
þat was a kud knijȝt · and kene man of armes;
for him, was þe werwolf · so wickedli for-schaped
þurth malice of his stepmoder · as þe mow here after;
ac breþer were þei boþe · as bi on fader. 2641
þe kud king of spayne · coueyled for his sone
þat worþi mayden · þat was williams suster;
ac þe quen for no cas no wold · þat wedding graunt;
for þi þe king & his sone · swiche were a-rered. 2645
for þei hadde luþerli here lond · brend and destroyed,
brent bold borwes, & burnes · bruttened to deþe,
& of-sette hire so harde · þe soþe for to telle, 2648
þat prestli to hire puple · to palerne sche ferde;
& þe king bi-seget þe cite · selcoupþi harde,
& mani a sad sauȝt · his sone þer-to made,
ac douȝti men deliuerli · defended it wiþ-inne;
but sertenli on boþe sides · was slayn suche puple,
& þat lasted so longe · leue me for soþe,
þei of þat cite · of þo segges al sad were,
& come ofte to þe quen · & cuþeslde hire þerne 2656
to acorde wiþ þe king · & graunte his wille,
for þei no lenger in no maner · mijt meynente þat sege,
for moche folk of here fon · fel algate newe,
þer mens flebled 2 & faileden of here mete, 2660
þat þei mijt in no maner · meynente þe sege.

¹ See l. 4436. ² Read “flebled” (?)
The Queen asks for a truce.

'fanne fat comliche quen ' curteyseliche seide, "lordinges, 3e ben my lege men ' pat gode ben & trewe,

bold burns of bodies ' batailes big to gye ; 2664

but pat 3e grettli aren a-greued ' gaynli i knowe, for pise tenful trauayles ' but titli, i hope,
al it worp wel amended ' for pis 3e witen alle,

pat i haue sent after socour ' to my semly fader, 2668

pat grece hap godli to gye ' as emperour & sire.

& i wot witterli ' wip-oute eni failte,

pat socur he wol me sende ' or elles com him-selue.

It is so fer to pat cuentre ' 3e knowe wel pe sope, 2672

pat he may nou3t saile ' swiftli as he wold.

for-pi alle my bolde burns ' i besche & preie,

fo[r] lone pat 3e owe to pe lord ' pat let 3ou be

fourned,

Meyntenes 3it 3oure manchip ' manli a while, 2676

til god of his grete mi3t ' god tyding vs sende."

& bad po tv0 bold barouzs ' bluite forpe wende
to pe king of spayne ' & curtesly him seie,

pat sche preied-par charite ' in pes to late hire lengpe

fulle a fourteni3t ' for-oute alle greues

of sautzes to pe cite ' or any sorwe elles.

& but hire fader com ' bi pe fourteni3tes hende,
or sende hire sum socour ' bi pe same time,

sche wold wip god willle ' wip-oute more lette

Meke hire in his merci ' on pise maner wise,
to giue him boutte grucching ' al pat gode,

so pat sche mi3t saufli ' wip hire semli dou3ter

wende wi3tli a-wei ' whider hire god liked.

pe messegeres manli ' in here weye went,

spacli to pe king of spayne ' pis speche pei tolde.

but he swor his op ' pat he a-sent nold,

for no man vpon molde ' but he most haue hire
dou3ter ; 2692

& pei titly turned azen ' & told so pe quene.
& whan ske wist witterli · pe wille of pe king,
as a woful womman · sche went to hir chaumber, 2696
& preyed ful pitousli · to pe prince of henene,
for marie his moder loye · to mayntene hir & help,
pat hire foos for no cas · wip fors hir conquerede,
to winne azens hire wille · hire worliche douther. 2700
“no madame,” 1 seide hire douther · “marie pat graunt,
for pe blissful barnes loye · pat hire brestes souked!”
pus pei dwelled in duel · niȝtes and daies,
bope pat corteys quen · & hire comliche douther. 2704
had pei wist witterli · whiche help god hir sente,
al hire gref in-to game · gaynli schold haue turned.
now see we of pe segges · pat pe sege holden,
& of pe selcoup a-sautes · pat pei samen ȝolde, 2708
& of pe douȝthi defens · of wieȝs per wip-inne.
& listenes now a litel · of pe tvo leue bestes,
pat as an hert & an hinde · holden here weye,
as pe witty werwolf · wold hem euere lede. 2712

Of pis hert & pis hinde · hende now listenes.
so long pei caired ouer cuntres · as pat criest wold,
ouer dales & downes · & disgeye weyes,
as pe werwolf hem wissed · pat was here hole frend,
pan pei samen souȝt · to pe riche cite of rise, 2717
pat set is ful semli · vpon pe see bonke.
a gret number of naunye · to pat hauen longet,
& pere pe buxum bestes · bi-houed ouer passe. 2720
& so brod was pe see · pat sayle hem bihoued
holliche al a niȝt · & vp happe, wel more.
al day pe bestes darked · in here den stille
In a ragged roche · riȝt be pe hauen side, 2724
til it was wip-inne niȝt · & alle wizes slepten.
pan hized pei hem to pe hauen · hastily & sone,

1 MS. “made.” Read “madame.” The word in the text is
called by Bryant a provincialism, but without reason.—M. The
same error occurs in l. 3184, but it is corrected in l. 3191.
as pe werewolf hem wissed · þat was al here gye,
& stalkeden ful stilly · þer stodden fele schippes. 2728
þe werewolf waited wiztly · which schip was Þarest,
to fare forp at þat flod · & fond on sone,
þat was gayly greyt · to go to þe seile,
& Þeiliche frauȝt · ful of fine wines. 2732
þe werewolf went þer-to · to wite ho were þere;
þe segges were a-slepe þan · þat it schuld Þeme,
al but þe mest maister · to mung þe soþe.
þei were turned to towne · to pleie þer whiles, 2736
In murþe til þe mone arise · aȝst miȝt þei nouȝt passe.
& when þe werewolf wist · þat alle slept fast,
to þe hert & þe hinde · he turned him aȝcine,
& bi certeyn signes · sone he hem tauȝt, 2740
þei folwed him fayre · fayn for þat grace,
& he ful listli hem ledes · to þat loueli schippe,
& tauȝt bi-hinde tunnes · hem to hude þere.
þe maistres, whan þe mone a-ros · manli in come, 2744
& faire at þe fulle flod · þei ferden to sayle,
& hadde wind at wille · to wende whan hem liked.
þe werewolf wist wel · þei were neiȝ ouer,
& bi-pout how were best · þe bestes to help, 2748
þat þei miȝt scepelis · schape of þat schip.
whan þe ludes where neiȝ lond · þe leped ouer borde,
sadli in al here sȝt · for þei him sew schold—
whil þe hert & þe hinde scaped— · to hunte him
a-boute. 2752
sone as þe schipmen · seie him out lepen,
hastili hent eche man · a spret or an ore,
& launcean luperly after him · his lif to haue reued.
on so hetterli him hitte · as he lep in þe water, 2756
þat he for dul of þe dent · diued to þe grounde,
& hadde neiȝ lost is lif · but, as our lord wold,
for al þat sterne strok · stifiþe he vp-keuerede,
& swam swiftili awei · þat þei seeþen alle, 2760
& lauȝt liȝtli þe lond · a litel hem bi-side.
The men jumped ashore and followed him.

All went after him but a bare-legged boy.

[Fol. 45.] The hart and hind come on deck.

The boy sees them, and, in great terror,

hit the hind so that she tumbled top over tail over the hatches.

But the hart caught her up, and carried her ashore over a plank,

and, when out of sight, looked to see if the hind was hurt;

saying that, if he had but weapons, the barge-boy should suffer death for it.

"Nay," said Melior, "let us rather thank God for our escape.

& pei, as folk pat were sayn · to forfare pat best, saileden swiPe to londe · & sewed him after.
pe werewolf was wily · & went so soft,
pe schipmen wend wel · at wille him take, & him alle seweden · pat to pe schip longede, but a barlegged bold boie · pat to pe barge zemed. 
whan pe schipmen wip pe wolf · were wel passed, pe hert & pe hinde · pean hoped wel to schape, & busked hem bope sone · a-boue pe hacches. but whan pe boie of pe barge · pe bestes of-seie, he was neiʒ wod of his witt · witow, for fere, & be-pouȝt him pere · pe bestes for to quelle.
& happili to pe hinde · he hit þanne formost, & set hire a sa l strok · so sore in pe necke, pat sche top over tail · tumbled ouer pe hacches. but pe hert ful hastili · heут hire vp in armes, & bare hire forþ ouer-bord · on a brod planke, & nas bold wip pe boye · no debate make, but sayn was a-way to fle · for fere of mo gestes, fer away fro pe see · or he stynt wold. & whan he wist pat he was · wel out of siʒt, he be-hilde ziʃ pe hinde · euel hurt were, & fond sche nas but a-friʒt · for fere of pat dint.  

paŋ saide pe hert to pe hinde · hendly & faire, "a ! worþi li wiʒt · wonder ar þine happes, þatow hentest al þe harm · þat i haue deserved ! wold god for his grace · & his grete miʒt, 
pat i had e here · þat to werre falles, þe boye þat þe barge þemes · a-baye schold sore ; for þe dint he þe dalt · þis dep were marked." "nay, my worþi make " · seide meliors þanne, "Greue þe nouȝt, for goddes lone · þat gart þe be fourned, þat we so scþali ar a-schaped · god mowe [we] 1 þonk, & oure worþi werwolf · þat wel him by-tyde ! dere god, for deth · he dreiʒh for vs alle, 2796

1 Read "mowe we thank."—M. Cf. l. 2550.
late no seg miȝt haue þo sle our gode best!
nere his wit & his werk þo we were schent bope."
"sertes, sweting, þat is sop" seide william þanne,
"Go we on oure gate þo for goddes loue, bline,
to recumere sum resset þere we vs rest miȝt."
ful mekle seide meliors þip-oute any fare,
"Go we now on goddes halue þo þan went þei god spede,
cleppende comely eipere oþer þo to karpe þe sophe."

When þe hert & þe hind þere of so harde a-schaped,
þe boye þat þe barge zemed & þe bestes hade
wonder,
þat on bar of þe barge so boldeli þat oþer,
þip so comely cانتenauce clippende in armes,
þerden ferst on foure fet & se þe vp twyne.
& wistly after þe werwolf was wel a-schaped,
þrom alle þe sory shipmen þat sewed him to quelle,
but treuli non him take þo to tene namore;
& to þe hert & þe hinde heþed him reste.
& when þe hert & þe hinde had siȝt of here best,
þei were gretili glad & oft god þonked;
þat he sauf was þe sou[?i].
þan ferde was & sou[?i].
þan men a-schaped.
þe shipmen þat þe worwolf so sadly hade chased,
buskelden aȝen to here barge & þe boye hem tolde
wiche an hert & an hinde hadde þer-out schaped,
wistli wen þei went þe wolf for to sewe;
& how he hitte þe hinde also he told,
& how þe hert hire hent & þized ouer-borde,
þip how coynete cантenauce he cuuerede hire after,
þer-out schaped, þe boye hem tolde
wetherward forto fare þo to finde þe bestes;
but lefte þei in lisse now listenes of þes bestes,
þurth wildernesse hou þei went & wat hem tidde after.

May no one harm
or slay our
werwolf!"

William proposes
that they should
seek a hiding-
place to rest in,
[Fol. 45 b.]
and Melior
assents.

The barge-boy
was astonished to
see them go first
on four feet, and
then on two.

The werwolf,
having escaped
safely, went after
the hart and
hind.

The shipmen
returned to the
barge, and the
boy told them his
story.

how the hart
cought up the
hind, and bid
overboard.
Whiderward as pei went · al wast pei it founde,
bolde burwes for-brent · a-boute on eche side,
& euer as pe witty werwolf · wold hem lede,
& so longe he hem ladde · as he him-self pouzt,
he brouzt hem to a borwz · pat bold was & riche,
& fairost of alle fason · for eny riche holde,
pat euer man vpon mold · mizt on loke.
perles was pe paleis · and palerne it hizt.
pe werwolf wan william · ferst fro pat place,
whan he was in childhod · as pe chaunce be-fore told.
& treuli, rizt pat time · to telle al pe sope,
williams moder in meschef · wijp moche folk pe re lenged;
for pe king of spayne · bi-seged hire harde,
In maner as pe mater · was mingerd bi-fore.
a pris place was vnder pe paleys · a park as it were,
pat whilom wijp wilde bestes · was wel restored;
but pe segges pat held pe sege · had it al desruit.
pe hert & pe hinde pere · panne hem hed sone,
as pe werwolf hem wissed · pat ay was here gye,
vnder a coynte crag · fast bi pe quenes chaumber,
& al pat day in pat den · pei darked, & pe nizt;
pe werwolf went wijzly · & whan hem mete & drink,
so pat pei mad hem as murie · as pei mizt pat time.
now of pe buxum bestes · be we a while stille,
& carpe we of pe curteys quen · pat in pe castel lenged.

So hard was sche be-seged · sop for to telle,
& so harde sautes · to pe cite were zeuen,
pat pe komli kerneles · were to-clatered wijp engines,
& mani of here mizthi men · murdred to depe.
perfor pe quen was carful · & oft to criust preyed,
to sende hire sum socour · pat sche saued were,
for marie his moder loue · pat is of mercy welle.
I[n] swiche lif hade sche liued · a long time to-fore,
& al duel pat sche drey · was for hire douzter sake.
but sepp on pe selue niet · pe softe forto telle,  
pat pe hert & pe hinde · & here priddle fare  
vnder pe castel in a crag · caust here rest,  
pe quen was wery for-wept · & went to bedde.  

2868  
a selcope sweeen sone · in hire bed sche mette;  
hire pousht pat sche & hire [doustre] · on a dai al-one  
weren passed priueli pe paleys · bi a posterne gate  
to pleie hem priueli in pe park · pat to pe paleis longed.  
hire pousht an hundered M. · were hire a-boute  

2873  
of lebardes & beres · & alle bestes boute number,  
Grinli gapande to greue · hire & hire doustre;  
& rijt as po breme bestes · hem bope schold haue take,  
here pousht, a wijt werwolf · & to white beres  
hiezedon harde hem to help · in pat ilk nede;  
& whanne po two white beres · were com hem nere,  
pei semde to hire sijt · tvo semli hertes;  
& eiper of hem a faire figure · in here for-hed hadde.  
pe huger hert in his hed · had, as hire semede,  
pe fasoun & pe forme · of a fair kniht in feld,  
& semde hire owne sone · pat sche long hade missed.  

2883  
pat oper hert, as hire pousht · pe schap hade of a mayde,  
fairest of alle fetures · pat sche to-for hadde seie,  
& eiper hert on his hed · hadde, as hire pout,  
a gret kroune of gold · ful of gode stones,  
pat semli was to sijt · & schined ful wide.  

2888  
pan pousht hire pe werwolf · & pe maide bi-laft;  
& pe huge hert him-self · hastili pat time,  
azens alle pe bestes · bluwe went al-one,  
& bar doune bi eche side · ay pe boldest formast;  
was non so stef him wip-stod · so sternli he wrouzt.  
pe grettest of pe grim bestes · he gat to prison sone;  
a lyon & a lybard · pat lederes were of alle,  
hire pousht, pat huge hert · hastili hade take,  
& putte hem in hire prisoun · to peynce hem at hire  

wille.  
pe stouest & pe sternest · he strittled sone after,
pat he ga[re]te 1 pe grettest · to hire prison louȝte; 2900
& redli al þo remnant · of þe rude bestes
for fere be-gunne to fle · as fast as þei miȝt,
ouer dales & dounes · for drede of the hert.
sone as þe hende hert · hire hade deliuered,2 2904
& put here from alle peril · fro þe perilous bestes,
here þouȝt, sche went wizïli · a-þen to þe castel,
& turned vp to þe heïjest tour · to bi-hold a-boute.
þan þout hire, þat hire riȝt arm · last ouer rome, 2908
& lelli hire left arm · lai al ouer spayne,
& boþe þo komly kingdomes · komen to hire wille,
forþo herken al hire hest · & hire wille worche.
here-of was sche al a-wondred · & a-waked sone, 2912
& for drede of hire drem · deulfulli quaked,
& weþe þo wonder sore · & wizïli hire cloþed,
& romed þan redli · al redles to hure chapel,
& godly be-souȝt god · to gode turne hire sweuen. 2916

at comli quen hade a prest · a konyng man of lore,
pat mooche couþe of many · & moyses he hiȝt,
to consaile sche him cleþed · & þe cas him told,
solliche al þe sweuen · þat hire a-niȝt mette. 2920
& as tit as sche had told · þe prest tok his boþes,
& seþ some of þat sweuen · hou it schuld turne.
he loked on þat comeli quen · & curtesli seide,
"Madame, mowre þe namore · þe mow wel seie 2924
þat þe prince of heuyn · ʒou hæþ prestli in mynde,
& socor sendeþ ʒou sone · bi þis sweuen ʒi knowe.
þe bestes þat bi-setþ ʒou so · & þour semli douȝter,
& duelfulli to deþe · wold haue ʒou don boþe, 2928
þo ar sopli þo segges · þat hard ʒou bi-sege,
& don hard here miȝt · to destruye ʒou here.
waþe þe of þe white beres · þat waxen seþ þe hertes,
& haue þe fourme in here hed · of tvo faire chi[l]deren,3

1 MS. "gate," See l. 1365.  2 Catchword—" & put hire."
3 Read "children."—M.
& gode crouns of gold · on here hedes graiped, 2933
pe hert pat you helped · so hastili wip strengpe, 2933
pe lyon & pe lebard · to your prisoyn ladde, 2948
&e alle pe bremest bestes · brouȝt [to]1 your wille, 2936
what pat it tokeneþ · telle wol ich sone.
It is a ful kud kniȝt · schal come you to help, 2941
& pu[r]ih2 his douȝthi dedes · destroye pis werre, 2941
& cæcche þe king of spayne · purth his cler strengþe, 2941
& se þe after is sone · þat al þe sorwe is fore, 2941
& þat ilke kud kniȝt · þat schal þe kome to help, 2945
I not where he schal · þou to wiue welde, 2948
but i wol wisli he worþ þe king of pis reaume.
also þat werwolf · þat wip þe hertes comes, 2948
he is a kud kniȝt · & schal be kud wide, 2948
& purth him, soþli, i se · þe king schal be deliuered, 2948
& þat put out of prisoyn · & god pes be maked, 2948
his sone & alle oþer · schul be þour hole frendes, 2952
& schul restore riuedli · þe reddour þat was maked.
þurth þilke werwolf · þe schul wite of þoure sone 2957
 þat þe long haue for-lore · lene me for soþe, 2957
& him winne a-þen at wille · wip-inne a schort time, 2957
& redli, of þyour riȝt arm · þat ouer rome streyt, 2957
I se wel þe signifiaunce · þis schal þer-of falle ; 2957
þi sone schal wedde swiche a wif · to weld wip al rome, 2957
as kind keper & king · i knowe wel þe soþe. 2960
& lelli, of þi lift arm · þat ouer spayne lay, 2960
þat bi-tokeneþ treuli · as telleþ my bokes, 2960
þat þi douȝti sone · schal þi dere douȝter þiuen 2963
þe kinges sone of spayne · when þe a-cord is maked ; 2963
þat sche be ladi of þat lond · þi left arm bi-tokeneþ.

1 Read "brouȝt to your wille."—M.
2 Read "thurth."—M. See next line.
now haue i said of 3our swenuen · sopli as wol falle, & treuly al pis schal be-falle · wip-inne a schort terme."

When pat loneli ladi · hade listened his wordes, 2968 & herd seie pat sche schold · hire sone a-zen winne, wonderli for ioye · sche wept for po wordes, & sorwfuliche sche sijt · last out schold it lett ; Lest any fals fortune · for-dede him purth sinne. 2972 but buxumli pat brijt lady · pan busked to hire chapel, & praied hire prest par charite · a masse to singe, of pe trinite in trone, to turne · hire swenuen to ioye, deliuerli he it dede · denouteliche & faire, 2976 & seppen pat comli ladi · cayres to hire chaummer, & weued vp a window · pat was toward pe place þere as þe hert & þe hinde · hadde take here reste. þere pat semli ladi hire set · out forto loke, 2980 & strek in-to a styf studie · of hire sterne swenuen, waytend out at window · while sche so pouȝt. & vnder a louelie lore tre · in a grene place, sche saw þe hert & þe hinde · lye collinge in-fere, 2984 Makende þe most ioye · þat man miȝt deuise, wip alle comli contenaunce · þat þei kipe miȝt ; haden here priue pleyes · of paramoures wordes, but sopli, of nouȝt þat þei seide · miȝt þe quen here, but of here selcope solas · samen þat þei made, 2989 so gret wonder walt þe quen · of þe worp bestes but lenede þer þe long day · to lok out at þe windowe, to se þe selcope signes · of þe semli bestes, 2992 til þe day him wip-drow · in-to þe derk miȝt, þat þe lady no lenger · miȝt loke on þe bestes. þan tiffed sche hire treuli · & turned in-to halle, Made a-mong hire ineyne · as mirie as sche couþe. 2996 whan þei samen hade souped · & seþ þe whasche after, here · kniȝtes & hire counseile · kome hire vntille,

The queen, on hearing this, weeps for joy.

[Fol. 48.] and prays the priest to say a mass to make her dream come true.

She looks from her chamber towards the park,

and as she watched, she sees the hurt and hind embracing each other joyfully.

She could not hear what they said, but she watched them a long while,

till night came on.

After supper, her knights bewailed their evil case,

1 "Here" would be more uniform if it were written "hire," but this change may be observed in a few other passages—M.
Munged newe her meschef · how neiȝ pei misserale;
how here walles were broke · wip engynes strong, 3000
here bretages al a-boute · for-brent & destroyed,
at pei miȝt no more · meintene pe sege.

Pan pei comli quene · ful curtesli saide,
"lordinges, ȝe ar my lege men · pe lasse & pe more,
& sworn eche bi his side · to saue mi riȝt, 3005
& manliche men ben · better mow non liue.
per-for, lordinges, for his loue · pei let vs be foured,
& for you owne worshippe · witeȝ me fro schape 3008
ȝut from pise wicked men · pei wold me spille.
& but god of his grace · sum god help vs sende,
I wol worche al your wille · wip-out ani faile,
wher pe i merci schul craue · or meintene pis werre.
treuli, ȝif me bitide · pis tene to a-schape, 3013
wip richesse i wol ȝou reward · forto riche for ever,
so pei treuli ȝour traual · nouȝt schul ȝe tine."
& alle here gomes were glad · of hire gode speche, 3016
& seden at o sent · "wat so tide wold after,
peii wold manli bi here miȝt · meintene hire wille,
so long as here lif lasted · to zelden hem neuer."
pan pei comly quen · ful curtesli hem pönked, 3020
& buscemed hem pei time · blipe to bedde,
& redly token here rest · til riȝt on pe morwe.
pan pei comli quen · kethli yp rieses,
biddande bisili hire bedes · buskes to hire chapel, 3024
& made hire prest moyses · sone a masse to sing,
& prestli pei pat while preized · to pe king of heuen,
& to his milde moder · pei alle men helpeȜ,
pei hire socour sende · sone bi time. 3028
whan pei masse was don · seie went to hire chaumber,
weited at pe windowe · wer seie pe bestes seie,
& seie hem in pe same place · per as [pei]1 were ere,
& hendli eiper oper · pei colled in armes. 3032

1 Read "per as pei were ere."—M.
The hot sun had cracked the hides of the hart and hind, and the queen sees their clothes.

She points out the beasts to the priest.

[Note: Fol. 49.]
He says her dream is coming true.

"You know about the emperor of Rome's daughter, who fell in love with a bold knight, and how they fled from Rome in two bears' skins.

These are they yonder!

You must contrive to get them here."

The queen thought she too would be sewed in a hind's skin.

The priest gets a hide for her.

As hote sunne hade so hard, pe hides stiued, pat here comli cloping, pat keuere hem per-vnder pe quen saw as sche sat out bi pe sides sene, & wex a-wondred per-of wittow for sope.

To counsel sche clepud hir prest, pe comli quen sone, & schewed him pe siȝt of pe semli bestes; & sone so he hem sey he seide to pe quene, "for mary loue, madame desmaye you no longer, for pe mater of pe [metyng] miȝtow here finde, as i descriued pis ender day, whan pow pi drem toldest, & pe han herd here-bi-fore how it bi-tidde in rome, pe emperours douȝter was zeeue emperours sone of grece, but no man miȝt here make pat mariage to holde; for sche hade arst leide hure loue on a better place, on on pe kuddest kniȝt knoen in pis worlde, best of his bodi, boldest & braggest in armes; & bope pei busked of rome in tvō beres skinnes, sippe pei hent hertes skinnes but hou, wot i neuer, but saufly pis may [i] seye & pe sope proue, pe zond is pat semly & and his selue make. He schal wiztli pis werre winne to an hende, & bring pe from alle bales to pi bote in hast, & deliner pi londes a-ʒen in lengpe & in brede, per-for no more of pis mater is to munge noupe, but bi-penke how pe best po bestes to winne, pat pe kniȝt & pat komli were kome to ʒour chaumber."

Pan pe komeli quen kast in hire hert, sche wold wirche in pis wise wel to be sewed In an huge hindes hide as pe oper were, & busk out pe bestes & vnder a busk ligge, til sche wist what pei were zif pei wold speke. Prestli pe prest pan proueyed hire swiche an hide,

1 Read "mater of the metyng."—M.  2 MS. emperours.  3 Read "may i seye."—M.
& drinez forp þat day to niȝt · þan drouȝ þei to reste.
but þe quen er þe day · was diȝt wel to riȝtes
hendli in þat hinde-skyyn · as swiche bestes were,
& bi a prime posterne · passad ounȝt er daie,
& a-bod vnder a busk · þere þe bestes leye,
so priueli, but þe prest · non parceynge miȝt,
but on of hire burwȝ-maydenes · þat sche loued most.
þei stoden stille hire to a-bide · wip-inne a posterne zate,
& whan þe suȝne gan here schewe · & to schine briȝt,
þe hende hert & hinde · bi-gunne to a-wake,
& maden in-fere þe mest murȝe · þat man miȝt diuise,
þeþe clipping & kessing · & contenaunce fele,
& talkeden bi-twene · mani tidye wordes.
& williȝam þan witerli · þise wordes seide,
"a! loueli lemmen · a longe time me þinkip,
seþen þat i saw · þi semli face bare;
sore me longes it to se · þif it miȝt so worpe."
"bi marie," seid meliors · "so dos me as sore,
your briȝt ble to by-hold · but beter is þut a-bide.
we wol nouȝt krepe of þese skinnes · lest vs schape 
tiddle,
til our buxum best · þif vs boþe leue.
for he be tokene whan time is · wol titli vs wisse,
what wise þat we schal · our owne wedes take."
"treuli, sweting, þat is sop" · seid williȝam þanne, 3088
"a gret prowé me þinkes · er þat time come;
but wold god þe quen · wist what we were,
& wold hastli me help · of horse & gode armes,
I wold socour hire sone · fram al þis sory werre, 3092
& pult hire out of þis peril · in pure litel while;
but of vs wol sche nouȝt · wo is me þer-fore.
nere it, swetyng, for þi sake · of my-self i ne ronȝt;
for moche meschef hastow had · onli for mi sake."
& wold god þe quen · wist what we were,
& wold hastli me help · of horse & gode armes,
I wold socour hire sone · fram al þis sory werre, 3092
& pult hire out of þis peril · in pure litel while;
but of vs wol sche nouȝt · wo is me þer-fore.
nere it, swetyng, for þi sake · of my-self i ne ronȝt;
for moche meschef hastow had · onli for mi sake."
"Meschif, sire," saide meliors · "nay, mungȝ pat no more;
þeþe clipping & kessing · & contenaunce fele,
& talkeden bi-twene · mani tidye wordes.
& williȝam þan witerli · þise wordes seide,
"a! loueli lemmen · a longe time me þinkip,
seþen þat i saw · þi semli face bare;
sore me longes it to se · þif it miȝt so worpe."
"bi marie," seid williȝam þanne, 3088
"a gret prowé me þinkes · er þat time come;
but wold god þe quen · wist what we were,
& wold hastli me help · of horse & gode armes,
I wold socour hire sone · fram al þis sory werre, 3092
& pult hire out of þis peril · in pure litel while;
but of vs wol sche nouȝt · wo is me þer-fore.
nere it, swetyng, for þi sake · of my-self i ne ronȝt;
for moche meschef hastow had · onli for mi sake."
"Meschif, sire," saide meliors · "nay, mungȝ pat no more;
& wold god þe quen · wist what we were,
& wold hastli me help · of horse & gode armes,
I wold socour hire sone · fram al þis sory werre, 3092
& pult hire out of þis peril · in pure litel while;
but of vs wol sche nouȝt · wo is me þer-fore.
nere it, swetyng, for þi sake · of my-self i ne ronȝt;
for moche meschef hastow had · onli for mi sake."
"Meschif, sire," saide meliors · "nay, mungȝ pat no more;"
The queen hears all their talk.

Melior tells a dream—how an eagle had taken her up to the high tower of the palace.

[fol. 50.] William and Melior perceive the hind.

William says it surely takes them to be what they seem, or it would flee.

"Nay," said the queen, "I know who ye are."

William wonders, and Melior is frightened.

William conjures the hind to say whether it is a good spirit or a foul fiend.

for leuer me is pis lif to haue · to liue wip pe here, 3100
pan to winne al pe world · & want pe of siȝt."
pan clipt pei & keste · & of pat karping left,
& bi a busch lay pe quen · bi here-self one,
& herde holli pe wordes · pat pei hade seide.
& meliors in pe mene time · to william mekle saide,
"swetyng, sore i was a-drad · of a sweuen 3er-while ;
Me pουst ḥanne an1 erne · er euer i was ware,
hade vs vp take · in-to pat heige toure;
wheroper it geyne to gode · or grame, wot i neuer."
"nay, i-wisse," sede william · "i wot wel pe sope,
at it gayneþ but god · for god may vs help."
& as pei laykeden in here laike · pei lokede a-boute,
& bleynte bi-hinde pe busch · & seijen as bluine,
how an huge hinde · held hire þere at rest. 3112
"bi marie," seide meliors · "me þink þat best slepeþ,
& semþ nouȝt a-drad of vs · to deme þe soþe."
"no, i-wisse," seide william · "i ne wot whi it schuld;
It weneþ þat we ben riȝt · swiche as it-silue ;
for we be so sotiliche · be-sewed in þis hides.
but wist it wisi · whiche bestes we were,
It wold fle our felaschip · for fere ful sone,"
"nay, bi crist," sede þe quen · "þat al mankinde
schaped,
I nel fle ful fer · for fere of 3ouȝ twayne.
I wot wel what ȝe ar · & whennes ȝe come,
al þe kas wel i knowe · þat ȝe arn komen inne."
william wex a-wondred · whan he þis wordes herd,
& meliors þe meke · wex neȝþ mad for fere. 3125
but william ful hastly · þus to þe hinde saide,
"I coniure þe, þurth crist · þat on eroice was peyned,
þatou titli me telle · & tarie nouȝt no lenger;
wheroper þow be a god gost · in goddis name þat spekist,
ioþer any foule fend · fourmed in þis wise,
þif we schul of þe hent · harme oþer gode." 3128

1 MS. "Me þouȝt erben ar ern, &c."
The queen says she will never harm them, that, in fact, she implores him to aid her, and he shall be king,

For the king of Spain had wasted her lands,

but she hopes to have William's help against him,

William rejoiced when he knew the queen,

1 MS. "his," altered to "hir" by a later hand.
WILLIAM PROMISES TO SERVE THE QUEEN.

and promises to serve her faithfully.

All three go together to the postern-gate.

The bower-woman, who was waiting, was nearly mad with fear.

but the queen reassures her,

and asks if she does not know her again.

She says she is frightened of the others.

The queen tells her to keep it all a secret.

The queen takes them to a chamber in the tower.

Two baths are soon made ready.

whil i busily buske a-boute  7our bales to bete,  3168
al my help holliche  pe schul haue at nede ;  
fei pli boute feyntise  7ou faile schal ich neuer,
as long as any lif  me lastes, for sope ."

Gretli was pe quen glad  & godli him  ponked,  3172
& loueli him  & his lemmaz  lau3t bi pe handes,  
& ferden forp on here fct  feipli to-gadere
pruuli to pe posterne  & in passed sone.

& 3it stod pe maide stille  pe quen to a-bide,  
& whan sche saw po pe bestes  so proli come,  
so hidous in po hides  as pei hertes were,
sche wex wol of hire wit  wittou, for fere ;  
& rapli gan a-way renne  to reken pe sope.

but pat comli quen  called hire a-zene,  3180
& carful [sche]  com  when sche hire clepe herde.

"whi carestow," sede pe quene  "knew how nou3t pe
sope,
pat i was tiffed in a-tir  when i wend fro pe ?"
"gis, madame," sede pe maide  "but, bi marie of heuen,
but i a-wede neic3 of wit  for po werder bestes,  
pat folwe 3our felachip  so ferli pei are ."

"pei wol do no duresse  bi dere god of heuen ;
for hem i went in pis wise  to win in-to pis place. 3188
but loke now, bi pi lif  pat no lud here-of wite,
how pei hider come  her-after neuer more ."

"nay, bi marie, madame"  pe maide  pan seide,
"pis dede schal i neuer deschuner  pe deth forto suffer."  
3193

be comli quen pan takep  meliors by pe hande,  3193
& bi-fore went william  & after-ward pe quene ;
brou3t hem to a choys chaumber  vnder pe chef toure,
[er]e  were beddes busked  for eny burn riche.  3196
& two bapes were boun  by a litel while,

1 Perhaps better thus, "carful sche com ."—M .
2 MS. "made;" see li. 2701, 3191.
3 MS. "pe." Read "there."—M .
& a-tired tryli · to trusly trewe londes.
sone þe quen kauȝt a knif · & komli hire-sclue
william & his worþi fere · swiftli vn-laced
out of þe hidous hidus · & in a hirne hem cast,
& whan þei were cloþed · worþli in here wedes,
alle men vpon mold · miȝt sen a fair copel
þan was bi-twene william · & þis worþi mayde.
þe quen hire clipt & kest · & gret comfort made,
& seþen blyne dede hem baþe · boþe tvo wel faire,
& greiþed hem gaili · in garnemens riche,
& manli made hem atte hese · wip alle metes nobul,
& wip þe de[r]worþest 1 deintes · of drinkes þat were ·
to munge more nis no ned · nouȝt missed þei þanne.
whan þei merili at mete · hade made hem at ese,
þat comli quen to william · curtesli saide,
“swete sire, þe me saye · what signe is þe leuest
to haue schape in þi scheld · to schene armes?”
“bi crist, madame,” sede þe miȝt · “i couȝte nouȝt
elles
but þat i haue a god schel[d] · of gold graiþed clene,
& wel & faire wip-inne · a werwolf deþeynted,
þat be hidous & huge · to haue alle his riȝtes,
of þe couenablest colour · to knowe in þe feld ·
oþer armes al my lif · atteli neuer haue.”
þe quen þan dede comaunde · to carfti 2 men i-nowe,
þat deinis him were diȝt · er þat day eue,
to wende in-to werre · in world where him liked ·
þat was perles a-parrayl · to proue of alle gode.

Also þat comli quen · as þat crist wold,
hade on þe sturnest stede · in hire stabul teȝed,
þat euer man vpon molde · miȝt of heren,
& douȝtiest to alle dedes · þat any horse do schuld.
þe king eþrouȝs it ouȝt · þat was hire lord bi-fore,
& fro þe day þat he deide · durst no man him neȝȝe,

1 Read “derworthest.”—M.  
2 Read “crafti.”—M.

The queen with a knife unlaces the hides.
William and Melior seem a fair couple.
They bathe, and are richly dressed and go to meat.
The queen asks William what cognisance he will have on his shield.
He replies—“A werwolf on a shield of gold.”
The queen has it made for him.
She had in her stable a very spirited horse, that had been her husband’s.
Since Ebrouns' death, no one had dared to mount him.

[Fol. 52.]
The horse, knowing William, brake all his bands for joy, and neighed wondrously. And this is told to the queen.

William hears about it, and asks what sort of a horse it is.

"It was Ebrouns' horse," she says.

William asks for it.

She says he may have whatever he pleases; he thanks her.

Next day, the steward of Spain

ne be so bold of his body on his back to come, but ever stood tied in he stabled with stiff iron hinges; & queyntliche to his cracche was corue swiche a weie, pat men must legge him mete & wateren atte willie. he horse sone hace sauer of pat hende kniȝt, & wist, as god wold it was is kinde lord. as blieue, al his bondes he to-brak for ioye, & so gan fare wip his fet & ferliche neȝede, pat men wend he hade be wod & warned pe quene, how sternli in he stabel pe stede paranther, & had broke alle his bondes no burn durst him neȝe.

when william herde pe se wordes he saide to pe quene, "Madame, I what stede is pat pat so sterne is hold? Is he ouȝt douȝti to dedes? pat men don of armes?" "3a certes," saide pe quen "sof for to telle, a worpier to pat werk wot i non in erpe, zif any man вопon mold myȝt wip him dele. he was mi lordes, wil he liuede pat i so moche louede, & for his loue sertenli i do pis stede 3eme." "Mademe," sede william "zif it were your wille, I wold preie par charite & profit pat may falle, pat i most haue pat horse when i schal haue to done. I wol to medis my-self manliche him diȝt, sette вопon his sadel & semli him greip." "certes," sede pe quen "i seie pe at onis, holli of al pat i haue here i make pe maister, to do per-wip bi day & niȝt as pe god pinkes." pe-of was william glad & wiztli here ponkes, pan asked pei pe win & went to bedde after, for it was forp [to] niȝt 2 faren bi pat time.

Delivered on pe morwe er pe day gan dawe, pe steward of spayne pat stern was & bold, hadde bi-seged pat cite selconpeli hard

1 MS. "Madame."
2 See note.
wip pre M. of men · pat pro were to fiȝt.
& po po segges of po cite · sone were ȝare,
as douȝti men of dedes · defence for to make,
zerne schetten here ȝates · & zemed po walles.
for of po wip-inne · non wold hem out amuter,
so fele were of here fon · & so fewe wip-inne.
pe cry rudli a-ros · pat reuþe it was to hure,
for þei wip-inne þe toun · swiche meschef were inne.
þat þei witterli wende · haue be wonne þat daye. 3272
þiti was þe tiding · told in þe paleys,
how felli here fomen · gun fiȝt atte walles.
whan william þat wiste · wialþli vp he stirte,
as glad as any gone · þat euer god wrouȝt,
þat he miȝt his sille fiȝt · for þat fre quene.
anon he was armed · at alle maner poyntes,
& streiȝt him in-to the stabul · þere þe stede stod,
& moche folk him folwed · þat ferli to bi-hold, 3280
how sternli he & þe [stede]1 · schold stiȝtli to-gadere.
& as sone as þe kniȝt kud · kome to þe stabul,
þat þe stede him of-saw · sone he vp-leped,
& faire wip his fore fet · kneled doun to grounde, 3284
& made him þe most ȝoye · þat [man] miȝt deuise, 2
& alle frekes þat him folwed · gret ferli hade.
þe stede stod ful stille · þough he sterne were,
while þe kniȝt him sadeled · & clanli him groiþed ;
& wan vp wialþli him-self · whan he was ȝare, 3289
& schuþt his schelde on is schulder · a scharp spere on
honde,
& gerd him wip a god swerd · for any man in erþe.
þe stede liked wel þe lode · his lord whan he felte, 3292
þe wist him wìght of dede · & wel coude ride,
& braundised so bremli · þat alle burnes wondred
of þe comli cuentenaunce · of þe kniȝt þat he bare.

Read "the stede schold stiȝtli."—M.
Read "that man miȝt deuise." A common phrase.—M. See
ll. 2985, 3075.
so sche, he was to se in his semli armes, 3296
pat alle burnes were blipe to bi-hold him one; 3299
for so semli a seg had pei nouȝt ȝore seie.

pat quen & hire douȝter & melior pe schene
wayteden out at a windowe wilfulli in-fere, 3300
how that komeli kniȝt kuntyened on his stede.

pe quen & here douȝter denised him so moche,
& preisede him perles for eny prince in erpe,
& seiden, "wel is pat womman pat he wold haue!
vnnder crist, is no kniȝt pat so kud semen!"

now william on his sterne stede now stifli forp rides,
so sereli purth pe cite al him-self one, 3316
pat eche weig was a-wondred pat seiȝ wiȝ eizen,
so coraious a contenauzce pat kud kniȝt hadde.

william presti preiked per pe puple was sembled,
& alle pe solempne segges pat pe cite zemed, 3320
bold barounes & kniȝtes & oþer segges nobul.
& whan pei were war of william wilfulli alle,
pe komynge of pe kuntenauzce of pe kniȝt nobul
pei bi-helden hertly & hadden gret ioye,

pa so manli a man wold mele in here side.

pe nobul blonk pat him bar a[s] blie pei knewe,

1 MS. "wirdernesse." Read "wildernesse." — M.
2 MS. "segeges." Read "segges." — M.
3 Read "as blie." — M.
FOUR HUNDRED CITIZENS MAKE A SALLY.

but witterli what he was · wist non of alle.

They know the horse, but not the man.

William

harangues them,

asking them why they let their foes bar them in.

He exhorts them
to make a sally,

and their courage
will supply their lack of numbers.

Men, for 3oure manchipe · na more · pat suffrept,

He will go first,

and strike the first blow.

but wendept ouxt wiztli · & wip 3our fon metep,

He opens the
gates, and rides out.

haup reward to 3our ri3t · & redli chul 3e spede ;

Four hundred
bold men follow him.

& 3e wite · pei do wrong · pe worse schul · pei happe.

if 3e manli wip hem mete · pe maistry worp oure,

Four hundred
bold men follow him.

peizh · pei be fine so fele · as we in-fere alle.

he spaynolnes hem hade a-spiede · & spakli gun ride,

The Spaniards
attack them.

& 3e pat wilne to wynne · worchiphe in armes,

for 3e spaynolnes hem hade a-spiede · & spakli gun ride,

being 3,000 in
number.

folwep me, for in feip · pei ferst wil i bene,

1 MS. "faile." Read "faile." — M.

pat smertli schal smite · pe alderfirst dint " :—

& 3erne opened · pe gates · & 3epli out rides.

whan · pe bold knijtles hade herde · · pat burnes wordes,

whan · pe bold knijtles hade herde · · pat burnes wordes,

& sey him so fersli for · fare · so bi-fere hem alle,

& sey him so fersli for · fare · so bi-fere hem alle,

· pei wist he was a wizt man · & wold nouxt faile

1 but · pat he schuld hem help · · pei hoped for sope,

but · pat he schuld hem help · · pei hoped for sope,

& foure hundred fers men · folwed him after,

& foure hundred fers men · folwed him after,

of koraious knijtles · & · op · kud kempes,

of koraious knijtles · & · op · kud kempes,

· pat for to liuen or deyen · litel hem rouxt.

· pat for to liuen or deyen · litel hem rouxt.

& whan · wiliam was war · wiche a route sewede,

& whan · wiliam was war · wiche a route sewede,

he was gainli glad · no gom · hurt him blame,

he was gainli glad · no gom · hurt him blame,

& a-bod til · pe burnes · a-boute him were come.

& a-bod til · pe burnes · a-boute him were come.

[fol. 54.]

The Spaniards
attack them.

azens hem · pre · · pei ne tok non hede

to reule hem of non array · but ri3t, for gret pride,
Which burn bi-fore oper · on his blonk priked, 
to asayle pe segges · pat fro pe cite come,
william seide to his whieys · wittili for sope, 3364
"Lordinges & leue frendes · listenes to my sawes!
pe3h 3e be ferd of your fon · flep neuer pe sunner;
pe bolder ou3t we be · pei ben out of araie.
stonde we stifli to-gader · stifly in defens,
& ne leses no lond · lordinges, god for-bede!
which lud penk on his lemmman · & for hire loue so fi3t.
to winne worship perilph · in worlde for euer-more.
& in feip, pe3h eft as fele · of our fomen were, 3372
deliuered purth 3our dedes · schul pei deie sone." kni3tes wip sire william · kau3t [panne] 1 god hert,
& realiche were a-rai3ed · in a litel while,
In a ful styf strengpe · to stonde to fi3t. 3376
per kom a kni3t to-fore · pe companye of spayne,
a stif man & a stern · pat was pe kinges stiward,
& cheueteyn was chose · pat eschel to lede.
& for boldnesse of his bodi · be-fore alle he went, 3380
armed at alle poyntes · on a nobul stede.
william was wistily · whar of his come,
& gamli to his gomes · gan for to seie,
"bi crist, 3ond kni3t · pat komep here armed, 3384
derep litel oure dedes · what-euer he do pink.
but bi god pat me gaf · pe gost & pe soule,
I wol fonde be pe first · in feld him to mete;
but our on titly tumbel · trouwe me neuer after." 3388
spacli boute speche · his spere 3anne he heute,
& euen to pat stiward · dede his stede renne,
& manli as mi3ti men · eiper mette oper,
& spacli pe operes spere · in spekdes 3an wente. 3392
ac william was strong inow · wittow forsope,
& he so sternli pe stiward · pat ilk time hitte,
purth pe bold bodi · he bar him to pe erpe,
as ded as dormayl · te deme pe sope. 3396

1 See note.
"I-wis," þenne seide william. "i wot wel to wisse, 
þow dost vs neuer after · no duresse in armes!"
ac spaely þe spaynoles · speijed he was slayne,
þei were [wode]¹ of here witt · wittow for soþe,
³astili hent vp his bodi · & to here tentes bere,
þat it were nouȝt in þat fiȝt · wip here horse troden.
& as blie boldli · þe burns of spayne,
þouȝt manli make wreche · here lorlde² to queme, 3400
for swiche a lorlde³ of lederes · ne liued nouȝt, þei held, 
non so douȝti of dedus · þer-for his deth a-wreke ³
þei þouȝt proli þat time · what bi-falle after.

A ful breme bataile · bi-gan þat ilk time, ³⁴⁰⁸
when eipor sides a-ssembled · of þo segges sturne.
Mani a spere spacli · on peces were to-broke,
& many a schene scheld · scheuered al to peces,
Many helmes to-hewe · þurth here huge strokes. ³⁴¹²
& redili for to rekene · al þe riȝt soþe;
william & his wiȝes · so wonderli fouȝten,
þat þei felden here fon · ful fast to grounde.
non miȝt here strok wip-stand · in þat stunde þan, ³⁴¹⁶
so wel for williãms werkis · were þei þan herted.
þe stiward had a newe · but of þong age,
on þe manlokest man · þat men schold of heren,
& douȝtiest of dedes · þat men schuld do in armes. ³⁴²⁰
as swiftili as he wist · þat his em was slawe,
he þouȝt duelfulli þa deth · þat day to a-wreke.
armed at alle pojntes · anon he þider went,
& preñed in a-mang þe pepul · þer it was þiȝkest, ³⁴²⁴
& sone to hem of þe cipt · a-ssembled he þanne,
& fouȝt þan so ferscheli · for his emes sake,
he dud to dethe deliuerli · þiuȝe gode kniȝtes,

¹ Read "were wode of here witt." — M.
² Sic in MS. See l. 3955.
³ MS. "a wrekis." Read "a-wreke," or "a-wreken," in the infinitive.—M. Cf. l. 3422.
William forces his way to him.

The steward's nephew knows William by the werewolf on his shield.

Their spears break, and they fight with swords.

William's sword grinds through helm and head down to the breast.

and he sends his foe's horse and the steward's horse to Melior as a present.

The Spaniards turn to flight.

William and his men pursue them 6 miles, taking many prisoners.

\[\text{Fol. 55 b.}\]

\begin{align*}
\text{112} & \\
\text{THE SPANIARDS ARE DEFEATED AND FLY.} & \\
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{\hat{p}at bold were in bataile \cdot to a-bide at nede.} & & 3428 \\
\text{when william wist of \hat{p}at werk \cdot wittow forso\hat{p}e,} & \\
\text{\hat{p}er nas man vpon molde \cdot \hat{p}at him mi\hat{t}t lette,} & \\
\text{\hat{p}at he ne perced \hat{p}e pres \cdot prestili \hat{p}at time,} & \\
\text{til he met wip \hat{p}at man \cdot \hat{p}at mi\hat{t}ti was hold.} & & 3432 \\
\text{when \hat{p}e stiwardes newe \cdot saw william come,} & \\
\text{bi \hat{p}e werwolf in his scheld \cdot wel he him knewe,} & \\
\text{\hat{p}at \hat{p}e same seg hade slawe \cdot his em per-to-fore.} & \\
\text{& wisti\hat{t}l as a wod man \cdot to william he priked,} & & 3436 \\
\text{wip spere fastened in feuter \cdot him for to spille.} & \\
\text{at \hat{p}e a-coupyng \hat{p}e knij\hat{t}es [speres] \cdot eiper brak on} & \\
\text{oper,} & \\
\text{swiftli \hat{p}e here swerdes \cdot swinge \hat{p}e to-geder,} & \\
\text{& delten duelful dentes \cdot deliusli \hat{p}at stounde.} & & 3440 \\
\text{& william was \hat{p}e wi\hat{t}tere \cdot \& \text{wel sarre smot,} } & \\
\text{& set so hard a strok \cdot sone after on \hat{p}at oper,} & \\
\text{\hat{p}urth helm \& hed hastili \cdot \hat{p}e brest it grint.} & \\
\text{\hat{p}e swerd swiftili swenged \cdot \hat{p}urth \hat{p}e bode euen,} & & 3444 \\
\text{\hat{p}at tit ouer his hors-tail \cdot \hat{p}e tumbled ded to grounde.} & \\
\text{\hat{p}at ilk stoute knij\hat{t}es stede \cdot \& \hat{p}e stiwardes alse} & \\
\text{william sent sone \cdot to his emali lemmam,} & \\
\text{wher-of sche was geinli glad \cdot \& oft god \hat{p}onked,} & & 3448 \\
\text{\hat{p}a he so wel hade wrou\hat{t} \cdot in werre \hat{p}at day.} & \\
\end{align*}

W i l l i a m² & his burnes \cdot \hat{p}an in bataile were, \\
so felly wip here fon \cdot fous\hat{t} \hat{p}at ilke time, \\
bi a stounde was non so stef \cdot \hat{p}at hem wip-stonde mi\hat{t}, \\
but were sayn for to fle \cdot eche bi-fore oper, & & 453 \\
wel was him in \hat{p}e world \cdot \hat{p}at swifliest mi\hat{t}t hije, \\
oper on hors oper on fote \cdot for fere³ of \hat{p}e de\hat{p}e, \\
\text{& william \& his whij\hat{e}s \cdot went after sone,} & & 3456 \\
\text{& maden manli \hat{p}e chas \cdot mo \hat{p}an fiue mile,} & \\

\begin{enumerate}
\item Read "the knij\hat{t}es speres."—M.
\item The capital W is absent, but its place is marked by a very small w.
\item MS. "fore." Read "fere."—M.
\end{enumerate}
& grete prisons & gode · goten þei þat time;
þat meked hem nouȝt to mercy · manli þei slowe,
& whan þei time seie · turned hem hom aȝene, 3460
heriȝed[1] heili god · þat þei wel had spedde.
but holli williains werkès · þei wittened it alle,
nade his douȝthi dedes be · þei hade be dede alle;
& louted to [him] as to lord · þe lasse & þe more, 3464
& eche a gom was gladdest · hoo gaynest him miȝt
ride.
al þe sorwe þei hadde suffred · [so] lang to-fore,
þei sett it sopli at nouȝt · so glad were þei þan, 3467
for þe douȝthi kniȝtes dedus · þat þat day hem helped.
wþ al þe murther vpon molde · þo miȝthi men in-fere
passeden to þe paleys · proude of here dedes.
þe comly quen & here douȝter · com him a-jens,
& þe me[ñ]skful meliors · wþ maydenes fele, 3472
& welcomed williain · as þei wel ouȝte,
wþ clipping & kessing · & alle kinde dedus.
 þe quen him loueȝi ladde · riȝt to h[er]e chaumber,
vn-armed him anon · & afterward closed 3476
clenliche for eny [kniȝt] · þat vnder crist liuede.
þan sete þei þre · to solas hem at þe windowe,
euen ouer þe iȝly place · þat to þat paleis longed,
þere as þe quen fond williain · & his faire make. 3480
& as þei waited a-boute · wil þei of murther speke,
williains werewolf · was comen þider þanne,
loked vpon þe ladies · & his loueli maister,
& held vp his four-e-fet · in foume to craue mercy, 3484
& louted to hem louelī · and lelly þer-aftuer,
he went wiȝtly a-wei · whider him god liked.
þe quen þer-of was a-wondred · & to williain seide,
"sire, saw þe þis selcouȝe · of þis semli best? 3488
wonder signes he wrouȝt · what mai hit tokene?"
"þis, certes, madame " · seide williain þanne,
"i sei þe signes mi-self · & sopli ich hope,
[1] Perhaps miswritten for "heriȝende."

8
William says it is a good sign.

The queen tells her story—how she had a son named William, who, when 4 years old, was playing in the park, when a werewolf caught him up and ran off with him.

The king and his men pursued him over mires and mountains, but in vain.

The werewolf leapt into the sea, and was seen no more.

William remembers how he was found by the cowherd, but reflects that the queen said her son was drowned.

[Fol. 56 b.] He tells her he will stand in her son's stead.

She thanks him, and gives him full powers.

William was in a wer·pat it were him-selue. how pe couherd pe king told· it cam him in minde, pat he him fond in pe forest· in faire riche cloupes, 3515 but sche seide pat hire sone· was in pe see dronked, & pe wolf also· pat him a·wei bare, pe proli pouzt pat him meued· per-of pat ilk time sone he let ouer-slide· & seide to pe quene, 3519 pat sche schuld make hire merie· hire meyne to glade, & he wold in hire sones stede· stand euuer at nede. sche ful godli gan him ponke· & gaf him hol mijth, to meyntene al hire god· as maister in his owne.

1 Read “the quen, that on croyce deied.”—M.
pan talked pei of oper tales ' til time were to soupe,
& were served bi ese ' as hem-self wold,
& so druen forth pe day . til pe derke nijt,
with al pe mirthe vpon mold ' pat man mi3th devise.
pis lessoun let we of hem ' & lestew we a-noper ;
of pe spaynolus wol i speke ' how spacle pei fled ;
pilke pat went with pe lif ' a-wei fro pat sthoure,
spakli to pe king of spayne ' pei sped hem pat time,
& seide to him & his sone ' pe cas pat was falle,
which a kni3t com hem a-zenis ' conquered alle oper,
so sterne he was & stoute ' & swiche st[r]okes lent ;
was non so stif stelen wede ' pat with-stod his wepen ;
& how he in pe stour ' pe stoute stiward slow,
and his nobul neuew ' a-non ri3t per-after ;
& bede wi3tli hem awreke ' of pe wicked harme,
or alle men vpon mold ' mi3th hem schame speke ;
so fele of here frendes ' in pe feld were slayne,
pe it was a sorful si3t ' to se how it ferde.
whan pe king & his conseil ' herde of pis cas,
a selcoup sorwe he made ' & his sone als,
pat was a ful kud pi3t ' & kene man in armes.
he was wod of his wit ' for wrappe of pat dede,
& praizd prestili pis poynct ' anon of his fader,
pat he most on pe morwe ' with a mi3thi ost
wende to a-wrek hem ' of pat wicked dede.
& zif he mette with pat kni3t ' pat is so mi3thi hold,
he swor sadli is op ' as tit to his fader,
pat he fro pe bodi ' [wold] 1 haue his hed sone,
oper tit take him a-liue ' no 3ain-torn schuld lette.
pe-of pe king was geyuli glad ' & graunted his wille,
bud him worche whan he wold ' & wend whan him
liked.
pe kinges sone aswipe ' let sembul mich e puple,
& tried him to a tidi ost ' of pe tide3ist burnes,
pat he mi3th in pe mene time ' in any maner gadere.

1 Read "fro the bodi wold haue." — M.
Manli on pe morwe · he dede his men greipe
Gaili as gomes miȝt be · in alle gode armes ·
faire þan with his folk · to þe feld he went
bi-fore boldli him-self · his batailes to araie,
alle his burnes bluie · in x batailes he sett,
as redili araizèd · as any rink port wilne.
& iij. M. þro men · in his eschel were,
& alle bold burnes · in batailes strong & bigge.
þe kinges sone þan seide · to his segges bold,
"Leue lordinges, for mi loue · lelli me telles,
how schal i him knowe · what konichauus here he ·
bere?"
"sertes, sere," seide a kniȝt · "so me wel time,
pat kud kniȝt is eth to knowe · by his kene dedes,
& bereth in his blasoun · of a brit hewe
a wel huge werwolf · wonderli depeinted;
pat man driues a-doun · to dethe, pat [he] hittes."
"sone it schal be sene" · seide þe kinges sone,
"wheþer of vs be wiȝttere · to winne or to lese." 3576

William's men, on the morrow, are well arrayed.
He divides them into 6 companies.
His horse's name was Ebrouns' Saundbruel.
[Fol. 57 h.]
The prince's men point out William to him.

Now wol i a while · of william here telle,
in what maner on þe morwe · is men were amid,
deliuþli at þe dai · diȝt þei were alle,
treðli in al atir · þat to werre longed.
& williãm ful wiȝtthli · as he wel couþe,
set alþe his segges · as þei schuld bene,
In sexe semli batailes · as þei schuld bene;^1
al be-fore in þe frond · he ferde þan him-selue.
3584
ebrouns saundbruel · so hiȝt his blonk nobul.
& as sone as þe kinges sone · saw him so come,
fast he freyned at his folk · what freke þat it were,
& þei seide ful sone · "for soþe, it is þat kniȝt,
þat hāþ wrouȝt al þis wo · wel ouȝt we him hate;
3588

^1 The last half of this line is clearly copied from the line before.
alle he driveth to be deth; pat his dint felexs."
be kinges some forsope; ne seide be no more,
but gart his [stede] 1 goo; and strei3et to him rides
with his sperere on feuter; festened pat time. 3593
whan william was war; & wist of his come,
his men seiden sone; it was be kinges sone,
& douzthi man & deliuer; in dedes of armes. 3596
"lat me worp;" quam william; "pat schal i wite sone
In feip pou3h he hade fors; of foure swiche ober.
I wol fond with him fizt; pou3h me tide pe worse." 3600
to pe kene kinges [sone]2; pat was a kni3t nobul.
so kenli pei a-curttred; at be coupyng to-gadere,
pat pe kni3t sperere in speldes; alto-schiuered.
ac williams sperere was stef; wittow for sophe,
& mette pat oper man; in pe midde scheld,
pat bope him; & his hors; he hurles to grounde;
& nei3 hade broke his bak; so his blonk him hirt.
william pan wiztli; be pe auentayle him hent, 3604
whan be with his swerd; swapped of his hed; 3
but be segges of spayne; souz to him 4 toeme,
be haue holpen here lord; hastili zif pei mi3t;
& williams wizes wiztli; went hem a-zens. 3612
po bi-gan pat batayle; on bope sides harde,
feller saw neuer frek; from adam to pis time;
sone was mani bold barn; bro3t per to ground,
Mani scheldes schiuered & mani helmes hewen, 3616
& mani a stif stede; straizet in pere blade.
bold burns of bodies; pere were on bope sides,
pat fayn were forto fizt; & to fle hated. 3620
but william so wonder wel; fauzt pat ilke time, [Fol. 58.]
The prince rides at William,
who is told it is the prince who is coming.
William says he will fight him,—
and rides to meet him.
The pricess's spear breaks,
but William's strikes the prince fairly, hurling horse and man to the ground.
William is going to "swap" off his head,
but the Spaniards come to the rescue.
A general battle ensues, very severe and deadly.

1 Read "gart his stede goo."—M.
2 Read "the kene kinges sone that was."—M.
3 The MS. apparently has "heued," altered to "heade." See l. 3864.
4 MS. " him to 3erne;" and "to" is altered to "so" by a later hand.
William fight boldly, and prevents the rescue of the prince,

whom he drags out of the melle, and assigns to some citizens to keep.

The Spaniards again attempt a rescue, a fresh host coming out of ambush.

William keeps up his men's courage,

but perceives that the enemies are too numerous;

wherefore he orders a retreat to the town.

His men are successful in bringing the prince with them.

Yeomen shut the gates and man the walls.

pat no man pat he hit · mizth him with-ponde,
& euer kept pe kinges' sone · frai al his kene meyne,
pat non mizt him winne a-wei · for worse ne for beter.
& were hem lef or per lop · william at last
keuered with pe kinges sone · out of pe kene prese,
& brozt him out on his blonk · of pat batayle sterne,
&a-signed of citesens · segges i-nowe,
to kepe wel pe kinges sone · til pei come to town;
& pei were blipe of pat bode · & bisiliche fondede
fast to ferke him forword · as pei faire mizt.

whan pe spaynols pat a-spied · spakli pei him folwed,
and deden al pe duresse · pat pei do mizt.
a fersche ost hem to help · hastili pei come,
pat was a-buschid per bi-side · in a brent greue.
but whan william was war · & wist of here come,
Manly he demeyned him · to make his men egre, 3636
bad hem alle be bold · & busiliche fiist,
for here fon gun feynte · & felde were manye.

pe kinde confort of pe knizt · to is folk pat he made, were als fresch forto fiist · as pei were on morwe.

but william say per orper side · so fers & so breme,
pat his men mizt nouzt · meyntene here owne,
prestli to hold party · to puple pat hem folwed.
for pei he dede hem deliuerli · drawe toward town, 3644
& kepten wel pe kinges [sone] · for cas pat mizt falle,
for ouzt pat here enimys · euer worche mizt.

pei keuered with elene strengpe · with him to town,
& pe segges of pe eite · but po pat slayn were.

& zepli zomen pan dede · pe zates schette,
& wiztilli pan went · pe walles forto fende,
so pat feipli of here fon · no fors pei ne leten.

1 MS. "'kenges.'" But see ll. 3591, 3601, 3625.
2 A line lost (?)
3 Read "'the kinges sone for cas.'"—M. See ll. 3601, 3625.
4 The MS. repeats the words pat here.
William with his wyes is wip-in pe cite nobul, hap conquered wip clene strengpe pe kinges some of spayne, & passew with him & his puple to pe paleys euen, with al mirth vpon molde pat man miȝt deuise. 

pe quen him mett mekli wip maidenes fele, 
& meliors & here dere douȝter to deme pe sope, wip alle worship & wele william pei receyued, wip clipping & kesseng & alle coupe dedes. 

& william pan wiȝtly wip-oute eny more, pe kinges some of spayne spakli to hire zalde, to putte in hire prisoun & Peyne him as hire liked. 

& curtesli to pat kniȝt gan sche knele þanne, fortþ ponk him proli of pat faire zeft; for he was man vpon molde pat sche most hated, & hade hir do most duresse for hire douȝter sake. 

hastili in-to þe halle wip hem þan sche went, & ladde william as lord loneli in londe; 
& as blue þe burdes brouȝt him to hire chaumber, & vn-armed him anon & after-ward him cloped as komly as any kniȝt vnder crist þort bene. 

seþen þede to sitte same to solas & to pleie at a wid windowe þat was in þe chaumber, & gonne mekli to mene of many gode wordes. 

& as pei saddest in here solas seten þat time, þe quen hertli gan bi-hold þe kene zonge kniȝt, 
& here brouȝt þat time þat in þe world was neuer a liuande lud so lelli liche oþer, as þat komli kniȝt to þe king ebrouns, 
þat was lord whil he liued & þat lor[d]chiþe welte. 

& swiche a sorwe to hire sone sank to herte, þat wiȝtli gan sche wepe wonderly sore. 

whan william saw hire wepe wroþli he seide, "for seynt mary loue, madame whi make þe þis sorwe? 
þe schuld now make ȝow merie þour mene to glade, þat feynt ar for-fouten in feld & for-wounded. 

William takes the king of Spain's son to the queen's palace, [Fol. 58 b.] and delivers him over to the queen. 

The queen thanks William heartily. 

The ladies unaun and clothe him. 

As they sit together in a window, the queen sees how very like 

William is to king Ebrouns, and she begins to weep. 

William says he ought rather to rejoice.
WILLIAM SAYS HER SON IS SURELY DEAD.

to summe schuld 3e zif now · ziftes ful gode,¹
& to summe by-hote · pe bliþer hem to make. 3688
Mater now haue 3e · moche mirie to bene;
3e han now on in hold · þurth him haue 3e schulle
wel your worcep a-þein · as 3e walt euer."

The queen excuses herself.

"Forsóþe, sire," sede pe quen · "3e seyn al þe treuþe;
3e make me mater i-now · mirye to bene. 3693
I wot for i so wept · i wrouȝt nouȝt þe best,
but i miȝt nouȝt per-with · i-wisse, sire, & treuþe,
so þroly a sore þouȝt · þirled min hert,"— 3696
& sopli whi it was · þe encheson him seide,
how hire þouȝt he was liche · hire lord þe king þanne,
& hou þe sorwe of hire sone · dede hire so to wepe.
Þan sede william wîþli · þese wordes to hire-selue, 3700
"Madame, of þat mater · no more now þinkes;
what be 3e now þe beter · so bitterli to wepe,
seþþe boþe þi sire & þi sone · arn boþe dede?
þeþþh 3e driþen swiche duel · al your lif dawes, 3704
3e gete hem neuer a-gayn · late god haue þe saules,
& make your-self mirie · your mene forto glade."
Þan wax þe quen ful wo · wittow for soþe,
þat william sede þat hire sone · schuld be dede, 3708
for hire hert bar hire euer · þat he hire sone schuld bene,
bi knowing of alle kontænance · þat þe king welt.
but of þat mater no more · minged þei þat time,
æc turned in-to oper tales · þat touched to mirth. 3712
& waidende² out at þe window · as þei in tales were,
þan þei seie þe werwolf · was com hem bi-fore,
Kortesliche knueling · as he in wise couþe,
& louted to þe ladies · & to þe lord alse, 3716
buxumli as any best · bi any resoun schuld,
& seþþen went his wei · whider him god liked.
þe quen wîþli to william · þese wordes sede,

¹ Catchword, "& to summe by."
² MS. "waidende." Read "waitende."—M.
"sire, a selcoup sijt it is of pis semli best; I loo, how loueti it a-louted · lowe to vs twijes, It bi-tokenes sum-what treuli · god turne it to gode!" "3a, i-wisse," seide william · "wene ze non oper, for pat blessed best · neuer boded but gode. 3724 he pat heried helle · fram harm him saue!" "amen," seiden alle · pat þere with him seten. þus drue þei forþ þe day · with dioure mirth, & treuli when it was time · turned to mete, & serued were of serves · as hem-self liked; but speke we of þe spaynols · what hem tidde after.

Sone as þe kinges sone · was to þe cite take, þat his miȝt men · miȝt no more him help, þer was a selcoup sorwe · a-mang þe segges maked, & karfulli to þe king · þei kayred a-zayne, & told him holli here tene · how his sone was take, & how here segges were slayn · a selcoup noumber. 3736 when þe king wist · as man wod he ferde, & wroþi to his wîges · þat þere were he seide, "whi suffred ze my sone · so sone to be take? ze schul hastli be honged · & with hors to-drawe!" 3740 & deraþed him for þat dede · as alle deie schulde. but kniȝtes of his counseil · com til him sone, & saide him soburli · so miȝt he nouȝt worche, for a kniȝt him conquerede · al with clene strengþe, & hade him out of þe ost · mawgrey hem alle. 3745 "o kniȝt," quap þe king · "what kemp is þat ilke, þat wan so on my sone · is he so douȝti?" "3e forsoþe," seid on · "sire, with þoure leue, þer mai no man vpon mold · azens þat man stond, he drueþ to dethe · who-so his dent caccheþ, his douȝti dedes vs dop · more duress þan alle oþer; he it is þat þe werwolf · welsdes in his scheld." 3752 "I mak a vow," quod þe king · "to crist þat al welsdes, er i ete more mete · his miȝt wol i a-saie;
HE SETS HIS MEN IN BATTLE-ARRAY.

His men are to be ready on the morrow.

The Spaniards are armed, and come down to the plain.

They find there 500 bodies of their comrades.

The bodies are borne away to the tents, to be buried later.

The king sets his men in three battalions, of 2000 men each.

William and his men issue out of the city.

& if any egge tol wol entre · in-to his bodi,

I wol do him to pe deth · and more despit ouere ;

he schal heije be honged · riʒt bi-fore hire gate,

pat alle pe segges of pe cite · schulle him bi-hold,

& seppen wol i pat cite · setten al on fure,

& do bruten alle pe burnes · pat be now per-inne ;

schal no gom vnder god · oper gate it make."

pan komaunded pe king · to do krie as swiʒpe,

pat alle his rinkes schuld be redi · riʒt erli on morwe,

armed at alle poyntes · as pei no wold be spilt,

& hasteli was his hest · pan hendli fulfilled.

Ful manlich on pe morwe · were his men greiʒed,

of bold mennis bodiesse · a ful breme ost.

Gailier greiʒed · were neuer gomes seie,

of alle maner armure · pat to werre longed.

pan passed pe spaynols · in-to a faire plaine,

per as pe breme bataile · was on pe day bi-fore.

pere pan fouande pei fele · of here frendes slayne,

Mo pan fuye hundred · of nobul frekes holde.

pe king pan for pat kas · was karful in hert,

& moche sorwe was sone · for pat siʒt maked.

but pan bad pe king bline · pe bodies take

of alle pe gomes of gode · & greiʒli hem bere
til pe tentis, til pei miʒt hane · tom hem to berie ;

& deliuerli in dede · was don al his hest.

pe king pan treuli · in pe batailes sturne

faire dede sette his folk · fast as he miʒt,

In as real aray · as rink schold Denise.

per were in eche bataile · of burnes tvo þousand,

armed at alle pointes · and auenantli horsed,

In eche eschel stifli set · per pei stonde schold.

now of williæm & his wijes · a-non wol i telle.
& softli Iced out of pe cite · whan pei seie time.
william went al bi-fore · as wis man & nobul,
& ordeyned anon his ost · in pe grete parties,
& sett of bolde burnes · in eche bataile seuen hundred,
of clene kniŷes armed · &oper kete burnes, 3793
& spak spakli þese wordes · þe spaynols whan he seie:—
“Lo, lordinges,” sede william · “wich a loueli siȝt
here bi-fore vs of our fon · of ferche men & bold! 3796
per is holli al here ost · now beth of hertes gode,
& we schul wel þis day · þis werre bring to ende
onliche ʒourh godes grace · & ʒour gode dede.
Þough þer be mani mo þan ʒe · dismaie ʒe nouȝt þerfore,
God wol vs ay rescue · & with þe riȝt stonde ; 3801
Go we to hem on godes name · with a god wille.
& i mow come bi þe king · bi cryst, as ich hope,
he schal sone þer-after · to his sone wende,
to soiorne in þe cite · þat he hap seged ʒore.
þer-for, frendes & felawes · for him þat ʒou bouȝt,
døþ ʒour dede to-day · as douȝti men schulle,
& gret worchip schul þe winne · whil þis world lasteþ.”
In þis wise william · his wijes þan cumforted, 3809
þat þei hent swiche herte · as hardi men schuld.
þan aswiȝe þei semblid · [eiper ost]3 to-gader,
& alle maner menstracie · maked was sone
of tabours & trumpes · non miȝt þe number telle.
& eiper ost as swiȝe · fast ascried ofer,
& a-semleden swiȝe sternli · eiper ost to-gader,
Gretand òiper grîmli · with scharpe grounde speres. 3816
Mani a bold burn · was sone brouȝt of dawe,
& many a stef stede · stiked þere to dethe,
no man vpon mold · miȝt ayme þe number
of wìȝes þat in a while · were slayn on bope side. 3820
but william as a wod man · was euer here & þere,
& leide on swiche liuere · leue me forsoþe,

1 MS. “ob.” 2 Sic. Read “þurh;” see note. 3 See l. 3815.
THE PROWESS OF MELIADUS THE SPANIARD.

pat his daïes were don · pat of him hent a dent, pe king of spaine & his kniîtes · so kenli hem bere, & so fresli gon fîste · pat at pe first a-saute, 3825 pat fele of williams frekes · gon to fle yerne. whan william was war · wîstli he hem a-schriæed, & cumfort hem craftli · with his kinde speche, 3828 pat pei tit azen turned · to telle pe sope, & bere hem wel better · pei pei bi-fore hade. 3829

pe king of spayne gan crie · keneli & schille, "war be he pat pe wolf · weldes in his scheld, 3832 pat hap murpered mi men · & swiche harm wrouȝt? Miȝt i now haue hap · him ones to sene, I wold him hunte as hard · as ener hounde in erthe honted eny werwolf · but wel he his ware 3836 pat i so many hondes · haue on him vn-coupled, pat he for alle his douȝti dedes · dar him nouȝt schewe. but what man vpoz molde · so may him me bring, I schal riuedli him rewarde · to be riche for ener, 3840 & mak him my chef stiward · to stiȝtli alle my godes." pean was þer a kud kniȝt · þe cunstables sone of spayne, come wel þe daïes bi-fore · þe king for to help. an .c. kene kniȝttes · in cunpanie he brouȝt, 3844 & him-self a bold burn · þe best of hem alle, & meliadus of miȝtli men · þe kniȝt was called. whan he pe kinges cry · clenli hadde herde, as blie with his burnes · he braide in-to presë, 3848 & denemed him douȝtili · with dentes ful1 rude. he slow of þe citezens · in a schort while, six grete lordes · and þe seuenþe nere. whan william was war · of his douȝti dedes, 3852 deliuerly as a douȝti man · he drow to him euen, Grimli eiper oþer gret · whan þei gonne mete, so spakli here spere · al on speldes went. & swiftli seþe with sweredes · swonge þei to-gider, 3856

1 Over j'æl (?) erased, full is written in a later hand.
WILLIAM ATTACKS AND SLAYS MELIADUS. 125

When William saw his blood so breme,
LIST as a lyoun • he leide on al a-boute,
& marked William • with mayn swiche a dint,
& his bold William • saw his blod so breme,
& wouned him wickedli • wittow forsope.

William, seeing his own blood, fights like a lion,
and ecleas
Meliadus through helm and head to the girdle.
The Spaniards are disheartened,
and turn to flight,
very hotly pursued

Whan pis tale was told • to pe king of spayne,
how pe miȝt mieliadus • for alle men was slawe,
& bi-held how his burnes • bi-gonne to fiene,
& how william & his wiȝtes • wiȝtli hem folwed,
& duelfulli druen don • to dethe pat pei of-toke,
also swipe for sorwe • he swonede for fere.
& when he wiȝtli a-wok • wodli he ferde,
al to-tare his a-tir • pat he to-tere miȝt,
& seide after anon • "alas! what to rede!
I se al mi folk fle • for [pat] frekes dedes ;
was neuer man vpon mold • pat swiche miȝt walt ;
It is sum deuel degised • pat dop al pis harm."
bi pat saw he william • winne him ful nere,
& slouȝ don in his sijt • his segges al a-boute,

1 MS. "orde." Read "orde."—M.
THE SPANIARDS FLEE IN DESPAIR.

& saw it geyned no grip · to go him no nere; 3892
as blieu with his baner · he gan awei flene.

whan williām was war · howe he a-wei went,
prestili de-parted he þat pres · & priked him after,
& ful titli him of-tok · & stoutli him aschried,
bad him zepli him zeld · or zerne he schul deie. 3896
whan þe [king]¹ saw him com · he sede to his kniþes,
"defende we vs douȝtili · or we deiþen sone;
þer gode non óper grip · it geineþ nouȝt to flene.
& more mensk it is · manliche to deie,
pan for to fle couwar[d]li ² · for ouȝt þat mai falle."
"certes, sire, þat [is]³ sop" · seide his men alle,
"þer-fore now in-deþe · do we what we mowwe."
pan turned þei titli aȝen · & trustili gon fiȝt,
but williām & his wiȝes · were so breme,
& so sturnli in þat stour · stered hem þat time,
þat þei hade in a while · a hundred i-slayne,
& taken of þe tidiest · mo þan ten schore.
þe king saw his segges · were slawe him bi-fore,
& non miȝt þe werwolf · conquere in no wise,
& whas duelfulli a-drad · lest he deie schuld,
& gan to fle fram þe ost · as hard as he miȝt ·
& hise men þat miȝt · manli gon to flene.
but williām perceyued · what pas þe king went,
& hastili hiȝed after · & him of-toke,
& keneli to him kried · "sire king, zeld þe swiȝe,
óper þi deth is i-diȝt · deliuerli riȝt here.
Meke to make a-mendis · for al þi mis-gilt
þatow hast reised in þis reaume · & riȝt long meyn-
tened,
& al wrongli wrouȝt · as wot al þis reaume." 3921

¹ Read "whan the king saw him com."—M.
² The spelling couwardli occurs in l. 3336.
³ Read "that is soth."—M.
⁴ MS "a." Read "as fersli."—M.
Po he seie no better · bote nede he most him 3eld,
or al swihe be slayn · pan sone he a-liæt,
& wiztli to william · his wepun vp to-3elde,
& forto wirche his wille · & wilned his mercy.
& william, as kinde kniæt · as kortesie it wold,
Godli graunted him griæp · & grucched no more,
but seide he schuld him meke · in merci to pe quene,
& profer him to prison · prestli at hire wille.
& gaf him to alle hire grace · & with-sede no worde.
as tit as pe king was take · to telle pe sope,
eche a seg of his side · sone gan with-drawe,
& faynest was eche a freke · pat fastest miæt hizé ·
& pus was pat ferli fiæt · finched pat time:
william went to pe cito · with his wizes bolde,
& pe king of spayne · in compaunye he ladde,
with alle pe munpe vpon mold · pat men miæt of here ·
& passeden to pe paleise · prestli alle same[n].
pe quen with hire compaunie · com him a-3ens,
& resseyued as reali · as swiche rinkes ouzt,
& pe king þepli dede · 3elde him to hire prison,
to wirche with him as sche wold · at hire onue wille ·
& treuli astit after him · tvu hundered & seuen,
pe realest rinkes of pe reaume · dede riæt pat ilke.
pe quene to william · wiztli wold haue kneled,
blæpe sche was þat bataile · was brouzt to a nende,
& þonked william þer-for · mani a þousan siæp ·
but william hent [hire]1 vp · & harde hire blamed,
& sede, “madame, þe misdon · bi marie in henen,
þat arn an emperours [douæter]2 · & a quen 3our-selue,
to swiche a simpul sowdiour · as icham, forto knele ·
þe don a gret deshonour · wip þat to 3ou-selue.”
“nai, sire,” sede pe quen · “so me crist help! ·
I sette 3ou for no soudiou · but for souerayn lord,
to lede al þis lordeischip · as 3ou likes ener ·

1 Read “hent hire vp.”—M.
2 Read “emperours douæter and a quen.”—M.
since, but for him, she would have been bare of all bliss.

[Fol. 63.]

Now to touche of pis tale  what tidde after.

alle pe lorde a-non vn-armed hem sone, & with pe worpi quen went in-to halle, 3964 & pe menskful meliors & pe quenes dou3ter. curtesli pe king of spayne bi-twene hem pei ladde, & here meke maydenes merili pat time laden pe oper lorde loueli hem bi-twene, 3968 & alle samen semeli pei seten in pe halle. pe quen set pe king curtesli bi here side, & william on pat oper half & with him his suster, & pe menskful meliors pat made moche ioie 3972 for pe loueli loos pat here lemman wanne; & alle pe lorde of pat lond in pe halle that were, & pe best burgeys & oper burns fele, & pe pers of spayne pat were to prison take. 3976 pe king bi-sou3t pe quene 3f it were hire wille, pat he most se his sone to solace him pe more, & sche ful godli granted & garnit him do fecche. & sopli, as sone he com pat king seide him tille, 3980 "lo! sone! witch sorwe we hane vs selue wrou3t, purs hare hautene hertes a gret harm we gete, to willne swiche willenyng pat wol nou3t a-sente. It is a bottes bale bi god pat me fourmed, 3984 t[o] willne after a wif pat is a waywarde euere." pan seide his sone "forsope sire, pe knowe, pat we haue wrongli wrou3t  nowe is it wel sene; we mot holde tooure harmes it helpes nou3t elles, but giue vs geynli in pe grace of pis gode lady, 3989 MS. "holdes." Read "holde." —M.
& late hire worche with vs * as hire god likes."

The king for his sones sawe * sore gan sike,
to pat comli quen * ful curtesli *us seide,
"Madame, for mari loue * pe milde quen of heuene,
Graunt me of your grace * 3if you god * pink,
3if your Egonyng counsayl * a-corde wol per tille.
let me make a-mendis * for al my mis-gelt,
et pat i so wrongli haue werred * & wasted your pondes.
as moche as any man * mow ordeyne bi ri3t,
I am redi to restore * & redeli, more-ouer,
al pe worcep pat i weld * i wol of you hold,
al pe pondes & ledes * pat long to my reaume ;
so dede i never til pis dai * but of god one.
& but your counseil, madame * a-corde wol per-tille,
wisses me at your owne wille * how pe wol me bindes,
& lelli i wol as you likes * youre lore fulfille ;
ferperfor mai [i] 1 nou3t profer * for nou3t pat bi-tides."

The king is grieved, and sighs,
[Pep. 63 b.] and begs the queen to allow him to make amends,
proposing to restore what is right,
and to hold his lands of her,
or offering to be bound in any way she liked,
The queen and her counsel take it all into consideration.
The werewolf enters the hall, goes up to the king of Spain, and kisses his feet ;
next he salutes the queen, and the rest, and goes his way,
Savage men who were there caught up weapons,
1 Read "mai i." — M.
WILLIAM SAYS NO ONE SHALL HARM THE WERWOLF.

summe axes, summe swerdes · some speres long, 4024
to wende him after · wiȝth to quelle.
but wan william þat wist · wodli he ferde,
& swor swiftli his [ope] 1 · bi al þat god wrouȝt,
þif any burn were so bold · þat best forto greue, 4028
were he kniȝt óper clerk · knaue óper kemepe,
he wold deliuerli him-self · do him to þe dethe,
þat no man vpon mold · schuld óper amendes ȝelde.
þer nas hastili in þat halle · non so hardi burn, 4032
þat durst folwe þat best · o fote for drede,
so þei were of william · wonderli a-dredde.
but whi þe werwolf so wrouȝt · wondred þei alle.
& whi more with 2 þe king · þan with any óper. 4036
& þe king more wondred · þan any whiȝt elles,
& strek in-to a studie · stifliche þer-fore,
what it bi-tokenep þat þe best · bowed so him tille,
& wrouȝt to him more worchipe · þan to any wiȝt elles.
In þat mene while þan · in his minde it com, 4041
& þouȝt on a semli sone · þat sum time he hadde,
& how him treuli hadde be told · to-fore a long time,
þat his wif with wichecraft · to a wolf him schaped.
but sche of þat sclaundre · excused hire al-gate, 4045
& seide þe child was in þe see · sunkun ful sore.
þe king in þat carful þouȝt · was cumbred ful long.
but william wiȝtli · as þe wolf was schaped, 4048
he dede kniȝtes to comaunde · to do crie in þe cite,
þat no burn nere so bold · as he nold be honged,
to waiete þe werwolf · no maner schaþe,
but late him late & erli · where him liked wende; 4052
þat best was wel hold · non so hardi was elles.

Karp we [now] 3 how þe king · was kast in gret þouȝt;
he dared as doted man · for þe bestes dedes,
& was so styf in a studie · þat non him stint miȝt. 4056

1 Read "his othe bi al."—M.
2 MS. "wiȝt."
3 Perhaps it should be, "Karpe we now how the king."—M.
whan william was war he went to him sone, seide, "king, i pe coniure in cristes holi name, & bi alle pe kud customes to kinghod pat longes, patau telle me tit treuli pat sope, 4060
3if pou knowest bi what cas in any-skines wise, whi pis buxum best bowed to pe more pan to alle pe wifes pat were in pe halle? It mai be in no maner me pinkel, bi pouqtes, 4064 patau wost in sum wise what it bi-tokenep. perfor tel me tit treuli whatow poutes, oper i make a vow to pe mi3ti king of heuen, pou passest nou3t of prison punished at pe hardest. pan siked pe king sore & seide pese wordes, 4069 "sire, for drede of duresse nor of deth in erpe, nel i wonde in no wise what i pou3t to seie. sire, sum time here-bi-for in my 3ong age, 4072 I wedded with al wele a worschipful lady, pat burde was of beuauete bri3test in erpe, & greter of alle godnesse pan any gome mai telle. pe kinges dou3ter of nauerne was pat gode burde, 4076 & in pat seson gete we samen to-gedere, on pe fairest freke pat euer seg on loked, but mi wif, as god wold & as we schul alle, deied at pe deliueranuce of mi dere sone. 4080 & i fostered pat child faire to pre winter, with alle clene keping as it ou3t to bene. bi pat time was pat barn ful breme of his age, & semliest on to se pat men schuld finde; 4084 alphouns his gode godfaderes dede him pan calle at kyrke for his kinde name to kipe pe sope. pan bitid pat time i toke a-noper wif, a ful loueli lady lettered at pe best, 4088 corteys & couenabul & lettered at pe best,2 & comen was of gret kin & koynt hire-selue. purth grace gat i on hire as god almi3ti wold,

1 See note.  2 This half line is repeated from above.
Our son was the prince who is here now.

[ Fol. 65.]

My wife feared that the elder son would succeed me as heir, and considered how to get rid of him.

She changed him by enchantments into a werwolf,

but she swore to me that he had been drowned.

I believed her, but I now think this werwolf is my son.

This is truly what I mused about, "

William says it seems to be the truth,

for the werwolf has a man's mind.

a sone as 3e now se ' be-for 3ou selue here, 4092

wich 3e han put in prison ' & punished at 3our wille.

pis child was ceput 1 elenli ' as it wel ouz, & it wax fetis & fair ' & ful mochel loued.

but 3an my wif wickedli ' on pise wise pouz, 4096

pat myn elder son ' min eritage schul haue, & kepe pe kingdom after me ' as kinde skil it wold ; & striued stifli with hire-self ' as stepmoderes wol alle, bi what wise sche mi3t best ' pat bold barn spille, 4100
to do so pat here sone ' after mi desese, M3te reioische pat reaume ' as ri3t eir bi kinde, & as me hap be told ' of trewe men of my reaume, with charmes & enchantmens ' sche chaunded2 my sone In-to a Wilde werwolf ; & wel now ich it leue, 4105
pat pis buxum best ' be pat ilk selue
pat my wif with hire wiles ' euer dede me leue, (whan i hire touched swiche tales ' as me told were),
pat it was fanteme & fals ' & for hate saide ; 4109

& swor grimli gret opes ' bi al pat god wrouz, pat mi semli sone ' was in pe see sonken, as he passed out to pleie ' priueli him one. 4112

I leued hire 3an lelly ' & lett it ouer-pase, but now witerli i wot ' pis werwolf is my sone, pa seche 3 after socour ' it semen bi his e dedus.
sire, sopli to seie ' pis was my grete pouz, 4116
for pe werwolf werkes ' so me wel time, & 3if i wrong seie any word ' wo worp me euer."

William3 3an ful wittili ' pese wordes saide, 4119

"sire, it may ri3t wel be pus ' be marie in heuene!
pat pe best seche 3 socour ' it semen att best.
for wel i wot witerli ' & wel i haue it founde, pat he has mannis munde ' more 3an we bope. 4123

1 Sic ; another spelling of "kepud."
2 Read "chaunged" (?) Cf. l. 4500.
3 The MS. has a large M instead of W.
for many \[a day\] \(^1\) hade i be ded \\
& to dust roted, \\
nadde it be goddes grace \\
& help of pat best; \\
he hap me socoured & serued \\
in ful gret nede, \\
for-\(\frac{p}{i}\) in feip, for al \(\frac{p}{e}\) world \\
\(\frac{h}{i}m\) nold i faile, \\
pat i schal loue him lelli \\
as my lege bro\(\frac{p}{e}\)r; \\
&\(\frac{s}{i}r\)e, bliepe ou\(\frac{3}{e}\)t \(\frac{p}{e}\) \[\frac{b}{e}\] \(^2\) \\
& bi him \(\frac{p}{a}t\) vs wrou\(\frac{3}{t}\)t! \\
\(\frac{p}{a}t\) he \(\frac{p}{u}\)s happili is here \\
\(\frac{p}{a}t\) hap so lang be missed. \\
& \(\frac{z}{i}f\) he mi\(\frac{3}{t}\) in maner \\
\(\frac{b}{e}\) made man a\(\frac{3}{e}\)eine, \\
of al \(\frac{p}{e}\) wel\(\frac{p}{e}\) of \(\frac{p}{e}\) world \\
\(\frac{w}{i}l\)ned i no more. \\
\(\frac{s}{e}\)rtenli, as it semep \\
to seie \(\frac{p}{e}\) trupe, \\
\(\frac{z}{i}f\) \(\frac{p}{i}\) wif of wicche\(\frac{c}{r}\)raft \\
\(\frac{b}{e}\) witti as \(\frac{p}{o}\) \(\frac{r}{e}\) seiest, \\
\(\frac{p}{a}t\) sche him wrou\(\frac{3}{t}\)t a werwolf \\
\(\frac{r}{i}t\) wel i hope, \\
sche can with hire connyng \\
\(\&\) hire queynt charmes, \\
Make him to man a-\(\frac{3}{e}\)en \\
it may be non o\(\frac{p}{e}\)r. \\
& per\(\frac{f}{o}\)re, sire, bi \(c\)rist \\
\(\frac{p}{a}t\) on croyce vs bou\(\frac{3}{t}\), \\
\(\frac{p}{o}\)u ne passest \(\frac{n}{e}\)uer of pr\(\frac{i}{o}\)\(n\) \\
\(\frac{n}{e}\) non of \[\frac{p}{i}\] \(\frac{3}{p}{u\(\frac{l}{p}\)}\) \\
with-oute deliuerau\(\frac{c}{n}\)ce \\
of \(\frac{p}{a}t\) derworpe best; \\
for made a-\(\frac{3}{e}\)en to man \\
\(\frac{m}{o}\)t he nede bene, \\
sende wittili to \(\frac{p}{i}\) wif \\
\& \(w\)arne hire fore, \\
\(\frac{p}{a}t\) sche tit come \(\frac{p}{e}\) to \\
\(\frac{f}{o}\)r \(\frac{p}{a}t\) may falle after, \\
\(\frac{p}{a}t\) sche ne lette for no l\(\frac{u}{u}\)d \\
\(\frac{p}{a}t\) linep in er\(\frac{p}{e}\). \\
& \(\frac{z}{i}f\) sche nickes wip nay \\
\& \(\frac{n}{e}\)l nou\(\frac{3}{t}\) com sone, \\
sende hire saddli to sai \\
\(\frac{p}{a}t\) sone with min ost, \\
I wol \(\frac{p}{a}t\) resume ouer-ride \\
\& rediliche destrue, \\
\(\&\) feche hire with \(\frac{f}{i}n\) forse \\
\(\frac{f}{o}\) ou\(\frac{3}{t}\)t \(\frac{p}{a}t\) bi-tides. \\
for til sche with hire craft \\
\(\frac{p}{e}\) werwolf haue \(\frac{h}{o}\)lpe, \\
alle \(\frac{p}{e}\) men vpon molde \\
\(\frac{m}{a}\)i make 3ou deliuered.” \(^4\) \\
\(\frac{b}{i}\) c\(\frac{r}{i}\)st,” sede \(\frac{p}{e}\) king \\
\(\frac{“p}{a}t\) on croyce was peyneyed, \\
\(\frac{p}{a}t\) \(\frac{p}{e}\) quen be of-sent \\
\(\frac{s}{a}\)f wol i fouche. \\
\(\frac{z}{i}f\) sche mi\(\frac{3}{t}\) in any maner \\
\(\frac{b}{e}\) make a-\(\frac{3}{e}\)en mi sone \\
to be a man as he was arst \\
\(\frac{w}{e}\)l were me \(\frac{p}{a}n\)ne, \\
but serte\(\frac{y}{u}n\)li i not \\
\(\frac{w}{h}\)am i sende mi\(\frac{3}{t}\), \\
to make \(\frac{p}{e}\) massager \\
\(\frac{m}{y}\)n erande wel to spede, \\
\(\frac{1}{1}\) Read “many a day hade i be ded.”—M. \\
\(\frac{z}{2}\) Read “ouzt ye be bi him.”—M. \\
\(\frac{3}{3}\) Read “of thi puple.”—M. \\
\(\frac{4}{4}\) mai seems required.

"He has often helped me." 
You ought to be blithe to find him again. 
(Fol. 65 b.)

If your wife is so witty in witchcraft, 
she can make him a man again. 
Wherefore, you shall never be released till he is made a man. 
Send and tell her to come here. 
If she will not, say I will fetch her forcibly." 
"She shall be sent for."

But I have no one to send but some of my lords,
A MESSAGE IS SENT TO THE QUEEN OF SPAIN.

but 3e wold suffer · summe of pise lordes, 
pat ben lederes of my lond · & lele men holde.
3if you likes, 3iue hem leue · & hete hem pider wende, 
I hope þei schul hastlier · þan any oper spede.” 4160
“pat i wol,” seide william · “ches wich þe likes, 
& hote hem hìge hastili · harde as þei mowe, 
& bring þe quen · for cas þat mai falle.”
ful spacli þe king of spayne · to spede þo nedes, 4164
as fast Ches him fifty · of ful grete lordes,
þat tidi men were told · & trewest of his reaume, 
& tid bi-tok hem þe letteres · þat told al here erand, 
& het hem munge bi mouþe · more, & þei couþe, 4168
whan þei come to þe quen · of þe cas bi-falle—
“ & seip hire þus sadli · sires, i 3ou praye, 
for what cas sche mot com · or bi crïst of heuene, 
sche get neuer gladnesse · of me, ne of mi sone. 4172
& seie hire soþli · þis selue encheson, 
for hire mi sone is founde · þat sche for 3ore saide 
was sonk in þe see · so dede sche me to leue ;
but as a wilde werwolf · he walkeþ here a-boute ; 4176
& how he souȝt after socour · Þe saw wel alle, 
per-fore treuli as it tid · telle here to þe hende, 
& bide hire blieue with hire bring · þat mai be is bote, 
to make him man æzen · miȝti as he was ere, 4180
oper al þat lond worþ lore · & our liues alse, 
per gop þon æzen-turm · Þe mowe hire treuli seie.”
þe menskful messangeres · mekeli þan seide, 4183
“we wol worche þour wille · as wel as we kunne.”
tid was hire told · tiding of here come, 4192
& sche gamsun & glad · goj hem a-3ens,
with loueliche ladies · fat longed to hire chaumbur,
& ojer menskful maidenes · mo pan foure schore,
& mekli whan pei were met · pe messageres pei greten
with elping & kessing · kindeli to-gadere. 4197
but sone fat comli quen · wel curtesli asked,
"how fares mi lord pe king · for cristes lone in heuen,
& mi semli sone · seppe pei out went? 4200
han pei wonne at here wille · pat pei went fore?
what dos mi lord wip pat lady · & here louelie douzter?
wol sche žit my sone hire wedde · & to wif hau?"
"Madame,“ saide pe messanger · most worti of alle,
"ofer-wise pan pe wene · is al pe werk turned, 4205
It helps no3t for to hele · no3t herkenes mi sawe.
sippe pe king of heuen · on croys for vs deide,
worse fel it neuer to wizes · Žan it hap a while. 4208
for alle pe real rinkes · of pis rerume be slayne,
& doluen depe vnder mold · mani day seppe.
pe stoute stiward of pis lord · & his strong neew,
& pe cunstabul sone · pat kui kui3t was proued, 4212
& out of number nobul men · to nempe pe sope.
Mi lord pe king was Žer caunt · in a kene stoure,
& your sone also · & are prisons bope,
& we alle, madame · & many mo of ojer 4216
of pe lordes of pis lord · pat zut al-liue bene,
& neuer-more for no man · mowe be deliuered,
ne pult out [of] 1 prison · but purli pourh your help.
& pe3h we hade pe quen · purth quenitse & strengpe
brou3t fersat swiche bale · with so breme a-sawtes, 4221
wasted hire londes · & wonne hire townes,
& pult al pertly to our wille · but palerne alone;
sertes, pei were a-seged · so pat atte laste 4224
Many times in pis maner · mercy sche crauau,
pat sche most wende a-wai · with hire douzter one,

1 Read "out of prison."—M.
boute daunger or duresse · or any despit elles, & late mi lord haue pat lond · at liking for euere; 4228
ac my lord in no wise · wold per-to graunte, & pat hap vs hard harmed · for hastili per-after
per kom a kniȝt hire to help · pe kuddest of pe worlde, & most miȝthi in armes · pat euere man of herde. 4232
he slow of oure segges · soþli alle pe best, & conquered with clene miȝt · pe king & his sone, & lelly many oþer lordes · pat zon a-lyue are.
& whan pei were in prison · pult at hire wille, 4236
per wan in a werwolf · a wonderli huge; with a komli kuntenaunce · to pe king he went, & fel dow payment to his fete · & faire he hem kessed, & wrouȝt him gret worship · & wizes pat it seiȝen 4240
saiden, it semed wel · as it socour souȝt; but panne as blithe pat best · busked on his weie.
& þan pat kud kniȝt · pat vs conquered alle
coniured mi lord þe king · bi al þat crist wrouȝt, 4244
þat he tyt schold him telle · treuli al þe soþe, 3if he wist in any wise · wat þat best were;
& he soþli þus sayde · schortly to telle, þat it was alphiouns his sone · anon rȝt he wist, 4248
þat þou with þi wiechecraft · a werwolf him hadest maked.
wherfore, menskful madame · bi marie in heuen,
we be made massegeres · to munge 3ou þis nedes,
þat neipær þi lord nor þi sone · nor non of vs alle 4252
worþ neuer deliuered of daunger · þat we dwellen inne,
til þou cum to þat kiȝ · & with þour queynt werkes
haue heled þe werwolf · wel at alle rȝtes,
& maked to man aȝe · in maner as he ouȝt. 4256
& ȝif þou grunte a-nþy grot · þus greiþli to worche,
alle þe men vpon molde · ne mowe it nouȝt lette,
þat þat ilke kud kniȝt · þat kepþp vs alle,
þel cum to þis kunte · with a clene strengeþe, 4260
& balfulli do pe brenne · in bitter fire,  
& ouer-ride pis reame & redili it destrye;  
&, wheper þou wolt or non · winne ¹ pe with strengþe,  
& seþen duelfulli to dethe · do vs alle after;  
& perþor do vs wite wistli · hou þou wirche þenkeste.”

as blieue as þis bold quen · þat braunden was hote,  
haide herd al holli · how þat hit ferde,  
sche swelt for sorwe · & swoned rit þere,  
& afterward wept · wonder was it none.

& to þe menskful messageres · mekli þenne sede,  
“now, sires, seþ þe it is so · what so bi-tyde,  
I wol wende þou with · & wel þou deliure,  
þurth help of þe heuene king · hastili & sone.”

þanne gart sche to greþ þe · gaili alle þinges,  
þat hem bi-houed on hond · to haue bi þe weye,  
& a real rouȝte · to ride bi hire side,  
of lordes & ladies · of al hire lond þe best.  
& sopli for soþþe ² · no seg vnder heuene

ne seiþe neuer no route · araïzed more beter,  
ne gaylier greþed · to go to þe soþe,  
of hors & of harneys · & alle oþer gere.  
þe quen hade hire with · al þat bi-houed,  
to warysche with þe werwolf · wel atte best.

Gaili were þei greþed · wel at te best,  
with here menskful meyne · sche mened on gate,  
& hized on here iurnes · fast as þei miȝt,  
til þei come to palerne · to proue þe soþe,  
william & hise wijes · were warned ³ of here come;  
with a real route · he rod hire a-zens,  
& worþili hire he welcombe · wen he hire mette,  
& hire cleme companye · curtlesi & faire;  
& presteli to þe paleys · with gret pres hem ladde.

They come to Palermo, where William meets them.

¹ MS. “wenne.”  — Read “winne.” — M.  See l. 3622.
² MS. “seþe.”  
³ MS. “warnes.”  — Read “warned.” — M.
SHE FINDS HER HUSBAND AND SON IN PRISON.

as also do the queen, the king, and the prince.

The queen of Spain is grieved to see them prisoners.

William helps Brauden to alight.

All are glad to see her.

She is led to hall, and seated at the dais.

She and the king and prince sit together,

and the queen of Palermo, the princess, and Mellor.

The hall is filled with barons and knights, and the Spanish lords.

There were spices and wines.

The werewolf had been kept in William’s chamber.

pe king of spayne with his sone & of per kni3tes gode, pat were in prison & presteli purther here dedes. hoppe murpke & mournyng at pat metynge was 4296

whan pe quen of spayne saw hire lord in hold, & hire semli sone & sepe alle pe oper of grete lordes of hire lond it liked hire ille. pe comly quen of pat lond williams owne moder, 4300

with welpe & gret worship welkomed hem alle, & william curtesli caust pe quen of hire palfray, & his menskful moder ful mekli hire kessed, & hire lord & hire sone swetly per-after. 4304

hire lord pe king of hire kome was comforted michel, & hire sone als & sepen alle oper of pe lordes of pat lond pat pere leie in hold, for pei hopeneden in hast to haue help per-after. 4308

william & his menskful moder mekli & faire ful loueli pe quen of spayne led hem bi-twene, & hendeli in-to halle panne hire pei brouzt, & derli on pe heije des pei a-doun seten. 4312

pe king of spayne & his wif seten to-gader, & here sone hem bi-side samen to talke, to make hem in pe mene while as murye as pei coupe. pe quen of palerne & hire dougter pat damysele hende, & pe menskful meliors were macched to-gadere, 4317

to haue same here solas & seie what hem liked. sepen al pat huge halle was hastili fulfilled al a-boute bi eche side with baroumes & kni3tes, 4320 pe real rinke of pe reaume ri3t on pat o side. sopli pe segges of spayne were set on pat oper, so pat perles paleis with peple was fulfilled. pann were spacli spices spended al a-boute, 4324

fulsumli at pe ful to eche freke per-inne, & pe wines per-with wich hem best liked.

And as pei mad hem so mirie to minge pe sope,

pe werwolf pat 3e witen of was in williams chamber, 4328
& hade be þere in blis · bi niȝtes and daies,
seþen þe messangeres meuede · after þe quene,
þat was his sterne stepmoder · til þat stounde þanne.
but wel wist þe wolf · whanne sche was come,
& hastili in-to halle · he higed him þat time,
to do [hire] to þe deþe · deluerli ȝif he miȝt,
so wroþ 1 he was hire with · wite þe him neuer.
as bluie as þe best · was broken in-to halle,
a pase bi-fore al þe puple · he passeþ him euene,
& droþ him toward þe des · but doutusli after
he stared on his stepmoder · stifli a while,
whan he saw [hire] with his sire · sitte in murþe.
ful wroþ þan þat werwolf · wax of þat siȝt,
& bremly his bristleþ · he gan þo a-reise,
& grisiliche gapande · with a grym noyse,
he quête toward þe quene · to quelle hire as bluie.
& assone as þe quene · saw him so come,
sche wax neiȝ of hire witt · witow forsopþe,
& carfulli to þe king · criande, sche saide,
“a! leue lordes, mi lif · lengþep ȝut a while!“ 
socoures me nouþþe · or ful sone i deîge,
for þis ilk brende best · bale wol me wirche,
ac i wite him no wrong · witeþ wel alle.
I haue serued þe deþ · ȝif you dere pinkes,
lengþep now my lif · for loue of heuene king,
& meke me in your mercy · i may do nouȝt elles.”
þe king of spayne stifli · stert vp sone,
& his sone al-so · to saue þe quene.

William ful wizþli · þe werwolf þan hent
anon in his armes · aboute þe necke,
& sayde to him soberli · “mi swete dere best,
trust to me as treuli · as to þin owne broþer,
or as feiþli as falles · þe fader to þe sone,
& meke þe of þi malencoli · for marring of þi-selue.
I sent after hire for þi sake · sopli, þou trouwe,

1 MS. “worþ.” Read “wroþ.”—M. See li. 3221, 4341

Knowing the queen was come, [Fol. 68 b.] he hoped to kill her,
and advances to the daies, staring at her.
Raising his bristles and roaring, he rushes at her.
In great fear, she cries out for help,
confessing she has deserved death, but begging for her life.
William catches the werwolf by the neck, and says,
“Trust me, dear beast,
I sent for her for thy sake.
to help pe of pi hole · hastili, 3if sche misht. 4364
& sche has brouȝt now pi bote · bi crīst, as i hope,
& but sche haue, be riȝt siker · be god pat vs wrouȝt,
to cold coles sche schal be brent · ȝit or come eue ;
& pe aschis of hire body · with pe wind weue, 4368
& pi sire & his sone · & alle is segges noble
schul be put in prison · & peyne for euer,
dulfulli here lif daies · til deth haue hem take.
for pi lete me allone · mi ȝef swete frende, 4372
anoie pe na more · ne nede schaft pou haue,
ne to hire do no duresse · as pou me derli louest."

The werwolf is
glad, and kisses
William's feet.

be werwolf was ful glad · of william's speche,
pat bi-het him in hast · to haue help after, 4376
& faire doun to his fetes · fel hem to kisse,
& as he coude, be contenaunce · ful kindeli graunted,
In alle wise to worche 1 · as william wold seie,
& made no more debat · in no maner wice. 4380
as sone as pe quen · saw how it ferde,
pat pe werwolf wold · worche hire no schape,
sche was gretli glad · & oft god ponkes,
& pertili bi-fore alle pe puple · passed him tille, 4384
& bluie bi-fore pe best · on bope knes hire sette,
& mekli in pis maner · mercy sche craued.
“swete alphouns,” sche seide · “mi semli lorde,
I haue brouȝt here pi bote · to bring pe of sorwe ;
sone schal pe puple se · pi semli face,
In manhede & in minde · as it out to bene.
I haue pe gretli a-gelt · to god ich am a-knowe,
for redili pe to reue · pi riȝt eritage ;
pat pis man min owne sone · miȝt it haue hadde
feiȝli after pi fader · ich forschop pe panne
In pis wise to a werwolf · and wend pe to spille ;
but god wold nouȝt · pat pou were lorne, 4396
for-ȝi of mi mis-gelt · mercy ich craue,
1 MS. “worthe.”
And the other lords to
Spare my life, and I will never harm you more."

She further begs William to intercede for her,
and begs the other lords to do the same.

There was much weeping and woe.

William forgives her if she will heal the beast.

She at once goes with the werewolf into a private chamber,
draws forth a magic ring, with a stone in it that was proof against all witchcraft.

She binds it with a red silk thread

ne wrongli schuld he wiuue · pat it in wold hadde.
pat riche ring ful redily · with a red silk prede

\[1\] MS. “persche.” Read “perische.”—M.
round the wolf's neck.  
She takes a book out of a casket, and reads in it a long time, till he becomes a man again.

[Fol. 70.]  
William only was fairer.

The werewolf is very glad,

but is ashamed of being naked.

She tells him he need not be so, for they are alone.

He must now go to the bath.

Alphonse goes to the bath, finding it "tidily warm."

The queen serves him.

She asks him who shall give him his clothes?

He says he will take his attire and the order of

\[ pe quen bond als blie · a-boute pe wolwes necke. \]
\[ se pe feipli of a forcer · a fair bok sche raught, \]
\[ & radde pe-ron redli · rizt a long while, \]
\[ so pat sche made him to man · in pat mene while, \]
\[ as fair as fetys · and als freli schapen, \]
\[ as any man vpoun mold · mizt on denne. \]

was non fairre in world · but william allone, for he of fairnesse was flour · of frekes pat liue.

whan pe werewolf wist · pat he was man bi-come, fair of alle fasoun · as him fel to bene, he was gretli glad · no gum purt him blame, ful wel him liked pe lessun · pat pe lady radde.

so pli pat he was so naked · sore he was a-schamed, whan pe quen pat of-sey · some sche seide him tille, "a! alpouns, lene lord · lat be alle po pouges, i se wel pou art a-schamed · & so were it no nede ; ne buñ here in pis bour · but our selue tweyne. & on pe, sire, se i no s iz · but as it schuld bene, ne pe failep no p i ng · pat failep a man to haue.

fare now forp to bi bap · pat faire is keuered, for it is geinli greipd · in a god asise."

& alpouns anon panne · after hire sawe, buskes in to pe bap · bouté more noyse, & fond it treuli a-tired · & tidili warme.

pe quen him comforted · & curtesli him serued as mekkeli as sche mizt · in alle maner wise ; for no burn nas hem bi · but hem-self tweyne.

\[ pan pe curtes quen · ful cunyngli saide, "swete sire, saie me now · so zou crist help, what gon wol 3e pat zou giue · zour garnemen noupe? 3e ne tok neuer as i trowe · of kniȝthod pe hordere. 4461 for-pi pow telle me of whom · 3e take it þenk, for wel 3e wite [what] whiz · worpiest is here." 4464 \]

"Madame," pan seide alpouns · "be marie in heuen, I wol take myn a-tir · & pat trie ordere." 4465
of þe worþiest weȝ · þat weldes now lye.
"hoo is þat," seide þe quen · "is it þour fader?"
"Nay, bi god," quath alþuȝus · "þat gart me be fourmed,
It is þat ilk kud kniȝt · þat þe alle knowe,
þat deliuered þe of þe deth · þis day of mi-seþue.
a worþier weȝþ in þis world · wone þon nouþe, king ne kniȝt as of kin · ne of kud dedes.
Mi tir of him wol ich take · and þat trie order, & loue him as mi lege lord · al mi lif time."
þe quen after willIAM · went in-to halle, & tok him slizli bi þe sleue · & saide in his ere, "sire, þif þi wille were · þe werwolf þe bi-secheþ, þat tow tit com him to · to tyle him in his wedes; he ne wol þat non oþer · þat worcheþ him þeue."
"is þat sooþ," saide willIAM · "mi swete lady hende? cleymeþ he after cloþes · for cristes loue in heuen? deceþue me nouþ with þi dedes · but seie me þe sooþ." "þis, bi eriȝt," quath þe quen · "cloþes he askeþ; he is as hol, heriȝed be god · as he was euer zyte, & manliche in alle maneres · as to man falles; hþþe him hastili him to · & help he were greiþed; for i wot þat þis folk · fayn wold him sene."
but he wol þat no wiȝt · to chaumber with þe come, but meliors þi menskful make · & þe quenes douȝter, Dame florence þe faire · for whom was þis werre, hem boþe he biddeþ bring · & no wiȝt elles."
þan willIAM ful wiȝtiþ · as man ful of ioye, clipte þe quen & keȝt · & oft crist þonkes, þat his felawe was hol · þat hade him holp oft. as blueþ was him brouȝt · al þat bi-houed of alle comli cloþing · þat a kniȝt schuld haue; no man vpon mold · miȝt richer dene.þan willIAM wiȝtiþ · with meliors & his suster, & þe comli quene · spacli forþ þei went in-to þe chois chaumber · þer chaunged was þe best

143

knighthood from the worthiest man alive,

viz. William, who shall be his liege lord. [Fol. 79 b.]

The queen tells William the werewolf wishes him to clothe him.

"Is it true," he says, "that he asks for clothes?"

"Yes," says she, "he is as whole as ever.

He will have no one but you and Melior and the princess Florence."

William kisses the queen for making his fellow whole.

William, Melior, &c., go to the chamber,
WILLIAM AND OTHERS GO TO SEE HIM.

"Sir knight, you give me a poor welcome."  

"True," said William, "but I conjure you to say who you are."

"I am the werwolf, who have saved you from many perils."

William embraces him with great joy.

"Sir knight, you give me a poor welcome."

"True," said William, "but I conjure you to say who you are."

"I am the werwolf, who have saved you from many perils."

William embraces him with great joy.

and see a bath and a bed, with a man in it whom they knew not.

Yet they greet him, and Alphonse answers,

"Sir knight, you give me a poor welcome."

"True," said William, "but I conjure you to say who you are."

"I am the werwolf, who have saved you from many perils."

William embraces him with great joy.

out of the werwolfs wise to a worp kniȝt.  

Pan bi-held pe be baȝ & a bed bi-side, & in þat bed als blīue þat burn þei seien, þat non so semli to here sīȝt saw þei neuer ere; but of þat companie, be crīst þer ne knew him none. 

napes williȝam wiȝtli worpili him grette, & þo menskful maideṇes mekli þer-after, & þan alþhouȝs a-non: answered & saide, "crīst krouned king: sīre kniȝt, mot þou saue, & þi faire felachipe þat folweþ þe after.  

sīre kniȝt, i am in þi kip & comen to þi owne, & þow makes me now: but þis mene semblant. 

to put þe of peril: i haue ney perisched oft, & many a sarp schour: for þi sake poled, to lītel þow me knowest or kinhed me kipes."  

"sertes, sīre, þat is sop" seide williȝam þanne, "I ne wot in þis world: what þat þe are; but i coniure you, be crīst: þat on croyce was peyneþ, þat þe seie me swīpe sop: ho-sø þe bene."  

"I am he, þe werwolþ" sede alþhouȝs þanne, "þat haue suffred for þi sake: many sori peyneþ, & pult þe out of periles: þer þou perisched: schuldest, nae goddes grete miȝt be: & mi gode help."  

"certes, sīre, þat is sop" sede williȝam þanne, & lepes liȝtli him to: & lacchis him in armes; with clipping & kesseng: þei kidden gret ioye. 

alle þe men vpon mold: ne miȝt half telle þe mirþ þat was maked: in þe mene while.  

& zif williȝam was glad: wittow forsoþpe, Maliors was moche more: zif it so miȝt bene; & florence of þat fare: þanne gret ferhi hadde. 

& sone as sche him saw: loueli sche him grett, & he godli a-gayan: gret þat gode mayde, & for þe beaute þat sche bar: as blīue his hert turned to hire treuli: to loue for euer-more.

¹ Read "perische" (?)
whan pei in that gladnesse: a gret while hade sete,
alphonse asked a-non a-tir for to haue,
to fare out as fast with his fader to speke,
& with lordesse of pat lond: pat him long hade missed.
& william wistli: with-oute any more,
Greiphe him as gaili: as any gom bert bene,
of alle trie a-tir: pat to kniȝt longed,
so pat non mit: a-mend: a mite worp, i wene.
& whan pei were at will: as pei wold be greiphe,
eche on hent oper bi pe hand: hendli & faire,
& hastili in-to pe heize halle: hizeden in-fere.
whan pe pervles puple: perceyueden hem come.
Many a lord ful loueli: lep hem aȝens,
as þo pat were geinli glad: on pat gom to loke.
Gret marþpe at pat metyng: was mad, be ȝou sure.
þe king of Spain forsope: knew his sone sone,
& gret him first as a glad man & oft god þonkes.
þat he so faire hade founde: his formest sone.
seþen þe lordes of londe: loueli him gretten,
& his bold broþer: be-foure alle oper;
sane pe king him-self: semliest he him gret,
& most ioye for pat metyng: made þat time.
no tong mit: telle: treuli þe soþe,
þe ioye þat was wrouȝt: with lasse & with more.
þe comli quen of palerne: oft crist þonked,
þat hade hire sent of his sond: so moche ioye to haue,
& hade seteled hire sorwe: so sone, þat was huge.
sone þe semli segges: were sette in halle;
þe real rinkes bi reson: at þe heize dese,
& alle oper: afterward: on þe side benche,
& sete so in solas: sadli ful þe halle,
eche dingneli at his degre: to deme þe soþe.
whan þe noyse was slaked: of þe semli burnes,
þe king of spayne spak: to alphonse his sone,

Then Alphonse asks for his clothes, to go and see his father.
William attires him as a knight.

| 1 MS. “a-mand.” | Read “amend.”—M. |
| 2 MS. “whan.” | Read “hem.”—M. |
Alphonse asks what caused the war.

Alphonse inquires what caused the war. The king says, "I desired this damsel for thy brother's wife. Her mother would not grant it, and I wasted their lands." But this bold knight made us prisoners."

Alphonse answers, "You did wrong, and can only blame yourself."

But I hope all can be made to end well."

1 Read "wrongli."—M.

2 MS. "he." Read "ye."—M.
Alphonse reveals William's parentage.

al pis bale schal be brouȝt to bote at þe last."
to þe quen of palerne: Alphonse þis saide,
"a! menskful madame: mekes alle your peple,
þat non spend no speche til i speke hane."
þan was silens mad to seie al þe sope,
"ladis & ðoper lords: lesteneþ now my sawe!
þis ȝe witeþ wel alle: with-oute any fabul,
þat þis lond hade be lore: at þe last ende,
3if þis werres hade lasted: any while here.
but god you sent swiche grace: of his grete mijt,
þat þis kud kniȝt: with his clene strengþe
hap i-bet al ȝoure bale: & brouȝt to ȝour wille
alle ȝour fon þat: with fors defoyled ȝou long.
3it wot non wiseli: wennenþe he come,
ne what weȝ he is: but wite schal ȝe sone.
3if þat burn wel him bar: i blame him but hitel;
for mater i-now hap eche man: to mene þe sope,
his moder þat is: in meschef: to meyntene & help;
& schal come him bi kinde: 3if he crist lone." 4620
"what bi-tokenep þis tale: telleþ, i be-seche,
whi seie ȝe so?" seide þe quene þanne.
"sertes, madame," seid Alphonse: "sophi me lene.
þis comli kniȝt is ȝi sone: bi crist þat me wrouȝt;
þou bar him of þi bodi: king Ebrouns was his fader.
al þis lordship of þis lond: is lelli his owne.
& i am þe werwolf: wite ȝe for sope,
þat bi-fore his fader: ful ȝore i ȝou bi-reft.
& passed with him mi weie: prestli fro ȝou alle.
þe king: & hisne kniȝtes: with kries ful huge,
þei sewed riȝt: þe see: to sle me 3if þei miȝt.
but bluie boute bot: þe brode water i passed,
boute hurt one harm: heriȝed be goddes grace,
þat so sauf sent me owr: wip þi sone sounde.
& gode ladi, 3if þe like: loun me neuer þe worse,
þat i þe barn away bar: to blame had i be elle[s].
for i wist ful wel: wat wo him was toward
WHY THE WERWOLF STOLE WILLIAM AWAY.

ne had i so do, he hade be ded · many a day passed.
pe king ebrouns brother · be-pouzt pis oft,
if1 pis ilk bold kniʒt · had be brouȝt out of line, 4640
he schold have entred as eyr · pis eritage to hold,
after pe kinges day · bi dessent of blode.
& sone as a schrewne schuld · pe schrewedest he pouzt;
he coynted him queyntli · with po tvо ladies, 4644
pat hade pat time pi sone · to kepe in warde,
& meded hem so moche · wip alle maner þinges,
& bi-het hem wel more · þan i zou telle kan,
Gret lordchip of londes · & liking at wille, 4648
so þat pei him bi-hiʒt · bi a schort terme,
þat pei þuiel þold enpoysoun · þe king & his sone,
to haue do kroumed him king · to kepe þat reaume.
but whan i knew al here cast · of here wic wille, 4652
I ne miʒt it suffer · for sorwe & for reupe,
þat here wicked wille · in þise wise ended.
& perfor i him tok · now haue i told pe sope,
& haue him holp herto · wanné he hade nede, 4656
as moche as i miʒt · in eny maner wise :
& hider i brouȝt him, be zou siker · zou bales for to
amende.
haue him now bi þe hand · i zeld him here to þe.”

Whan 2 þe comli quen · þat carping hade herde, 4660
& saw þat was hire sone · sopli i-proued,
per nys man vpou mold · miʒt telle þe ioye
þat was mad hem bi-twene · in þe mene wh[i]le,
betwene þe dame & þe douȝter · & hire dere sone, 4664
with clipping & kesseng · & oþer kinde dede.
& zif any miʒt be most · meliors was gladdest,
þat hire loueliche lemmman · was lord of þat reaume,
bi kinde as kinges sone · & god kniʒt him-selue. 4668

MS. “Of.” Perhaps we should substitute if.—M.
2 MS. “Mhan.” The rubricator has here and elsewhere made a mistake, and inserted a capital M for a W.—M.
Alphonse Tells the Whole Story.

swiche murthe as was mad • at pat metyng þanne,
& þat of al þat puple • þat in þe paleys were,
tonge mjit non telle • þe tenpe  

& anon, after þat • alþoons þanne hem tolde, 4672 [Fol. 73 b.]
Alphonse recounts all the details—

alle þe happes þat he hadde • al holly to þe hende,
from þat time þat he tok • þe child fro his fremdes.
how þe fader folwed • fayne him toquelle;
& how he bar forþ þe barn • ouer þe brode water; 4676
& seþen how he souȝt forþ • bi selcoup weizes,
bering euer þat barn • þe niȝtes and daie,
til he com bi a forest • seuen mile fro rome;
& how þe cou-herde com him to • & kept þe child
after;

how þei went a-wai • in wite beres skinnes; 4688
“per-after, sire, þe saued • forsoþe as þow knowest,
whanne alle þe puple þrestili • pursewed after,
to haue do þe to deþe • þi dere make.
& at boneuene þi þe brouȝt • fram þe breme quarrer,
whan al þe cuntre was umbe-cast • with clene þen of
armes,
to haue þe take þer tit • & to dethe hampred;
I tok here souerayne sone • so saued i þe þere.”

seþen he told hou he dede • here hides þan chainge,
& dede hem haue hertes skinnes • to hiden in hem
boþe.

“seþen at a wide water • i wan þou ouer boþe,
a tokene þit of þat time • telle i mai þi burde.

1 MS. “tonþe.” See l. 1715.
and how the barge-boy hit Mellor with an ear.

William was very glad at finding he was King Ebrouns' son. [P. 74.]

He embraces and kisses Alphonse, saying,

"May God require thee!"

For I know not how to require thee the tenth part.

All I can do shall be done soon, to make all thine.

Thy loves and hates shall be mine.

All that thou hast said is wholly true."

"You can easily require me," said Alphonse.

"In what way?" answered William.

W. When William had herd · holli his wordes, 

he was gretli glad · no gom þurt him wite, 

þat al þe puple in þe place · a-perltli knewen 

þat he was kindeli · king ebrouns sone.

Þan laust he alpheouns anon · loueli ða armes, 

& clipped him & kessed · & kindeli sayde, 

"a ! faire frend alpheouns · ioye þe bi-tide, 

& god for his grete miȝt · þi godnessse þe zelde, 

& þi tenful traayles · þow hast for me suffred, 

& for my loueli lemmen · lord it þe quite! 

for i ne wot in þis world · what wise i miȝt 

quite þe þe tenpedel · in al mi lif time. 

but þer nis god vnder god · þat i may gete euere, 

þat it [ne] schal redeli be þiu · at þiu owne wille;¹ 

ne no dede þat i may do · þat ne schal be do sone, 

& loue lelli what þou louest · al mi lif dawes, 

& hate heijeli in hert · þat þou hate þenkest, 

so þat my hert holli · schal hold him at þi wille. 

& þerto heijeliehe am i hold · for holli i knowe 

þat alle þe sawes be sop · þat þou saidest ere; 

sadde sorwes for mi sake · suffred astow manye." ¹ 4724 

"serTes, sire, þat is sop" · seide alpheouns þonne, 

"Me þinkeþ þe miȝt be hold · to quite me mi mede; 

& so i desire þat þou [do]² · zif þou dere þinkes. 

"3a! wold god," seide william · "þat i wist nouþe 

In what maner þat i miȝt · mest with þe plece, 

or þat i walt worldes god · þat þou woldest þerne." 

"þis, sire," seide alpheouns · "so me crist help,

¹ Here follow two lines (out of place) which occur again below. See li. 4722, 4723, and the note.

² Or insert "wole," as Sir F. Madden suggests.
"All I ask for is thy sister to lowe."

"Yes indeed; I ask for no reward but that."

"I will grant you half my kingdom—anything but Melior." [Fol. 74 b.]

"That were well indeed, if thou canst marry so low."

"Yes indeed; I ask for no reward but that."

"All I ask for is thy sister to vife."

"There is no benefit I so long for as one thing;"

"I kepe nouȝt of jji kingdom be crist pat me woldest haue, but meliors alone."

"I ask for no ping but pi suster to be samen wedded, to weld here as my wif al my lif tyme."

"I kepe nouȝt of pi kingdom be crist pat me bouȝt, ne of pi louni lemmam lelly but in gode."

"I ne wilne no-ping but pi suster to be samen wedded, to weld here as my wif al my lif tyme."

"I ne bidde nouȝt a bene worp but pat burde one."

"Nay, I ask but that lady only."
GLORIANDE AND ACELONE ARE PENITENT.

& pe comli quen · ful oft crist ponked, 
pat hade so wiȝli of hire wo · so wel hire comforted. 
tid were pe tidinges told · wide where a-boute 
of pat ferli pat was fallen pere · fast pan per-after, 4764
Gret puple drow to palern · to proue pe sope, 
to loke on pe lordes · in liking at wille.

and the tidings of 
it were soon 
spread every-
where.

As soon as it was 
known that the 
two ladies would 
have betrayed 
William,

Now forto munge forþer · as pe mater falles.

whan pise [tidinges]¹ were told · to lasse & to 
more,

pat þo tvo trattles þat william · wold haue trysted, 
þo ladyes þat had him to loke · & leren in ȝoupe, 
þei wisten witterly þanne · with-oute any lette, 
þat þei schuld be do to deþe · deulfulli in hast, 4772
brent in briȝt fur · to-drawe, or an-honged, 
as pilk þat [were]² worþi · for þere wicked dedes—
Gloriauns & achillones · þo tvo ladyes hijten—
bluþ þei hem bi-pout · what bote mijȝt hem help, 4776
seþe here treson was kud · & knewe al a-boute, 
hastili þei hent hem on · heigresse ful rowe 
ext here bare bodi · & bare fot þei went, 
& faire bi-fore william · þei felle on knes boþe, 4780
& goue hem in his grace · for þat grete gilt, 
& knoulecheden al þe cas · how þei cast hadde, 
to haue sotliche sleyn · him-self & his fader, 
bi hest of þe kinges broþer · þat bale to haue wrouȝt.

"we bey for oure 
lives,

and put them-
selves in 
William's grace.

we meke vs in ȝoure merci · at alle maner poyntes, 
to sle vs or to saue · wheþer ȝou god likes.

pat we ar worþi to þe deth · wel we be a-knowe, 4788
but wold þe graunte vs ȝou grace · for goddes lone of 
heuen,

to put vs to sum place · penance to wirche, 
& late vs haue þe lif · whil our lord wold,

¹ This word is surely wanted; cf. l. 4763.
² Read "that was worthy," or "were worthy." M.
William's message to the emperor of home.

153

Pat we miȝt a-mende • sum of our mis-gilt,
& for your fa[l]e r[e] & for you • feȝtli to preie.
3if ȝe worche so • worchipo miȝt ȝe gete,
& dere lord, of pe deth • may no god deede falle,
but a litel wicked wille • þer-with wold be slaked."
al þe barnage as blieu • baden for hem þerne,

Pat þei most in alle maner • þat trespas amende,
& william þan wiȝtli • here wille hap graunted,
so þat þei wrouȝt in þat wise • & wold be gode after.
sone were þe ladies • to an hermitage brouȝt,
& liueden þere in god lif • wil our lord wold,
In penauȝe & in prayeres • prueli & loude,
til þei went of þis world • whan god wold hem fecche.
now lete i here of þe ladies • & lestene þ a-noþer,
what bi-tidde of þis tale • as þis store telleþ.

William þan with-oute more • wiȝtli þer-after,
made him menskful messageres • to mene þe soþe,
þe grettest lordes of þat land • þat lelest were hold,
& konyngest of kurtesie • & kowden fairest speke,
to þemperour of rome • redeli he hem sent,
& with loueli letteres • lelli him biþouȝt.
3if þat is wille • with-oute any lette,
to be þere with his best burnes • bi a certayne time,
to mensk þe mariȝe • of melors his douȝter.
and ȝif alisauȝdrine • were þanne aliȝe,
þat seche most with him come • curtesi he prayde.
þan were þe messangeres • in alle maner wise
so trielich a-tired • to telle þe soþe,
of hors & of harneys • & [what] 2 hem most neded,
þat no wieȝh of þis world • purt wille beter ;
& went forþ on here way • wiȝtliy and fast,
til þei redli hade raȝt • to grete rome euene.

whan þe bold barounes • be-fore þemperour come, 4824

1 Read "fadre."—M.  2 See line 4187.
ful godli þei him greþ · gladli, as þei ouȝt,
first in alþouns half · þat king was of spayne,
for þempour & he · hadde be felawes sore,
seþen in worþi williams · þat king was of poyle, 4828
& souerayn of cisyle · as schold a king bene.
& seþen in meliors name · þat was hise mery douȝter.
& in þe kinges half of poyle · praiede him fayre,
to be at palerne with his puple · presteli & sone, 4832
bi a certeyn day · þat set was sone after,
to menske þe mariage · of meliors his douȝter,
for to wiue he wold here take · þat welt þat reaûme.
whanne þe messagers hade munged · of meliors þe schene, 4836

The emperor asks where his daughter is.

Gretteliche was he gladed · & gan for to seie,
"lordinges, for þour leute · lelli me telles,
þif þe wite in any wise · were be þat burde?"
"Marie, sire," sede þe messageres · "þe movye vs wel trowe,
þe milde maybe meliors · in palerne now dwelles;
Loo here hire owne letteres · to leue it þe beter."
þe king komaundéd a clerk · keneli & swiþe
to loke on þo letteres · and lelli hem rede, 4844
þat he miȝt wizþi wite · what þat þei mened.
þe clerk þazne deliuerli · vndede þo letteres,
& fond as þe messageres · hade munged be-fore,
how þe king of poyle · prestli hadeordeyned, 4848
at swich a certayn day · his semliche douȝter wedde.

Then the emperor knew it was all true,

Then the emperor knew it was all true,

Then the emperor knew it was all true,

and summons his lords to go with him to the wedding.
& certes on pe selue day • pat hem was a-signed,
so riche a route in rome • was rialiche a-sembled,
pat neuer seg vnder sunne • ne saw swiche a-noper,
so trijliche a-tired • of al pat to hem louned;
& went wiȝtli here [way] • wen pei were sare,
& alismaundrine with hem • as i arst munged.
& wending as pei were • in here way pat time,
of pe menskful messageres • emperour paune asked,
bis what his douȝter • was fare to pat londe,
& how kendeli sche was knowe • pat king wold hire
wedde.

& pei titli him told • al pe trewe sope,
of alle fortune pat was falle • from comsing to pende,
In alle maner as i munged • in mater here bi-fore.
& whanne emperour hade herd • how [pat] hit ferde,
he was gretteli gladed • and oft crist ãonked
of pe fortune bi-falle • of so faire an hende,
& munged paune al pe mater • to his meyne sone,
as po menskful messagers • hade munged be-fore.
pe marpe pat paune was maked • miȝt no tonge telle,
at tit was mad for po tiding • whan pei told were.
& so pan held pei here way • harde & faste,
til pei to palerne prestili • with al pat pres come.

William 2 paune ful wiȝtli • with a faire puple
of crowned kinges • & kniȝtes many hundred,
went a-zen emperour • with wel glade chere.
a gay greting was per gret • wan pei to-gedir met.
william & emperour • went alder-formest,
& alphouns next after • & auenauntli him grette,
with alle pe marpe von mold • pat men miȝt devise.
pe king of spayne spacl • spedde him next after,
for emperour & he bi-fore • felawes hadde bene.

1 Read **here way wen they were zare.**—M. See ll. 4864, 4878.
2 The capital W is mis-written M. See l. 4923.
& kindli kessed eiper oper · when pei kome to-gadere.  
pe murpe pat was mad · at pat metying pannne,  
ne may no tong telle · treuli pe sope.  
sepen went pei alle same · swetli to-gadere 4892  
to pe perles paleys · and prestili pat time,  
with a clene companye pe quen · com hem a-zen,  
pat lady was of pat lond · & ledde in here hondes  
pe menskful maybe meliors · & here oune douzter;  
& hem sewep a selcoupe route · of semli ladies;  
4897  
pe quen of spayne spacli · pan spedde fast after,  
a mery meting was per mett · when pei neized same,  
with clipping & kessing · and contenaunce heude.  
4900  
but sopli whan pepermour sey · his semli douzter;  
a glader gome vnder god · mi3t non gon on erpe.  
pe melodie pat pei made · no man mi3t telle,  
ne neuer nere gestes vnder god · gladliere receyued.  
noeing wanted pei at wille · pat pei wold haue,  
4905  
pat pei nere semli serued · & sette at here ri3ttes.  
Munge now nel i namore · of here meric fare,  
for beter to be pan it was · mi3t no burn penke.  
4908  
as sone as alisaundrine · hade si3t of hire ladi,  
no tunge mi3t telle · treuli half pe ioye  
pat pei made at pat metying · when pei mette same.  
& meliors ful mekli · brou3t hire to hire chaumber,  
& told here whan sche sei time · treuli al pe sope,  
4913  
al pe sorwe pat sche hade suffred · sepe sche hire seie;  
now of pis matier · no more nel ich munge;  
& alle murpe was hem mad · among atte fulle.  
4916  
william & his worpi make · when pei sei time,  
told pepermour treuli · pat hem tidde hadde,1  
of meschef & of murthe · & ho hem most helped,  
& how pei brou3t were of bale · to here bote pere.  
4920  
& alle peyne of pat auenturre · hadde gret ioye,  
& ponked god of his grace · pat so godli hem spedde.  

1 After "hadda" occurs a line made up from this line and the next, and not finished, viz. "of meschef & of murpe pat hem tidde h."


Whanne time was, to be mete, he turned sone, & servyd [were] selcoupli riht as hem wolde, of alle dere deintes of metes and of drynykes; and as he muriest at he mete, that time seten, per come mensful messagers that men were nobul, fro emperour of grece that wel he quene, that ladi was of that lond & he hire dere fader, & from hire broper partendo that was hire pert broper. & whan pise messagers hade here greting made, 

\[\text{pan he soueraynest seg saide of hem alle,} \]

"Madame, makes you merie for marie loue in heuen, for your feizful fader nap you nouzt for-zete. ac he hap sent you to socoure so grissiliche an host, pat per nis man vpon mold pat may you with-stond, pat pei nelle bring in bale at your bidding sone. 

\[\text{pei kome sailing in pe see here souerayn is your broper;}\]

partenedon pe perles al pat puple ledes, & se him schal your-self hastli, boute faile, er bis bridde day be don doute you non ope. & whan pat comli quen po tidinges herde, a gladdere womman in world was per non a-line, to pe menskful messagere made gret ioye, & worpili hem welcomed pe mow wite pe sope. pe comli quen pe king counseiled pan to-gedere, pat pe bridhale schuld a-bide til hire broper come, to mensk more pat mariage zif pei mizt panne. 

\[\text{pan on pe bridde day aruied hire broper pere, with a clene cumpanye to carp pe sope, pe grettest lordes of pat lond pat liued pat time;}\]

but his ost pat tide he left in pe see stille. whan pe quen wist of his come curtesli & sone,

1 The large capital letter is mis-written M, as at l. 4880.
2 See l. 5064.
3 M.S. "wolrd."
4 The sense would be clearer if the pronoun "sche" were supplied, but it is often omitted in similar cases throughout this poem.—M.
The queen goes forth with the rest to greet him. Gladly with grete lordes sche gop him azens, he kud emperour of rome & he king of spayne, & his comli quen & alle he kniȝtes gode. 4956
he worþi william was he first pat welcomed him faire, & alphouns after him & after he kingses, he quen of palern presteli þan presed to hire broþer, & receyued him as reali as any rink purt bene; 4960 he king of spayne & he quen curtesli him gret, & emperour of rome ' with riȝt gret ioye.
þer was a solemne siȝt ' whan þei samen mette, with clipping & kissing ' to keþþe hem to-gudere. 4964
he lady ful loueli þan lad forþ hire brøþer presteli to palerne ' to þe paleys riche.
More murþe vpon mold ' miȝt no man deuise, þan was mad to þo men ' to munge þe soþe; 4968
Ne wanted hem no-ping ' þat þei wold haue, plenteuosli in eche plate ' þe puple was servueld, & as þei sete in solas ' sone þe quen told buxumli to hire brøþer ' what bi-tidde þere; 4972
how william was hire son ' & with his douȝtir dedes hade conquered þe king of spayne ' & ended þat werre; & in what wise þe werwolf ' was brouȝt to his state; & holli alle þe happes ' as þe han herd be-fore; 4976
how þei went away boþe ' in white beres skinnes. þan told sche how alphouns ' schuld his nece wedde, & william worþi melior ' with welþe on þe morwe.1 þan þemperoures some of grece ' was a-greued sore, 4980
whanne he wist on þe morwe ' þe mariaghe schuld bene, for he wend hire haue wedde ' whilom in rome, & þeȝþe he wist william ' his nobul newe þanne, hade he had his ost ' he wold [haue] a-said þere 4984
to haue with stoteye & strengþe ' stoutly hire wonne. but sei he sopli ' so miȝt it nouȝt bene, ac suffer he most ' pouh it him sore rewed,

1 These two lines, 4978 and 4979, follow line 4987 in the MS.; but are evidently out of place there, and must be inserted here.
ALEXANDRINE IS TO BE MARRIED TO BRAUNDNIS.

& semblant made he sobur · so as it him paide,
but i hote þe in hert · it liked him wel ille.
þann william and his moder · & meliors als, &
alphouns anon riȝt · of alisaundrine toched,
to marike here menskfulli · a-mong hem riȝt þanne. 4992
& so þe touched hem be-twene · to tele þe soþe, þat
braundnis alphouns broþer · schuld be hire make,
þe kinges some of spayne · þat comsed alle þe werre, &
þe at his fader hest · hit þanne grauntad,
& at þe bidding of his broþer · & williams hest. 4996
þan drieþ þei forþ þe day · in dedut & in muþe, &
haden holli at wille · what hem haue needed, &
þe þe to bedde uche burn · busked him þat time.
but on þe morwe manli · to mene þe soþe, 5001
Men miȝt haue seie of segges · many on greiȝed,1
In þe worþiest wise · þat seien were euere,
seþe he þat vs bouȝt · in bemleem was bore. 5004
alle þe clerkes vnnder god · couþe nouȝt descreine
a-redili to þe riȝtes · þe realte of þat day, þat
was in þat cite · for þat solempne fest, &
of alle men þat manerli · miȝt ouȝt gete
of any god gaili · to greiþe hem midde.
to minstracie · it miȝt nouȝt be aymed, so
many maner minstracie · at þat mariage were, 
þat whan þei made here minstracie · eche man wende,
þat heuen hastili & er þe · schuld hurtel to-gader, 5013
so desgeli it deneþe · þat al þere þe quakede.
þe streþis were alle strewed · & stoutli be-honged, with
gode clipes of gold · of alle gay hewes.; 5016 
& burgeys with here burdes · in here best wise, weythedan out at windowes · eche weie a-boute, to
prye on þe puple · þat priked in þe streþes, &
to loke on here lord · þat lelli þan schold 5020
be krowned king on þat day · to kepe al þat reaume.

1 "greiȝed" (?)
But trewpe now for to telle: when time come of daye,
pat pe blisful brides schold buske to cherche,
of here a-tir for to telle: to badde is my witte, 5024
for alle pe men vpon mold: ne mizt it describe
a-redeli to pe riztes: so riche it were alle.
bope kinges & quenes: & oper kud lordes,
perteli in alle a-paraile: pursewend purth-oute, 5028
of hors: & harneys: & pat hem have needed,
so pat non mizt be amended: a mite worþ, for sope;
as eche gom in his degre: godliche out.
for pi no more of pat mater: nel ich minge nope, 5032
but touche forþ of pe tale: as telleþ pe gest.
whan pe burns were boun: to buske to chirche,
pe merpour of rome: willüans suster ladde,
pilke pat alphouns: schold to wine weld. 5036
& pe kud king of spayne: curtesli & faire,
ladde meliors menskfulli: a-mong alle pe puple.
pe quenes broþer of palerne: partenedon pe bold
alisandrine at pat time: auenauzli ladde. 5040
al with blisse on here blonkes: pei busked to chirche,
with alle pe murþe vpon mold: pat man mizt of þenk.1
pe clergie com hem 2 a-þens: rizt gailiche a-tyred,
ful pertliche on procession: prestli as pei ouþt, 5044
& komen to here king: & dede him pe croye kesse.
pan with worship: & wele: went to pe cherche,
pe patriarches & oper prelates: prestli were reuested,
to make pe mariaje: menskfulli as it ouþt. 5048
& after pe lawe of pe lond: lelliche to telle,
pe were þer wedded: worshipfulli and favre.
& lelli, for alisanudrines lord: ne hade non londes,
þer were tit þif hem to: treuli fele townes, 5052
comli castelles and couþ: and cuntres wide,
to liue wip worship: & wele: in world al here liue.
no clerk vnder crist: ne kowþe nouþt descriue
þe murthe for þat mariaje: þat was maked þanne, 5056
1 Catchword—"pe clergie." 2 MS. "him." Read "hem." —M.
PE richesse ne pe riaulte to rekene pe sope,
ne pe solempe seruisse pat seyn was pat time.
but whan pe serwise was seid as it schold bene,
pat fel to a mariage be-maked at cherche,
pat puple prestli æzen to pe paleys wente
wip al pe murpe of menstracye pat man mist on penk.
& treuli whan time was pei turned to mete,
& serued were as selcoupli as hem-self wolde
desiren of eny deyntes of metes & drinkes.
It were toor forto telle treuli al pe sope,
& to hererce pe aray arist of pat riche feste,
for-pi i leue pis li3tli ac leuep pis for treupe,
per mist no mon it amende a mite worp i leue,
whan bordes were born a-doun & burnes hade
waschen,
Men mist haute seie to menstrales moche god zif,
sterne stedes & stef & ful stoute robes,
Gret garisin of gold & greipli gode ijuweles.
pe fest of pat mariage a monep fulle lasted,
& eche day was gret god giue al a-boute,
to more & to lasse pat at pe mariage were.
pan lau3t pe lordes here leue at pe monpes ende;
partenedon parted first of palerne pe quenes broper;
for he hade ferrest to fare formest he went,
& william wip his uipes went him wip on gate,
& semli wip alle solas to pe see him brou3t,
& his mensful moder meliors & his suster.
prestili pe quen of palerne pan preied hire broper,
to grete hire feipful fader fele times & ofte,
"& monk him kindli of pe help pat he to me sent,
&telle him treuli as it bi-tidde here."
pan lau3t pei eche leue at ope lelli to telle;
partenedon passed to schepe & his puple after,
& went wi3tli to saile pe wind was at pe best,
& saileden wip game & gle to grece til pei come.
pan told he tyt to his fader treuli pe sope,

The service ended,
they returned to the palace, and went to meat.
It were hard to tell all about the rich feast.
When they had washed after meat, the minstrels received gifts—steeds, robes, gold, and jewels.
The feast lasted a month.
Partenedon was the first to go home.
and the queen told him to thank her father.
Then Partenedon sailed away to Greece.
He told his father all the events, how his sister was helped by her son, and Melior married to his nephew.

The emperor wondered, but was glad his nephew was so peerless.

and that his daughter had been so well aided.

Next, the emperor of Rome went homewards,

and William and the rest escorted him for five miles.

[Fol. 80.] The emperor advises his daughter, saying,

"Be courteous to all, meek to thy servants, and leal to thy lord.

of fortune 
how his semli suster · was holpen purth hire sone, & how pat maide meliors · was wedded pat time, to his owne neweu · pouzh it him nouzt liked. 5095 & whan pempour hade herde · [holly] ¹ po wordes, he was a-wondred gretli · as he wel miʒ, but glad he was pat his neweu · so nobul was wox, & preised so perles · al oþer pat he passeþ, 5099 of alle kniʒtes vnder [heuene]² · pat knowe were þanne. & pat his douʒter of here duressé · was so deliuered, Gretli he þonked god · of his grete miʒt; & liued þan in lisse · al his lif after. 5103 but go we now from þe gregoyse · & ginne of anoþer, & of þe puple in palerne · how þei passed, telle.

Be real emperour of rone · remewed next after redili towards rone · with al his route nobul.

William & his moder · meliors ³ & his suster, 5108 þe king of spayne & his sones · & here semli puple, went wiþ him on gate · wel an fiue myle, to conueye him curtesli · as kindnesse it wold, wiþ al þe murrp vpon mold · þat men miʒt on þenk. & as þei went bi þe weie · wittow for soþe, 5113 ful mekli to meliors · pempour þus saide, "now, dere douʒter, i þe preie · do bi mi rede. lok þou bere þe baxumli · & be god & hende, 5116 konnyng & kurtes · to komwne & to grete; be meke & mercyabul · to men þat þe serue, and be lel to þi lord · and to þis ladi after, 5119 þat is his menskful moder · & moche pow hire loue. & alle þe lordes of þis lond · loue wel after, & loke, douʒter, bi þi lif · as pow me louest dere, þat neuer þe pore porayle · be piled for þi sake,

¹ See l. 216.
² Read "vnder god," or "vnder heuene." — M.
³ MS. repeats "meliors."
ne taxed to taliage but tentyfli pow help, 5124
pat al pis lond be lad in lawe as it ou3t; 5148
pan wol al pe pore puple preie for pe 3erne, for pi here wille schal be wrou3t what schel wol 3erne
5151
no to liue long in god liif & pi lord alse.

stifli loke pow st[arp]iue fo[arp] state of holi cherche, 5128
to meyntene it man-li on alle maner wise.

Gif gretli of pi god for goddes loue of heuen; 5132
be merciabul to alle men pat in mechef aru;
so schaltow gete god los & gretli be menskked, 5134
as han al pin aunceteres or pow were bi-geten.
do pus, mi dere dou3ter & drede pow pe neuer, 5136
pat pow ne schalt haue heuen blisse after pis liue.”
ful mekli seide meliors wip meling of teres, “i hope, sire, to heuen king your best so wirche,
pat no barn pat is born schal blame mi dedes.”
ful tyt after po tales pei token here leue, 5140
clipping & kesseng kurtesli eche oper.
but pe mourning pat meliors made pat time, 5144
for hire fader schold fare from hire so sone,
treuil it were ful tor to telle pe sope.
ac pemperour ful hendeli held hire in is armes, & conforted here kindeli and pe quen preiede
5148

to be meke & merciabule to meliors his dou3ter,
“& cheresche here chaste zif pat chaunce falles,
5151
pat sche wold miswerche wrongli any time.”
“zis, bi crist, sire,” quap pe quen “kare nou3t per-

fore.
i loue hire as miin owne lif leue pou for sope, 5154
wel i wot sche wol worche al-way pe gode.
for pi here wille schal be wrou3t what sche wol 3erne
pat sche ne schal want in no wise what pe hert likes.”
emperour hire proli ponked many pousand sipe,
& after pat, anon ri3t to alisaundrine he seide, 5155
“God has pe nou3t for-gete my gode hende mayde;
for worshipfulli artou wedded to welde a kinges sone.
ful busili i pe bidde pat burn euer honoure.
5144
Never let the poor be robbed on thine account,
and the poor will pray for thee.

Strive to maintain the church.

Be pitiful to all in trouble.

Do thus, and thou shalt win the bliss of heaven.”

Melior, weeping, says she hopes none will ever blame her.

It were hard to tell how Melior mourned at her father’s departure.

But he comforted [Fol. 89 b.] her, asking the queen to be kind to her, and to chasten her when she does wrong.

The queen promises, saying she will doubtless always do right.

The emperor tells Alexandrine that God has not forgotten her.
& wiche him al þe worship · in world þatou maye; þanne schal eche lud þe loue · & for þi lif preie." 5160
"Your hest, sire, schal be holde" · sede alisaundrine þanne,
"so þat þe ne schul here · of me nouȝt but gode,
I hope, þurth goddes grace · but gomes on me lye." 5164
þemperour þan tîȝtli · tok leue of hem alle, & wendes forþ on his way · wîȝtli to rome,
& liuede þere in liking · a long time after.
now reste we of romaynes · & reken we ferre,
& speke we of þe spaynols · wil we have space, 5168
hou þei sped hem to spayne · spacli þer-after.

The king of Spayne takes his leave.

Then the emperor took his leave, and went to Rome.

We now speak of the Spaniards.

William and his mother and Melior return to the palace at Palermo.

The king of Spain and Braundine and his sons propose to take leave, [Fol. 81.]

The king of Spain thanks king William.

William is very sorry to lose Alphonse, and says,

1 MS. "worȝt."
2 MS. "wen nedes." Read "nedes wend."—M.
3 MS. "nedest."
THE SPANIARDS ALL RETURN HOME.

"If, Alphonse, thou art ever in trouble, or art assailed by the Saracens,
send a message to me, and I will come and help thee."

"I say the same by thee," said Alphonse;
"nothing shall prevent me from coming to thee."

Then Alphonse kissed William's mother and Meller, and the queen gave Florence good advice.

She, sighing sorely, promised to follow it.

The Spaniards embark, and sailed away with a fair wind.

The Spanish lords come out to meet them at the haven.

1 MS. "pousans."
2 "runk" (?) See l. 5353.
& so al pat puple to pe palays · passede sone, with al maner murpe · pat men make coupe. 5224

pe king of spayne spacli · to speke pe sope, krouned alphonse to king · to kepe pat reaume, for him-self was febul · & fallen in elde, to liue per-after in lisse · wil our lord wold. 5228

Thus was alphonse pere king · after pat time, & held a-redili to riʒt · pe riche & pe pore, so pat eche burn him blessed · bi niztes & daie[s]. of him a-while wol i stint · & of william speke, 5232 pe kud king of poyle · pat i of karped ere.

Spacli as pe spaynols · sped hem to sayle, william with his folk · went wįțli aşayne to paleys of palerne · his puple him sewed, 5236 with alle murpe of menstracie · pat men mizt on řenk. Řan william wįțli · as a wis king schold, pes among pe puple · he put to pe reaume, a-leide alle luper lawes · pat long hadde ben vsed, 5240 & gart holde pe gode · and gaf mo newe, so pat neuer eristen king · kauʒt more loue Řan william dede in a wile · wite ʒe for sope. 5244 & ʒif he geynli was god · to alle gode werkes, & wel bi-loued in his lond · with lasse & wiʒ more, ʒit was meliors as moche · his menskful quene, or more ʒif sche mizt · in any maner wise ; 5248 so prestli sche wold plese · pe pore & pe riche. Řan bi-tid it in pat time · to telle pe sope, pe riche emperour of rome · ended his daies, deide, & was be-dolue · as dere god wold. 5252 & alle pe lordes of pat lond · lelli at o sent, sent william to seie · so as was bi-falle ; & to meliors his quene · bi messageres nobul, as to here lege lord · lelli bi riʒt, 5256 purth meling of pe mariage · of meliors pe schene.
hendli al in hast · pei preizd him pider hize.
to vnder-fonge in fee · al pat faire reaume,
& erden in pat empire · as emperour & maister. 5260
when pe worpi william · wist al pat fare,
& treuli hade vnderston1 · pe tidinges to pende,
to pe menskful messagers · he made glad chere,
& welcomed worpili · witow for sope. 5264
napes meliors & he · made moche sorwe
for peperour was for-fare · faire to crist.
sone pei cau3t comfort · for pis pei knewe bope,
pat dep wold come to alle · pat crist hade fourmed,
to emperours & erles · to eche pat lif hadde. 5269
& god pan of his grace · godliche pei ponked,
& seide pei wold his sondes · suffer, & his wille.
but william ful wizti · with-oute any more,
5272 William sends messengers to Spain to Alphonse,
sent as swipe his sondes · sopli in-to spayne,
bi messagers milde · pa moche god coupe,
& bid alphouns his broper · schuld bline come,
5275 asking him to come with Florence and
& bring wip him his [wif · pat]2 was his worpi suster.
alisaundrine & hire lord · alphouns he bad hem preie,
pat he dede hem com wip him · for cas pat mi3t falle,
& his feipful fader · 3if he a-liue were,
(ac he was ded & doluen · as dere god wold,
5280 (But the old king was dead and
& alphouns held in his hond · holli al pat reaume,
buried.)
as kinde king krowned · purth cunseil of his peres).
& whan pe menskful messangers · here message wisten,
& hade letteres of here lord · to lelen here sawes,
5285 The messenger soon arrived in Spain.
pei went wizti in here way · with-oute any more,
& to pe kud king alphouns · kipd here arnd.

Whan 3 alphouns witerli · wist of here wille, 5288
5 pat pe riche emperour of rome · was redeli god bi-
tauzt,

1 See the note. 2 Read "his wif that was."—M.
3 The capital W is mis-written M.
he was very glad, and summoned his lords to get ready.

Alphonse and Melior,  
Braundinis and Alexandrine come to Palermo.

The great joy of William and Alphonse at their meeting.

All go to Palermo and make merry for a week.

When all were ready, William set out for Rome,

providing rich apparel for Melior and his sister and mother.

1 Read "bi twayne hem made."—M.
William is crowned emperor.

WILLIAM IS CROWNED EMPEROR. 169

On nearing Rome, kings and nobles come forth to meet them.

All ride to Rome, and find the city richly decked out.

The prelates meet them in procession, and the bells are rung.

Next day, at mass, William is crowned emperor, and Melior empress.

Never was a more royal festival.

The feast lasted fifteen days.

The minstrels had presents of rich robes and steeds.

\[\text{per com him a-zens of kinges & oper grete}\]
\[\text{pe fairest ferde of folk of pat ene rbi-fore was seie;}\]
\[\text{no man vpon molde mit aynt pe noumber.}\]
\[\text{& worchipfulli pei welcomed william here lorde, 5328}\]
\[\text{& al his freli felawchip & freli pei greet,}\]
\[\text{& receyued hem as realy as any rinkes mit;}\]
\[\text{Riden rizt in-to rome with reaulte and mype.}\]
\[\text{ac no tonge ne may pe atir of pe cite telle, 5332}\]
\[\text{so richeli was al ariaid in rome for his come.}\]
\[\text{pe prelates on procession prestili out comen,}\]
\[\text{& alle pe belles in burw busili were runge,}\]
\[\text{for ioye pat here lege lord his lordchip schuldb take.}\]
\[\text{pan passed al pe puple to pe paleys euene, 5337}\]
\[\text{& eche man was esed euenli at wille,}\]
\[\text{wanted hem no ping pat pei haue wold,}\]
\[\text{for plente to al pe puple was purueide at pe fulle.}\]
\[\text{& on pe morw at masse to munge pe sope, 5341}\]
\[\text{william with al his worchip emperour was maked,}\]
\[\text{& melior his comli quen was crowned emperice.}\]
\[\text{per nis no clerk vnder crist pat couple half descriue}\]
\[\text{pe reaulte pat was ariaid in rome for pat fest, 5345}\]
\[\text{Ne pe ti pepel of hire atir to telle pe rizt,}\]
\[\text{for al pe men vpon mold it amende ne mit,}\]
\[\text{nouit pat fel to swiche a fest forsope, half a mite. 5348}\]
\[\text{forpi wende i wol a while wite je for sope,}\]
\[\text{to reherce pe aray of pe real fest,}\]
\[\text{& telle forpe of pis tale what tidde after.}\]

\[\text{Fulle fiftene daies pat fest was holden, 5352}\]
\[\text{wip al pe realte of rome pat ene rink of herde.}\]
\[\text{no tong mit telle pe twentipte pat part}\]
\[\text{of pe mede to menstrales pat mene time was seue,}\]
\[\text{of robes wip riche pane & oper riches grete, 5356}\]
\[\text{sterne stedes & strong & oper stoute ziftes,}\]

1 MS. "hes."

2 MS. "eueri;" but see l. 4232.
so that eche man per-mide · miȝt hold him a-paied.
& er þe fest fulli · was fare to þe ende,
william þempœrour · þat newe was crowned,
as a curteys king · on þe kowherd pōȝt,
þat him hade fostered · to-fore, seuen þere;
& sent some after him · & his semli wine.
& whan þe kowherde kom · þe king to him saide, 5364
"sire kowherde, knowestow me ouȝt · so þe crist
help?"
þe kowherd kneled some · & karped þese wordes,
"3a! lord, wiþ your leue · ful litel i þou knewe.
I fostered you on mi flet · for söpe, as me þinked, 5368
& seide þe were my sone · seuen þere and more.
þe riche empœrour of rome · þat regned here þat time,
wan þou fro me a-wei · wo was me þer-fore.
but heriȝed be þe hie king · þou þus haf holpe, 5372
& pult þou to þis plĳt · fram pouert euer-more!"
william þe worpi empœrour · ful wizþli þus saide,
"bi crist, sire, þou hast seid · al þe söþe euene;
þou me fostredes ful faire · as fel for þin astate, 5376
& bi our lord, as i leue · þat schaltou lese neuer!"
anon þan het he in þast · do him forto come
his stiward wiþ-oute stînt · to stîþli alle his londes,
& bi-fore kud kniȝtes · and oþer kene lوردes, 5380
he ȝaf to þe kowherde · a kastel ful nobul,
þe fairest vpon fold · þat euer freke seie,
& best set to þe siȝt · him-selue to kepe;
and al þat touched þer · to a tidi erldome, 5384
to þe kowherd & his wif · þe king ȝaf þat time,
as freli as eni freke · for euer couþe deuise.
& hastili het eche a bailli · þat hade it to kepe,
to do eche burn be buxum · bi niȝtes & daie[s],¹ 5388
to þe cowherdes comandement · as to here kinde
lord,
as þei louede here liues · neuer to lette his wille;
¹ MS. "daie;" but "daies" is better; see l. 5490.
& sent his stiward as swipe · to sese him per-inne.
& hastili was his wille wrouȝt · witow for sope.    5302
pus was pe kowherd out of kare · kindeli holpen,
he & his wilsun wif · wel to liuen for euer.
of pe kinde couherde · now nel i telle no more,
but lete him in his blisse · & his burde also,
& touche we ferre · as pis tale forperes.

Thus were the cowherd and his wife saved from
the hardship of poverty.

Whan pis faire fest was finischid · at pe .xv daies
end,
eche a lord ful loueli · his leue gan take
of emperour & emperice · & oft hem ponked    5400
of pe worship & wele · pat pei hem wrouȝt hadde.
emperour to pe grete god · ful godli hem bi-tauȝt;
but omage arst of hem alle · hendeli he tok,
Mekli as pe maner is · his men to bi-come,
to com keneli to his kry · as to here kinde lord.
& he ful godly hem ponked · & to god bi-tauȝt,
& pan went pei here way · whider paim god liked,
eche lord to his owne loud · & lenged per in blisse.

The festival ended, each lord went to his own
home;

& king alphonous a-non · after alle were went,    5409
& his worchipful wif · be-fore william comen,
& braundyns his brofer · and alisauadrine his burde;
at emperour & emperice · euerreche on at ones    5412
loneli lanȝten here leue · to here lond to wend.

sone pan, sopli to seie · per was sorwe riue,
whan pat william was war · pat pei wend wold,
Moche mournyng pei made · & meliors also;    5416
but sepe it miȝt be no beter · suffer hem be-houed.
william bi pe hond · hent alphonous his broper,
& neiȝ wepande for wo · wȝtli pus saide,
"broper, zif it be · bi god pat vs wrouȝt,"    5420
I wold it were pi wille · wiȝ vs forto lenge,
hit forpynkes me sore · pat we schul de-parte;
but sepe it nel be non oper · nouȝt for to striue,"    5423
I bi-kenne ȝou to krist · pat on croyce was peyned,
and I pray thee, if any one wars against thee, send to me and I will come to thee."

"The same say I by thee," replied Alphonse.

The emperor William's mother tells Florence to love and obey her lord, and she promises on her knees to do so.

They give Alexandrine the same advice, which she says she will follow.

At last they have to take leave, to the great sorrow of all.

The king of Spain mounted his horse, and went home with his company.

& brother, i pe bidde bi al · pat enuer pow louestest, jif destine falle of ani dede · pat pou to done haue, pat eny wirst wip were · wirche aeins pi paie, swipe send me to say · & sone i come to pe, 5428 pat no liuend lud · schal me lette neure, wil me lastep pe lif · for loue ne for awe; til pow be wel wrote · wol i neuer stinte."

"3a, blessed be pow, bold brother" · seide alphouns 1 J an, 5432 pe same sey i be pe · so me wel time!" feipfullere frenchipe · saw neuer frek in erpe, pat more plenerli hem profered · to plese ech oper, & to help oper in hast · ho-so hade nede. 5436 peemporeus moder william · and meliors also, seide to hire douster · pe semli quen of spayne, "loueli douster, leue lif · loue pi lord euere, & be euer busili aboute him · buxumli to serue, 5440 & lede him euer wip pi lore · his lond to kepe; so schaltow lelli be loued · wip lasse & wip more." & sche kneling on here knees · curtesli saide, sche hoped to heuen king · whil here lif lasted, 5444 to wirche as pei here wissed · with-oute any lette. & to alisaudrine a-non · riist pei sayde sadli, in same wise · sche schold hire lord loue; & sche sore sikande · seide pat sche wold. 5448 & whan pei same · had seide · what hem-self liked, & tyme was atte laste · atwinne forto de-parte, per was sikinge & sorwe · on bope sides sadde, weping & wringinge · for wo at here hertes, 5452 & clippinge and kessing · pei caust ech eoper, bi-kenned hem to cirist · pat on croyce was peyned, & soutè sepe on-sunder · pou.clientHeight hem sore greued. pe king of spayne spacl · spedde him J an to horse, & went forip in is way · wip-oute any more; 5457 & al his faire felawchip · folwed him after,

1 The MS. has "william," an obvious blunder; see l. 5198.
They were royally received on their return.

Of the king of Spain I say no more.

After this William made a progress through his empire,

to know all his countries as a king ought.

He established good laws, so that robbers might soon be hanged or drawn asunder.

Flatterers he chased from him, and loved no liars.

Rich and poor prayed for him.

Melior was so gracious to God's men and to good works,

that all prayed for her.

William's mother was so gracious that all blessed her.

& sped hem panne spaci · to speyne pat pei come.
per were pei reali rescuyed · as god riȝt it wold, 5460
with alle maner murȝe · pat man milȝt on þenke ;
& þere pei lenged in lisse · al hire liue after,
& leden wel þat lond · to gode lawes euere,
so þat eche burn hem blessed · þat euere þei bore were.
of hem of spayne to speke · my speche now i lete, 5465
but lete hem liue in lisse · at oure lordes wil[e,
of þe riche emperour of rome · redeliche to telle.

Whanne þe king of spayne · spedli was faren, 5468
William with him tok · al his worÞi meyne,
& his menskful moder · & here maydenes alle,
& rides þurth þempire of rome · richeþ & faire,
to alle solempne cites · & semliche holdes,
to knowe þe kunþres · as a king ouȝt ;
lauȝt omage of eche lud · þat longed to þe reaume.
& whan þat dede was don · delierli & sone,
Gode lawes þurth his lond · lely he sette,
& held hem so harde · i hete þe for soþe,
þat robbouries ne renowres · miȝt route none,
þat þei nere hastil hange · or with hors to-drawe,
flatereres & fals men · ſram him sone he chased,
Lieres ne losengeres · loued he neuer none,
but tok to him tidely · trewe cunsayl euere,
þat al þe puple for him þrede · þe pore & þe riche ;
so wisli þe wrouȝt · to sauen his reaume.
5484
& þif he meke were of maneres · meliours his quene,
was al swiche on hire side · to telle þe tre[w]þe,
so graucious to goddes men · & alle gode werkes,
so pitevows to þe pore · hem prestili to help,
þat eche man hade ioye · to here of here speke,
& busily for hire bede · bi nyȝtes and daies,
& also William's moder · þat menskful quene,
so god was & gracious · to eche gomes paye,
so witty & willeful · to wirche alle gode dedes,
Then she remembered her dream, that her right arm lay over Rome, and her left over Spain.

William was her right arm, and Florence her left arm.

She thanks God for all her bliss.

William and Melior had two sons.

One was emperor of Rome after his father, the other was king of Calabria and Apulia.

So came William to be emperor of Rome after all his hardships.

And so shall all [Fol. 86.] they that seek good prosper.

Thus hath William ended all his work, following the French as well as he could.

The metre is the best he could make.

pat eche burn hire blessed · busili euer-more,
& heizli precie de to heuen king · to hold here liues.
pan com here in mynde · at pat mene while,
pat here sweuen was sop · pat sum time hire mette,
pat here ríʒt arm redeli · ouer rome a-teyned,
& lelli here lift arm · laye ouer spayne.
pan wist sche wíʒtli · what it be-tokened,
here sone pat regned in rome · here ríʒt arme ment;
pat here der-worþ douʒter · was drawe to spayne,
here lif time to be þere ladi · here left arm schewed.
God þanked sche godli · of al his grete mįʒt,
& his menskful moder · þe milde quen of heuen,
pat out of bale hade hire brouʒt · to blisse so faire.

But williām & his worþi quen · winteres fele,
liueden in liking & lisse · as our lord wolde,
& haden two sones samen · ful semliche childeren,
pat seþen þurth goddes grace · were grete lordes after.
pat on was emperour of rome · & regned after his fader,
pat ọpęr was a kud king · of calabre & poyle;
pat mįʒti men & menskful · were þei in here time,
& feipful as here fader · to fre & to þewe.
þus þis worþi williām · was emperour of rome,
þat hadde many hard happe · hade þere-bi-fore,
þe in gret baret · & bale sum time;
of alle bales was he brouʒt · blessed be goddes mįʒt!
& so schal euerich seg · þat secheþ to þe gode,
þat schuld pise wise haþ williām · al his werke ended,
as fully as þe frensch · fully wold aske,
& as his witte him wold serve · pouȝh it were febul.
but pouȝh þe metur be nouȝt mad · at eche mannes paye,
Pray for Sir Humphrey de Bohun!

If it is witt in any wise, wold him haue served.
but, faire frendes, for goddes loue & for your owne

mensk,

he pat liken in loue, swiche pinges to here,

prayes for that gode lord, that gart pis do make,

he hende erl of hereford, humfray de boun.

he gode king edwardes dou3ter, was his dere moder;

he let make pis mater, in pis maner speche,

for hem that knowe no frensche, ne neuer yndersto[n].

biddij that blissful burn, that bou3t vs on he rode,

& to his moder marie, of mercy that is welle,

"3if that lord god lif, wil he in erpe lenges,

& when he wendes of pis world, wel3pe with-oute ende,

to lenge in that liking ioye, that lestep euer-more."

& god gif alle god grace, that gladli so biddles,

& pertli in paradis, a place for to haue. Amen.

1 MS. "prei3ed."

2 Read "ynderstonde." — M. See note to l. 5262.
Ye lords and others, who seek to acquire praise, attend all to me.

I shall tell of the best man that ever bestrode steed.

Amyntas was a mighty king of Macedonia.

He wedded a wife, by whom he had two sons;

Alexander the elder son, and Philip.

MS. hymselue, with e written above the y.
2 MS. "leethes," with d written above the th.
3 MS. "fell," with foele written above it.
4 MS. alder, with e over a. See note.
5 Here follows the catchword, "Cas fel, dat dis K."
PHILIP IS BROUGHT UP AT THEBES.

Case fell, \textit{pat} this Kyng \textit{as} Christe wolde \textit{pane}, \textit{24}
Was with siknes of-sought \& soone \textit{per-after},
Hie was graythed to grace \& to God went.
His alder-aldust\textsuperscript{1} sonne \textit{pat} Alisaundr hight,
\textit{bo} was crowned King \textit{to} keepe \textit{pe} reigne. \textit{28}
Well hee ladde \textit{pe} londe \textit{while} hee lyfe hadde,
But his term was tint \textit{or} it tyme were.
And all \textit{pe} cause of \textit{pis} case \textit{I} con soone tell ;
How hee was doolefully ded \& doone of his life. \textit{32}
Dat made his moder \textit{pe} Queene \textit{pat} moste was adouted ;
Eurydice hue hight \textit{un}kinde of her deedes.
She lusted after her own children,
\textit{pat} her chylder hue chase \textit{unchastly to haue.} \textit{36}
For Alisaundr, hur sonne \textit{assent} so ne wolde
To fulfill so foule \textit{her} fleshlych sinnes,
Hue let kyll \textit{pis} Kyng \textit{wit} care at his hert,
In \textit{pe} fornest yere \textit{that} hee first reigned. \textit{40}
And Sus lafte hee his life \textit{our} Lorde haue his soule !
For a feller in fight \textit{found} men seelde,
While him lasted his life \textit{londes to yeeme}\textsuperscript{2}
Now let wee \textit{pis} lued \textit{lengen in bliss}, \textit{44}
And sithe myng wee more \textit{of} \textit{pis} mery tale.

Fel[e] wintres tofore \textit{in} his faders life,
Than was Philip \textit{pe} free \textit{to} fosteryng take,
In courte \textit{of an} unkouthe kith \textit{with} a King ryche, \textit{48}
That was chuse\textsuperscript{3} of \textit{pe} childe \& choicelich hym kept.
Hee that fostred, \& founde \ Philip in youthe,
King of Tebes that time \textit{truly} was holden,
Epaminondas hee hyght \textit{full} hardy to meete. \textit{52}
So hee cherished \textit{pe} childe \textit{cheefe ouer all},
\textit{pat} hee was woxen full weele \& wyght of his deede,

\textsuperscript{1} An \textit{e} is written above the first \textit{a} in this word.
\textsuperscript{2} Catchword—Now let wee dis lued, &c.
\textsuperscript{3} A \textit{y} is written above the \textit{u}.
Philip's Lords Rebel Against Him.

Forto abyde any beurn · in battle, or eles.¹
When his broder with bale · brought was of life, 56
Ryght was, pat pis renk · reigned hym after
To bee crowned a King · in his right riche,
As maister of Macedoine · amonges pe greate,
For to leade pe lond · as hym leefe thought, 60
Men to holden of hym · pat hed was of all,
Philip fareth him forthe · in a fayre wyse,
To receiuen his right · & reigne on his londes;
But when pe Lordes of pe lond · lelich wisten 64
Of hur neew cummen King · pat his kith asketh,
With greate werre pat wonne · pei werned hym soone,
That by force of hur fight · Sei ² firked hym Sennes,³
That hee ne must in his marche · with his menne dwell,
Ne belene in his lond; · pat liked hym yll.
Whan Philip felt tho folk · so ferse of hur deedes, 72
Ayen to Tebes hee turned · teenid full sore.
To pe Kyng of this case · hee carped soone,
How hee was kept at his coome · with a keene route,
That hee was faine with his folke · to flee from his owne.
Epaminondas pe King · was carefull in hert,
Till hee were wroken of pe wrong · pat pei wrought
hadden. 76
Hee graythed hym a greate oste · grym to beholde,
And chued forthe, with pe ⁴ childe · what chaunse so betide.
So with Philip pe free · hee fared on in haste,
To clayme his Kingdome · & catchen pe shrews, 80
That beraften hym his ryght · with rufull deedes.
Than, shortly to showe · pei sharplich went,
And foughten for Philip · his fone to dustroye,
Tooke towres, & towne[s] · tamid ⁵ Knightes, 84

¹ MS. "oreles."
² MS. "dei."
³ MS. "dennes," with thence above it.
⁴ MS. Dou, as if for "&ou;" but "pe" is written above it.
⁵ MS. "tamed," with an e over the a.
The lords fled to Athens.
The king of Thebes attacked it, and took it.

Then was Philip crowned king, 400 years after Rome was built, [B.C. 359; A.U.C. 395.]

Philip is made king.

He defeats the Assyrians [Illyrians].

They acknowledge him as lord.

Felled pe falsse folke • ferked 1 hem hard, With skathe were pei skoumfty 2 • skape pei ne myght, Who-so weldes a wrong • pe worsse hym 3 betides, For hee, 4 pat reigneth in ryght • reskueth troth. For fere of sir Philip • fledde they all, And turned tit to a towne • pat Attanus ryght, A stij) stede, & a strong • & straite for to winne, And kept keenely pat cost • fro pe Kyng than, That hee ne myght with po menne • medle no while. The King of Tebs for teene • targed no lenger, But sought to pe Citie • & a-saute made. They besieged it so • on sides aboute, That they tooke pe towne • & traytoure sleew. Thus faire Philip, pe free • his fomen awaited, And thus sought hee his lond • with lo$elike 4 dyntes. Than pis cumly Knight • was crowned soone, Of Macedoine made Kyng • maugre them all. Fore hundred yere holly • as I here tell, Sin pe Citie of Roome • sett was in erth, Philip in his freedam • faire gan dwell, So too reigne on his ryght • as rink in his owne. Now is hee crowned King • & keepps his reigne, And swipe hardie is hee • happes too fonde. Now fares Philip pe free • too fonden his myght, And attles to pe Assyriens • aunteres too seeche ; And here blynd pe beurn • of battle stern, Till hee had fenked pe folke • too fare at his wyll, And wonne pe won • with werre full keene, Folke to fare with hym • as hee faine wolde, To chesen 5 hym for cheefe Lorde • & chaunge hym neuer. Philip full ferslich • in his fyght spedde, And prouued in his powre • as Prince full noble.

Whan hee had so them • hollich ifenked,

1 MS. seems to have "ferkerd;" see l. 67.
2 MS. skoumkyt.
3 See the note on these two words.
4 MS. lodelike.
5 MS. chosen, with e above o.
Hee sought too a Citie · full seemely too knowe, 
Larissea hyght, pat helde · full hardie men in, 
One pe klenist coste · pat any King aught.
Philip fetches hym folke · & foundes full soone 
Too bidden pe battle · & brodes in haste, 
For to lache hym as Lorde · pe loud for to haue, 
Or deraine it with dintes · & deedes of armes.
Ferre were pe folke · & foughthen in haste, 
Or pei lesen peir lond · their life for too spill.
Longe lasted pat strife · but lelli too knowe, 
By fin force of his fight · Philip it winnes.
Now hath Philip in fyght · freely wonne
The Citie of Assyriens · with selkouthe dintes; 
And lordship of Larisse · laught too his will; 
And intoo Greece hee gos · with a grim peele.
Than hee turnses too a towne · Tessalonie it hyght; 
And assailes it soone · pe Citie to haue.
Too [sese]² onely pe towne · or any ooper goodes,
Hee ne nyed it nought · but needely too haue
All pe mightfull menne · pat in pe marches dwelt,
Too bryng at his baner · for bolde pei were,
And a-loshed in lond · for leeflich Knightes.
For pis enchescoun hee chused · too chasen hem peere,
Till pei were at his wyll · as hee wolde ax.
But or hee tooke so their toune · teene gan spring;
Many a dulfull dint · deled pei there.
But all pei were unware · wisly too knowe
Of pat sorowfull asaute · pat they so had;
For hadde pei knowe pe kast · of pe Kyng stern,
They had kept well his cumme · with carefull dintes.
pei see no succour · in no syde aboute,
That was come to hur koste · pe king for to lett;
And Philip with his fresh folke · so fast pean assailes,
That pei gradden hur gripp · his grace to haue,
Him to taken peir toune · & trulich to serve,

¹ MS. holde, with e above o. ² See the note.
DESCRIPTION OF THE PRINCESS OLYMPIAS.

For to wend at his wyll wherestro hym liked,
And reedy to his retaineunce ryght as he wolde.

Now is Philip full grym in fyght for to meete,
And many mightfull menne may with hym leade.
Attynes, pe trie toune hee tooke too his wyll,
The folke too fare with hym when hee fonde time.

Pe Citie of Assyrie is sett too his paye,
And all pe beurnes in pe bowowe boune too his heste.
The Lordship of Larisse is laught too himselfe,
Men too cumme too his crie & kipen peir might.

Tessalonie pe trewe holde is turned too hym asle,
With all pe weies in pe won his werre too kepe.
Now is pat peopple full prest & preued of strength
For too wirchen his will & wend at his neede.

Philip, for his seer folke in sele oper landes,
Doughtye men douen for dredfull hee seemes.
By every koste, pat hee com kid was his might,
For when hee medled him moste pe maistrie hee had.

To profre pis process prestly too here,
I karp of a kid king Arisba was hote;
The Marques of Molosor menskliche hee aught,
For hee was King of pe kiþ & knight wel a-losed.
Hee had a suster in sight seemely to sonde,
The moste luftsum of life pat euere lud wyst;
Olympias pe onorable ouer all hue hyght.
Rose red was hur rode full riall of schape:
With large forhel & long loueliche tresses,
Glisiande as goldwire growen on length.
Bryght browse ibent blisfull of chere:
Grete yien, & graie gracious lippes:
Bothe cheekes, & chinne choice too beholde;

1 MS. false.
2 MS. Molosor, with a's over the two first o's; so in l. 204. Marques should perhaps be marches.
Mouth meete perto · moste for too praise.
Hur nose namelich faire · hur necke full scheene;
Schuft shulders aright · well ischaped armes;
Hondes hendly dowered · helplich, sweete;
Faire fyngers unfolde · fetise nailes;
Sides seemely sett · seemlich long.
Hupes had hue faire · & hih was hue þan;
Hur þies all þorou-oute · þristliche ischape,
With likand legges · lonely too see ne;
And þe fairest feete · þat euer freke kende,
With ton t tidily wrought · & tender of hur skinne.
Liliwhite was hur liche · to likne þe beurde;
Where is þer lengged in lond · a Lady so sweete?
No spicery or treacle could be sweeter.

Wherfore I carp of þis case · knowe yee may. 200
Philip þe free king · that ferse was of myght,
For þe beurde so bryght was · of blee scheene,
He had his liking ilaide · þat Ladie too wedde.
Too Molosor with his menne · hee meued in haste, 204
Craued soone at þe Kyng · þat comelich beurde,
For too welde too his wife · as hee will hadde.
Æe king was full courtis · & cöfflich hym grauntes,
For had hee werness ² þat wyght · wo had hee suffred, ²
For þat freelich fode · Philip, wolde eles 209
Haue geten [hier] with grim stroke · of grounden tooles,
Pat time thought þe Kyng · to targe no lenger;
But bring þat blisfull · to þe bern soone. 212
To kyng Philip hee commē · as curteis of deede,
And laft hym þe Ladie · to lache at his wyll.
For hee thought on this thing · þroliche ³ in hert,

¹ MS. toxe, with ton above.
² Over this word is the gloss—si prohibuisset.
³ MS. þroliche, with c over the o.
Philip invades Molossis.

If hee had too his help in his hie neede
Of Macedoine pe King a mighty man holden,
To alie him too pat Lorde & his loue winne,
Jer shoulde no bydyng ben so bolde bee in erth,
Too teene hym untruly term of his reigne;
Ne to greeue pe gome for grempe of his help,
The while Philip pe free hym frendship kid.
Hee was bitraide in his trust for truly per-after,
When Sir Philip was fare with pe faire beurde,
And wedded pat wight with worship & ioye,
To bee Ladie of his land & his leeue make,
Men to queme hur as Queene & quikly hur serue,
Bothe beurdes & bern[es] boute too hur wyll,
To Molosor with maine his menne gan hee bryng.
Y-armed at all pointes pei auntred hem sider;
Mani a lud of pe lond raid hi to grounde,
And many a seemeli segge sorowe they wrought.
Pei laft for pe lond Lordshipes tooke,
Seseden pe cities and seemelich tounes,
Keuered hem casteles pe Kyng too distrie;
For his susteres sake cease they no lde,
That hee with werre ne wan pe won pat hee aught,
And pe Kyng of his kiþ with care pei pinte.
And Philip unfaithfully pe faire coste had,
Eruha
Arisba in exile euer was after,
And neuer comme too his kiþ but caught was in teene.
With doole dried hee so his dayes in sorowe,
To hee gaf up his goste with God for too dwell.

Of pat carefull kyng carp I no farre,
But leve hym in languor & lysten too more,
How Philip chases as cheefe chaunces too fonde,
Too bee adouted as deth in diuers londes.

1 MS. seems to have boane.
2 MS. fefeden, the en being above the line.
3 MS. gane, with f above ne. 4 MS. fynde, with o over the y
When he had so hem [hampred · he] hendely fetched
His make too Macedoine · with mirthes ynow. 249
He laught leue at his wife · & laft hur still
For too liue in hur londe · in liking of hert,
That no gome under God · greuen hur myght. 252
Philip his faire folke · ferselich ariaces,
Too Greece he gra[i]bes hym now · with a grete will.

Comonohonham
Hee comme too Methone · full cumlich a place,
Of any borowe best buylt · & bolde menne pere,1 256
One pe hugest holde · & hard for too wynne,
That was in Greece o pe grounde · graiped too stond.
Hee brought his menne to pe borowe 2 · & blie it asailles,
With prese of his power · hee profers hem fyght. 260
Many a cumly Knight · & ope r kid peeple
On every side was sett · asaute too make.

Pough 3 Philip fared with folke · ferefull in fyght,
Little gained his greefe · for grim thei were, 264
To warden peir walles · with weies ynow.
Pat citie wer sure men · sett for too kepe,
With mich riall ariae · redy too fight,

With atling of areblast 4 · & archers ryfe. 268 [Fol. 6 b.]
Well fepered flon · floungen aboute,
Grim arowes & graie · with grounden hedes
Wer enforced to flie · her fone for to greue.

So bolde were in pe borowe · with balefull strokes, 272
Pat of Philips folke · fele they slew,
And many mightfull men · maymed hee pere,
Pat pe prent of pat prese · passed neuer.
And Philip pe ferse King · foule was maimed ; 276
A shaft with a scharp hed · shet 5 oute his yie,
That neuer sippen forsope · sawe he therin.

Be grempe of po grim folke · glod to his hert,

---

1 MS. pere, with d (for 8) over the p. See the note on bolde.
2 MS. has another o above the first o.
3 MS. Though, with p over the Th.
4 MS. areblast, with i over it, between the a and r.
5 MS. shet, with o over the e.
For his eger enemies • his yie to lese. 280
He made a very now • auenged too beene
Of pat teenefull tach • pat hee tooke þere,
And swore swiftlich his othe • aswage hee ne sholde,
With all þe maine þat hee might • too merken¹ hem care,
For to take þat toune • þough hee teene had, 285
All þe segges in sight • sorowe too kipe.

Philip enforceth hym now • his folke for to gie ;
Hee rydes thorough-oute þe ronk² • araies him neew.
Many mightfull menne • made hee stryue, 289
With archers & ober folke • aunting hym nere.
þei lete flie to þe flocke • ferefull sondes,³
Gainus⁴ grounden aryght • gonne they dryue,
Stones stirred they þo • & stightlich layde
On hur engines full gist⁵ • to ungome þe walles.
þei craked þe cournales • with carefull dyntes,
þat spedly to-sprong • & spradde beside. 296
þe Kyng with his keene ost • coiftich fightes,
And kipes all þat hee can • þe kip for to haue ;
þei [sesen]⁶ on þe citie • soothe for too tell,
Hur borowe bet so doune • with balefull strokes,
And hemself in þe saute • sorowfully wounded ;
And many a lifeles lud • layed to þe grounde,
þat þei ne stirred of þe stede • strife for to make.
Hur ȝates ȝeede þei too • & youlden hem soone, 300
To Philip farde þei forthe • as fenked⁷ wightes,
Profred hym þe pris holde • & preies ⁸ in haste
To deeme what hee doo will • for hur deede yll.
Dus⁹ was þe citie of-sett • & sipp[en] so wonne ; 304
But many a balefull beurn • bought it full dere,

¹ Cf. marked in l. 932. ² MS. rank, with o over the a.
³ MS. soundes or soundes. ⁴ MS. Gamus.
⁵ MS. jüst, with gist above it; and gist is marked.
⁶ See note. ⁷ Over fenked is the gloss, unquisshed.
⁸ MS. praies, with c over the a. ⁹ MS. Dus, with þ over the D.
WAR BETWEEN THE THEBANS AND PHOCIANS.

187

Komothonham
Or kid Methone too pe Kyng fell.
In Greece, many a grete toune grim was of strength,
And pe menne of pat marche misproude were; 312
Thei were so ding of peir deede ded[\(a\)]in peat they had,
pat any gome under God gouern hem shoilde.
But as they sayden hemself and assent made,
pei nere encline to no King hur kip for too gye. 316
They wrought by peir owne will & wolde nought
They did as they liked best.

eles,
To seche peam a Souereine\(^2\) pe Citie to zeme.
Farre pen peir owne folke fare they nolde,
What lud liked hem best pe Lordship hee gat,\(^3\) 320
And on chee for cheefe & chaunged lome.
All swich cities pat seemelich were,
Philip fenkes in fyght & fayled lyte,
That all Greece hee ne gatt with his grim werk. 324
In what maner & how men may i lere,
pat hee withlich \(^4\) whanne \(^5\) pe worship of Greece,
To bee holden of hym holly pe raigne,
For to gye pe gomes as hym goode thought. 328

Now tell wee of Tebes that tristy\(^6\) was holde,
There as Philip pe free to fostring dwelt,
How pe ludes of the land a-losed for gode,
Wer enforced to fight with hur fone hard. 332
Jjer turned a pe Tebes twoo trie places,
pe sikrest cities that any seg wist;
pe Lordship of Lacedemonie loped hem than,
And of Phocos pe folke fast hem assailes. 336
pe werre wox \(^7\) in pat won wonderly stern,

1 MS. dedin, with disdeine over it. Cf. l. 584.
2 MS. Souereine, with a over ei.
3 MS. hi pat, with ce over i, and g over the p.
4 MS. wightly, with the older spelling withlich over it.
5 MS. wanne, with wh over the w. See "Werwolf," l. 2852.
6 MS. trusty, with i over the u.
7 MS. wax, with o over the a.
PHILOMELUS COMMANDS THE PHOCIANS.

And eiper on hur enemies · egerly wrought.
On a season isett · assembled they bope,
With all pe maine pat they might · metten ifere;
Araide rinkes aright · reulich smiten,
On foote & on faire horsse · fought pei samme.
Priken¹ on a plaine feelde · preeued Knightes,
Bolde were bore doune · on bothe twoo values.
Of Tebes pe trie folke · wer teened in hert,
For hur ferefull fone · so ferslich spedde,
With wrayth of a woode will · wonde ² pei nolde,
To riden into the route · rappes to deale.
Steedes stirred of pe stede · strane men under,
And oother folke on hur feete · folowed them after.
The Lacedemonieins · lowe laide were,
And of Phocus folke · feld they also.
The Tebeneins teenfully · tooke this oper,
And to a riche raunson · pe rinkes they putt,
That amounted [to] more · then they might paye,
Or dereine with right · with rede of peimself,
To profer hem as prisoneres · till they payde had,
To let lopely pat goode · or hur life tine.
Pe companie was carefull · & kest ³ in hur hert,
Pat pei pat raunson with right · arere ne might,
Pei wer so sorowfull himself · that summe to rere,
Pat pei ne spared pat space · to spenen ⁴ hur liues.
A proude Knight of pe prese · hur Prince pei made,
Philomelo ⁵ pe fell man · was pe freke hote,
Pe-folke of Phocus too araie · & pe fight zeme,
With ludes of Lacedemonie · to leggen on hard;
For they kende pe case · & kneew eche one,
But thei prestly payde · that precious summe,
Pei sholde leesen hur life · pei pem lothe thought.

¹ An e over the i.
² MS. wonde, with e over the o.
³ MS. kast, with c over the a; also the e is marked.
⁴ MS. spend, with nen (marked) over the d.
⁵ MS. Philomela, with o over the a; see l. 421.
And 3if ðei ferde 1 to fight • their fone for to nye, 372
With skathe to bee skoumfit • & askape neuer, 
ðei wisten all full well • wisly to knowe, 
That more dreede ðen deth • drie ðei ne might;
As goode thought hem go • till they grounde sought, 376
To meete with hur fomen • & maunlich deie,2
As bee cowardly killd • for cateles want.
Forthe turned thei tid • hur teene to uenge,
All to lachen or leese • or hur lyfe tine.
Full stoutely with stiff will • ðei stirred on hur gate,
To teene ðe Tebenieins • ðei turned to fight. 380
ðei dradden little hur deth • & doughtily wrought,
ðei putt ðen in perril • & prikedaboute,
ðei rought lite of hur life • & laiden on hard;
For sere, ne fantasie • faile they nolde. 384
ðei were so hardie too harm • happes to fonde,
bat ðei bat stint at hur stroke • stirred no more;
So ðei felden hur fone • by force of her dintes.
For greefe of hur grim stroke • grunt full many, 388
bat hem rued ðe res • bat ðei ne rest had,
When ðei ðe bikering abide • with bostefull deedes.
Thus the Phocians win the battle.
þus Phosus3 with fyght • felden this oþer;
ðei tooken hur tresour • & teened hem sore. 392
ðei of Tebes with teene • turnede fro thanne.
Ruefull & redeles • biraft of hur goodes.
In sorowene bene they of-sett • to siken in hert,
3if ðei ne haue none help • hem4 to auenge. 396
Till ðei were wreken of bat wo • wolde ðei nought blinne;
To seeche more socour • assented they all.
They resolve to seek succour.
þe mightie King of Macedoyne • moste was adouted
Of any wight in þe worlde • ðei wist þe soothe. 401

1 MS. farde, with e over the a.
2 MS. dye, with deie (marked) above it. 3 MS. fosus.
4 MS. þem. 5 MS. dis, der; and so is written fo.
To fetch Philip, his folk 

And comen ryght to his kith, 

Bespocht his hym of socour. 

To be Lorde of hur land, 

Phiilomelas had been slain. 

Enomanus, an eger Knight in earth to fight, 

He is duke of Phocis. 

Both sides are ready for battle.

They go to fetch Philip, and proffer him their allegiance.

Philip sets out for Thebes, ready to attack the Phocians.

The Phocians send for help to Athens.

The Lacedaemonians also join them.

Philip gramtes & goe 

Enomanus is chosen leader.

He is duke of Phocis.

Both sides are ready for battle.

To fetch Philip, his folk 

And comen ryght to his kith, 

Bespocht his hym of socour. 

To be Lorde of hur land, 

Phiilomelas had been slain. 

Enomanus, an eger Knight in earth to fight, 

He is duke of Phocis. 

Both sides are ready for battle.

To fetch Philip, his folk 

And comen ryght to his kith, 

Bespocht his hym of socour. 

To be Lorde of hur land, 

Phiilomelas had been slain. 

Enomanus is chosen leader.

He is duke of Phocis.

Both sides are ready for battle.
Bothe blonkes & bournes * baren to grounde.

Per was feld many frekes * pat on pe feelde lay, 436 Many are felled, and wounded wights wallow on the field.

Every segge for hymself * bisetten hur might,

* pat many a wounded wyght * walowed * pere. Philip and his men overcome all they can reach.

But Philip with his wight men * pe were gan 3eme, * pat by strength of her stryfe * pei straught to foote 440

All so many as his menne * mighten areche.

* bus his peple on 3e plain * all 3e pris 2 wonne,

* pat none stirred of 3e stede * pei stroke sett.

* pe ludes of Lacedemonie * loped in hert, 444 Both Lacedemonians

* pat euer pei stinten in stryfe * to sterue in 3e place,

Of Phoces pe ferse men * forthoughten hem all,

* pat euer pei farde to fight * with Philip pe keene.

* bus pis eumlich Kyng * pat ilche kith wynnes ; 448 Thus Philip is lord of

Lorde of Lacedemoine * was 3e lud panne,

And Phoces by sin strokes * frelich hee walte,

And hath all Greece at his graunte * for his grete yie.

Now cease wee 3e sawe * of 3is seg sterne, 452 We now speak of

And of a Kyng wel i-kid * karp wee now,

* pat entred in Ægypt * euer on 3is liue,

To leng in pat Lordeship * & 3e lond aught.

Of what kinne hee comme * can I nought fynde 456 I find nothing about his kindred in any book.

In no buke 3 pat i bed 4 * when I beganne here

* pe Latine to pis language * lelliche turne.

Nectanabus pe noble man * his name was hote,

* pe nede of Nigremauncie * hee nas nought to lern. 460 His name was

In art of Astronomie * able hee was holde,

And cheefe of enchantment * chaunces to tell.

Hee was [kene] on his craft * & cunnyng of deede,

Egipt by eritage * entred hee neuer ; 464 He did not gain

Hee wann it by witchcraft * for y-wis hee was

knowe.5

1 MS. 3em or 3eme; see l. 365.
2 MS. pris, with ce over the s.
3 MS. booke, with u above the oo.
4 MS. bed, with had above it. 5 See the note.
A prince of Persia
comes to
Nectanabus, and
says,

[fol. 12.]

"The king of
Persia is going to
attack you."

Nectanabus does
nothing in
defence,

but secretly fills
an earthen pot
full of rain-water,

By his craft he
sees ships coming,
full of armed
knights,

The prince says,
"Sir, I told you
the truth.

Artaxerxes is
coming with nine
nations,

Persians,
Parthians,
Medians,
Syrians,

A proud Prince & a pris · fro Perss ¹ was fare,
pat helde of pis hye King · hollich his londes.
To noble Nectanabus · nam he his gate,
And tolde this tydyng · to je Kyng soone,
How hym was care to cumme · by costes aboute.
"je Kyng of Perce with presse · of peple full huge
Graithes hym grim folke · & greue you thenketh.²
But yee cast at his comme · to keepen hym hence,
Yee shall lose your lond · & your life also."

For no care of pis case · je King in his lond
Klepèd³ no Knighthod · ne no kid peelepe,
Hee ne araide no route · je raigne too keepe,
But passed priuily · in place full derne.
A prest erpen pott · hee proferes him till ;
Of rain-water ryght full · je rink gon it dress ;
A bright braseyn 3erd · brode on his hond.
And by je conning of craft · pat hee kid hadde,
Hee sawe saile on je sea · seemelich Knightes,
Bothe schipples & schoute[s] · with schawes of myght,
Well i-armed, iwis · werre too holde,
je egerest of Egipt · in ernest too meete.

Whan hee had pat happe · hollich awaited,
je Prince to je pris Kyng · prestly saide,
"Sir, I tolde you trouth · trist ⁴ yee no nooper,
Yee beene greefly bigo · but grace you falle.
Artasarses je Kyng · & armed Knightes,
Oute of Perce beth prest · passing hider,
With nine grete nations · too nye je seen here.
Perce is je principall · & Perthe pat ooper,
Of Medie full mich folke · murder je think ;
Of Syria [a] siker oste · sechen too fight ;

¹ MS. Perss, with ss marked, and e above it.
² MS. you thinketh, with 3 above the y, and e above the i.
³ MS. Kliped, with e above the i.
⁴ MS. trist, with u above the i.
With menne of Mesopotame · too mark þe teene;
Of Augmi & Arabes · armed Princes;
þer beene of Bosorij · beurnes ynow;
Of Arofagi all men · that armes now welde.
Yee bene enforced to fight · with þus fell beurnes,
And ooper weies of þe weste · werre too make;
Þis ilk tydyng of teene · trowe yee mowe,¹
And, but yee bett beene araide · bale you springeth."

Nectanabus anonne right · nyed hym tyll,
And gleming ganielich · too þe gome saide —
"Keepe well thyne owne koste · þat þei no komme
Sare,²
Þat is take too þee · truly too þeme.
Þou kipes no Knighthod · too karp as a Prince,
But as a gome wer agast · þou grendes thy speeeche.
þei þei³ turn such teene · this time hider,
With all þe might of hur maine · mee too distroie, 512
þe uertue of il uictorie · of unwele peeple,
Is noght stabled in strength · of no stiff prese.
Thorou graunte of þe greate God · if him goode thinkes,
In fight or in fell turn · þer⁴ as flight is of dintes, 516
In battail or bolde stede · bigly too wirch,
As mich may a meane man · as a more stern,
For þou seeste well thiself · (saide þe king þan),
A Lioun in a launde · may lightlych drive 520
Of hertes an holle herde · as happes ilome ⁵;
For no strength, ne strife · no stifnes of members,
But as gracious Godde · grauntes too beene."

Anon as Nectanabus · had namned þese wordes,
Hee passed in his Paleis · too a priuie sell,
Hee tooke prestly a pott · too preene yet more.

¹ MS. may, with owe above ay. ² MS. dare, with þ above d.
³ MS. der, for þer; but we must read þei.
⁴ MS. der, with þ above the d. ⁵ Before and above i is wh.
NECTANABUS USES HIS MAGIC ARTS.

He makes ships of wax, and puts rain-water in a pot.

By his sorcery, he sees the god of Barbary floating in the sea, and the god of Egypt sailing there too.

He sees the god of Barbary will not let the people help him.

He shaves off hair and beard, doffs his armour, and dons white sendal.

[Fol. 18.]

His gold and instruments of astronomy he packs up, and passes into Ethiopia, and lives there.

When his men cannot find him, they pray to their god Seraphin. [Serapis.]

He wraught shipps of wax & rain-water hentes; Hee puttes it in pe pott & a palme braunche

Hee helde hard in his hond & his art kipes;¹

With all pe wyle of his werk pe waie gon enchaunte, By segging of sorsery pat hee sei ² pere

Fleece in pe floode farre fro pe lond,

Of Barbre pe bryght God brem too beholde;

pe gaye God of Egipt glisiande bright,

So sailed in pe sea in that same tyme.

Hee behelde how pe God pat heried was in Barbre Gouerned hur goodos by grace of his myght.

He sees the god of Egipt well himself pat soconr him fayles, Barbary will not let the people For no grace hur grete God graunt ne might;

But hee kneew by that kast pei kouth noght help. pe beurn for a barbour bline let send, His berd, heire, & his hedde hett hee too schaue. Hee cast of his Knightweede & elopes hym neew, ⁵⁴⁴ With white sendal in syght seemely too knowe, Of gold swith gret-won graithes hee ⁴ Sanne; All that Astronomie aught too long.

With ginnes of Gemtrie too ioinen his werkes, ⁵⁴⁸ Hee let trusse full tid & takes nomore, But fares with few folke farre fro pe londe.

Hee passes as a Prophet priuely panne Fro Egipt till Ethiope & eft on his gate. ⁵⁵² pere hee lenged in pat land as a lud straunge Men knew hym for no king kunnyng hee seemes. When his menskfull menne might nought fynde Hur ked King in Egipt carefull pei were. ⁵⁵⁶ To hur God Seraphin pe gomes gon all Koure doune on hur knees [&] karpen pese wordes.

¹ MS. kipes, with ee above the i. A p is often (in copies) written by mistake instead of þ.
² MS. sei, with aw above ei.
³ An o is written above the e. ⁴ MS. danne.
"Seemely Seraphin" saide they thanne,
"Tell us sum tydyng of our true Prince,
Noble Nectanabus that now is awaye!"

Hur God grathliche spake & too þe gomes saide,
"Kares nought for your Kyng þis kith hath hee lete,
For peril of þe proude Kyng from Perce þat wendes;
Hee shall hye hym againe & help you faire,
And schend þem schamalich þat sholde you greue."

Of þis swift answer þei wer swith glad,
And graueden a greate ston a God as it were,
I-corue after a Kyng full craftie of werk.
þe frekes in that faire ston at his feete soone
Let write every worde wisly too knowe,
That Seraphin þat Soueraine saide hem till,
In mynde that more folke myght it arede.

Now nolde Nectanabus no while dwell,
Too þe Courte of þe Kyng till hee comme were,
Too looke on Olympias þe onorable Queene,
þat was alosed in lond of diueres raignes,
For one þe brightest of blee þat bore was in erth.
Whan þe seg had scene that seemely Ladie,
Too greete þat gracious hee gose in a haste,
Hee cummes too þat comely & cofflich saide:
"Haile! quemfull Queene quaintly shape!"
Moste of all Macedoine menskfull Ladie!"
Hee was dedaine on his deede "Madame" too segge
Too any Ladie in lond for lordlich hee karpes.
þe Queene quitt hym his speche & quikly saide,
"Maister, welcome, ywis will[e] yee sitte?"
þe Ladie laches þis lude & ledes in hand;
By hur side þat seg too sitten hue makes.
þat worthlych too þis wight wilsfully saide:
"Fro what kith bee yee comme kennes mee now;
Ert þou aught of Egipt in ernest too tell?"
NECTANABUS TALKS WITH OLYMPIAS.

"Queen, you please me. I am glad when I hear of Egypt.

The men of Egypt understand dreams, and the language of birds.

I am an Egyptian prophet."

"Tell me what thrilled thy thought at seeing me?"

"A bright god hath sent me to save thee from sorrow."

When hee with speeche had spoke · his speeche to pe end,

He fetches a brass tablet set in ivory, and decked with gold and silver.

Three circles were set in it. In the first were the twelve signs of the Zodiac.

In the second was ·

1 MS. worchich. Cf. I. 1024.

2 MS. lude ne.

3 MS. bone, with a second o above the o.
His Astrolabe and Horoscope.

Was crafely conteined · pe course of pe sonne;
And pe mark of pe moone · made in pe third,
pat bliss was for a beurn · pat borde too biholde.
pan fettes hee a forcer · freelich ishape,
pat wrought was of iuory · wonderly faire;
Seuin sterres pat stounde · stoutlich imaked,
Hee showes forthe scheinely · slynd and bright.
pe bern south perby · boldely tell,
When a gome were igett · by grace of his witt.
Foure stones in fath · forthe gon hee bryng,
pat lay longyng · too the louelich sterres;
Many thinges of man · myght hee showe,
By studie 2 of pe stones · in what state hee were.

"Maister," quath pe Queene · "quainte of thy werkes,
If pee liketh pat I leeue · thy lufsum deedes,
Tell mee tidly pe time · & term of pe zeres,
In what daie my dere Lorde · pat douhti is holde,
Was iborne of pe burd · pat hee best loued?"

Hee King by his kunnynge · castes it soone;
By gynnes of Gemetrie · hee ioifully telles
Bothe pe date, & pe daie · & pe dere tyme,
pat Philip was forth brought · of his faire mooder.
When this rink had arad · & redely showed,
All pe burth of pe bern · by his art one,

"Ladie," saide hee, "louelyche · liketh pee aught eles,
pat I shoolde pee showe · in a short time?"
"Maister," saide pat menskfull · "mee likes too knowe,
What Philip my free lorde · pat fairest of londe,
Wil wirch by mee? · for weies mee tolde,
Hee wyll forsake mee soone · & seeche hym a neew,
When hee is cumme too pis kith · too kithe mee sorowe."

For yee ne hane nought i-herd · holly pe wrath,
By what cause pe Kyng · coueted in hert

1 Sic. Read "feip." 2 MS. studie, with i above the u.
Once Philip went to the temple of Ammon, and said,

"What will happen to Olympias?"

"She will have a child, the greatest man on earth.

He will not be thine."

Therefore was Philip wrathful against her.

Nectanabus answers, "It is uncertain.

[Fol. 15."

When Philip has forsaken you, he will have to take you back again."

"Who will be so bold as to make him do so?"

"A god shall

Too lope this Ladie mee list you tell.
As Philip farde to fight in a fierce place,
H ee turned too a temple atired too-rightes,
His grete God Amon grates too zelde;
H ee knees cfish adounce & kries hym till,
And saide, "Seemely God send mee too knowe,"
Of onorable Olympias pat I on think, 664
What shall hur happe to haue pat hende is of deede?"
His God gaue an ansuer & too je gome saide,
"Hur chaunce is too haue a childe pat cheefe shall in erth
Of any ludes pat liue in Lordship wex.
pe bern shall not bee Sine 1 bolde po jou seeme,
But geten of a-nooper gome in pat gaye burde."
pen was pe King carefull & kest2 for wrath
For too bring pat beurde in baile for ever.
Menne tolde this tydyng too pe true Queene,
perefore hur lyked pat lud his lore too knowe.——

"Now," saide Nectanabus anon too pe Lady, 675
"pe sawe pat jou haste saide uncertain is founde;
But S e i 3 jou ne hap noght yet too haue pat sorowe,
pat fere shall bifall pe within few yeres.4
When Philip in his foule will ha thee pat for-lete,
Maugre his malice or his menne sterne,
Him tides to take pee again trowe jou no nooder."
" Maister," quod pe Queene "queme yee me might,
Of this unkouth case too karp pe soothe.
When Philip pe ferefull forsake mee thanykes,
Who durst bee so bolde pat bides in erth,
Too make hym, maugre his menne mee for too take?"
Jhus saide pe seg "Such one I knowe;
A God pat is gracious & grete of his myght. 688

1 MS. pine; but above the p is a 8 without the cross stroke.
2 Over the c in kest is a.
3 MS. dei, with though above it as a gloss.
4 Catchword—When Philip.
NECTANABUS DESCRIBES THE GOD AMMON.

Shall busk too thy borde bed · by pē too ligge,
And fro this harmfull happe · help pē faire.”

pē Ladie full louely · of pē lud askes,
“Which dereworthye dright · desires mee too haue?”

his King carpes anon · & costly saide,
“He is noght yonge of his yeres · pāt yernes pē take,
Nōp̄er olde of his age · but onely too showe,
In a meane maner · mightfull he seemes.
Hee hath hye on his hed · horns of syluer,
With golde gailye begonne · glisiing bright,
With here on his hedde · & his herd also.
Hee wyll nye [pē] too-night · & neede pē bīhoues
Bee full prest too his paie · & profer pē faire.”

“If I may trowe thy tale · trulich,” hue saide,
“I shall hilich [pē] herie · with hert and wyll,
Nōght praise pē as a Prophet · pāt passeth in londe,
But as a gracious Godde · greate I pē thynk,
And bileue on thy lore · all my lifetime.”

Ban nolde Nectanabus · no lenger abide,
But gothe too a greene grounde · pēre grases wer sett;
Farre fro pē Paleis · hee fares all alone,
And laches in a launde · full louely wortes.
Hee grindes hem grathly · & gripes in honde,
Hee wringes oute pē wet was · and went on his gate.
Hee passed into pē Paleis · in a preeuy wyse.
When it drewe too pē dërk · & pē daie slaked,
̄pe burd busked too bedde · & brought was on slepe,
̄his King with his conning · kithes his werkes,
With wiles of witchcraft · & wicked deedes,
̄pāt by fauour of pē fende · & his foule craftes
Hee grathes hym as a God · & gothe too pē burde ·
As hue slumbred on slepe · silīch hee wendes,
̄And lyeth by pāt Ladie · pāt louely was holde.
When hee his will had wraught · hee wendes in haste,
And straihte oute of pē stede · with a stiff wyll.

come to thy hel, and thus shalt thou have help.”

“What god will that be?”

“He is neither old nor young.

On his head are silver horns.

He will be nigh thee to-night.”

“If it comes true, I shall not praise thee as a prophet,
but greet thee as a god.”

Nectanabus goes alone to gather worts,
[Fol. 15 b.] and wrings out of them the wet ooze.

At dusk, Olympias goes to bed.

Nectanabus arrays himself as a god,
and goes to her, and soon returns.
NECTANABUS ASSUMES THE FORM OF AMMON.

She awakes in wonder.

\[\text{Pan \ bé burde in her bed \cdot brade of hur slepe,} \]
And whan shee wakyng was \cdot shee wondred in hert.

Hue mett on \pe midnight \cdot of mirth full riue,\(^1\)

\[\text{Pat grete God Amon \cdot gan piper wend,} \]
And had seemelich issett \cdot siluern hornes, \(^728\)

And bright blased his blee \cdot as a brend glede.

\[\text{Pen was Amon ywis \cdot of worship a-losed,} \]
And igrett for a God \cdot gretest in lond.

Hee was ishape as a sheepe \cdot shinand bright, \(^732\)

I-painted full prisly \cdot & precious stones

Wer sticked on \pat stock \cdot stoute too beholde.

All \pe ludes of \pe lond \cdot Lordes & eles

Set hym for soueraine \cdot \peir sokour too beene, \(^736\)

And saide \pere sacrifice \cdot in selkouth times.

\[\text{Panne or-trowed Olympias \cdot \pe onorable Queene,} \]
\[\text{Pat hee neihed \pat night \cdot nye too her syde,} \]
And fonded hur fleshlych \cdot or hee fare wolde. \(^740\)

Whan hee in his lykyng \cdot \pat Ladie lauht had,

Hur seemed in \pat same stede \cdot \pat hee saide after,

\[\text{"Worldly wooman \cdot well may \pere lyke,} \]
\[\text{For thy keeper of care \cdot is conceiued now."} \]

\[^744\]

A morowe on \pe mirie daie \cdot \pis menskfull Queene

Arises up redely \cdot and a rink sendes

Anon too Nectanabus \cdot & needely hym pрайes,
\[\text{Pat he cosly comme \cdot too carpen her tyll.} \]
\[\text{Pan laft \pis lud \cdot noght long ther-after,} \]

But camme too \pat louely \cdot too kenne of her lore.

\[\text{Pe Queene tolde hym till \cdot pe tales too \pe ende,} \]
Of her dereworth dreme \cdot \pat draihte hur in slepe, \(^752\)

And hue saide too \pat seg \cdot "Soothe oper eles

\[\text{3if it were, I ne wott \cdot for wislich I slept,} \]
\[\text{When I \pat sweuene so sweete \cdot swiftly mette."} \]

\[\text{"Nay," saide Nectanabus \cdot "ne trowe \pou no nooper,} \]
\[\text{756 \pis ilk sawe was soothe \cdot \& certain iprooued.} \]

\[\text{1 MS. riue, with \f above \ue.}\]
For if you lene mee leue · too leng biside,
for too stand in a stede · of a straite place,
Too waite at a windowe · & warn pee after, 760
I shoolde trie pee truthe · & tell pee soone,
Wheper i faithfull or falss · founde thy sawe.
For I warne pee well · with worship & ioye,
Hee wyll pee nye too-nyght · in a neew fourne.
In dreme as a dragoun · dreche hee pee thenkes,
And sithen shewe hym hee shall · a shawe as it were,
Mich liche 1 too mee · by mark of my face.”
“Sir,” saide pat seemelich · “pee sawes bee mirye, 768
pee shal stond in a stede · still biside;
3if it bee certain & soothe · piself shall i chese,
Too faper pee free · that I forth bryng.”
pee burd bad hastely · by hur boure side,
pee burd bad hastely · by hur boure side, 772
pat swich 2 a place 3 were prest · too prooue pee truthe.4

Whan pee leme & pee light · of pee leefe sonne
Was idrawne adowne · & dym were cloutes,
pee Ladie lay on hur bed · & lysted too slepe, 776
And this wonderfull weie · waites his place ;
Hee stooed still on pee stede · & stirred no foote.
And slely, when pee first slepe · slaked on wightes,5
Hee chases by, enchauntement · pee chamber within,
And with a dragones drem · dreew too pee bedde.
pee hee meenes too hur mouthe · & makes his lidene,
And kisses pat cumly · & kithes his wyll ;
And sithen hee seemed a seg · hymself as it were, 784
And spake too her speedily · these speciall wordes ;
“On pee is getten a gome · pee grimmest in erth,
Pee all weies in pee worlde · worship shall.”
pee quaintely pis Queene · was quened with gyle, 788

---

1 MS. liche, with ke above che.
2 MS. swich, with u above the wi.
3 MS. place, with is over ce; perhaps the older copy had pleas.
4 Catchword—Whan ee leme of ee liue of ee leue sonne.
5 MS. nightes, with w above n.
And wend gamene with a God · gracious of might,
Whan a libbing lud · lay in hur armes.
 Pis rink, or pe sometime rist · romes a morowe,
And passes in pe Paleis · prestlich hym one.
And far forthe on pe daye · when pe faire burde
Had long pere layne · & had lyst too ryse,
Dereworth damseles · drownen 1 them pijer;
Too serue pat seemely · pei setten hur hondes.

Whan hue was redie araid · & riall on sight,
Hue sendes soone for pe segge · & saide pese wordes,
"Menskfull maister · makeles of witt,
Tell mee now truly · & targe2 no lenger,
What kid King Philip · pat keene is of hert,
Deemes with mee too doo · mee dreedes it sore?"
pe lud too this Lady · full louely saide,
"Of Philip haue pou no fere · for faitly too knowe,
Amon pe grete God · by graunte of my Boone,
Schall pee wisse fro wo · & wreche of his teene."3

[1] MS. drownen, with cow above owen.
[2] Above the ge is ie.

Philip, by his enchantment,
Philips Extraordinary dream.

What he saw on his sight: his seemely make,
How what louelich lif: laide was a bedde,
And a gracious God: gripte hur in armes.

He lay by what Lady: his liking hee wrought;
And whan his dece 1 so deerne: doone was in haste,
Amiddes hur membre: too maken it close,
Hee sawe hym sowen 2 a seme: by seeming of sweuens,
And with a gaie golde ring: hee gan it asele;
A ston stiked perein: stoutlich igraxe;
What cast of what sonne course: was corue perein;
A little liones hed: louelich ishape,
With a swith faire swerd: sweetelich imaked,
Was isett on what sell: what seme all amiddes.

When Philip on what forthe daie: first gan arise,
Hee cliped hym his clerkes: full conning of witt,
Full noble Nigremanciens: pæn 3 [nyed] hee in has te,
What kouth such sweuens: swiftly arede.
Hee minges his metyng: amonges hem all,
And what it might bee too meane: what menne gan hee ask.

His enchauntiour cheefe: what pæ chaunce herde,
Too what cumly Kyng: what che chap these wordes,
And saide, "Sir, forsoothe: thy seemely make
By a gracious God: shall go with childe.

What prent what was i-put: on hur priuie membre
With what gaie golde ring: graue too-rightes,
What leue liones hed: what laide was amid,
As mich amounteth too meane: as I may tell,
When hur barn is ibore: bolde shall hee wex,
And bee kid for a King: kene of his deedes.
As what lioun is Lorde: of liuing beastes,
So what ludes in what lond: alouten him shall.

What sonne course 4 of what sell: sinifeth also,
What hee shall fare as farre: as any freke dwelles.

1 MS. deene, an obvious error. See note.
2 MS. sowen, with ow above owen.
3 Over the p is d, for d.
4 MS. courses; see l. 831.
And right too þe sonne rist 1 · his raigne shall last.
þe swerd sweetlich inade · in sweuen too rede, 856
Bitokneth full treewly · in times here-after,
þat hee shall grow full grim · & graithlich 2 winne,
With stern strokes of swerd · & striuing of dintes,
Bothe boldes & borou[es] · & bern[es] to his will, 860
And seemely cities · as soueraine in erth."

Philip saide, "Forsoofe þe mee seemed þat tyme,:
That I sawe þe God · go graith too hur bedde.
Whan hee his will had wrought · 'Woman,' he saide,
'Thy keeper is conceived · thy comefort too bene, 865
þat þee & Philip þe free · of fone shall auenge.'"
"Sir," said þe enchauntiour · "soothely too mene,
Whan þe God gan speake · too þe gaie beurde, 868
How hue conceiued had · þe help of hur teene,
Faire Philip & hur · freely too keepe,
þat is wisly too witte · hee will you defend
Fro paines & peril · þat perce þee ne shall." 872
Of this mirie meting · well may þou lyke,
Of swiche 3 happes so hende · 'herde I nere tell.'

---

1 MS. rist, with e above i, making rest, which is wrong (l. 791).
2 MS. has a gloss, greatly, which is wrong.
3 MS. swiche, with u above wi.
4 MS. has an s above the c.
5 A d above the p.
6 Above sight is written sute.
The Dragon Fights for Philip.

As when he farde tofore • too pe faire Queene,

Pan hee farde in pat fight • as hee folke sleew,
And brutned in that battle • buernes ynow. 888 and fights for Philip.

For dreede of pis dragoun • menne drewem pence,
And fell doune in pe feelde • fenked in haste.

Pe dreede of pis dragoun • pat drof menne fence,
And fell doune in feelde • fenked in haste.

Philip after pis fight • in a foule time, 900 Philip's progress

Was going too [ride] ouer Greece • as a grete Prince. 3

Pe armed Attenieins • aunteied hym till,
Pei wern ware of his comme • & his waie stoppes.

Pe King kipes 4 his grim • too keuener him gate, 904
But all his werk was in waste • pei werned his thoughtes. 5

For hee ne sholde hem shend • & shamelich take

Hur seemely cities • too sorowen hem all,

Enforced were pe entres • with egre men fele,

Pat hee ne might in pat marche • no maner wend.

Whan pe seg sawe well • no sokour ne speede,

He was gretely agrise 6 • & greeued in hert,

For hee ne might in po men • his malice kith. 912

To Tebes & Tessalonie • pat truly hym holpe,

1 MS. droue, with f above ue.

2 MS. loren, with ne above en.

3 This line is corrupt; see note.

4 MS. keepes, with i above ve; the p being obviously miswritten

for p, as elsewhere. Cf. l. 529.

5 Catchword—"For he ne sholde."

6 MS. agrise, with d above the e to the right.
PHILIP'S TREACHERY TO THE THEBANS.

Hee went as a woode man \* his wrath too auenge.
Whan hee comma too \* pat coste \* pei kepten hym faire,
And gon too hur gates \* & grathlich hem openes, 916
And lete pe rink riden in \* with his route sterne ;
And weies hym welcomes \* with worship & ioye.
pei trowed no tresoun \* untruly too haue ;
But Philip pe ferefull \* faire thei grette,
And lete hym prik with his prese \* in hur pris holds.
As soone as pe seg \* was pe citie within,
Hee, wrathfull [of] wille \* wronglich pare,
Hee lete catch pe King \* & kyllen hym soone, 924
And his Princes of price \* prestlisch hee quelde.
Douhtie Dukes with doole \* too deth gon hee bryng,
And ooper Lordes of lond \* liuelles hee made.
Hee brende holdses \* borous \* & beurnes therin, 928
And all went too wo \* pat they with mett.
As mich as Philip tofore \* hem frendship wrought,
Whan hee fought for pem \* & Phocus distriede, 1
As mich maugre & more \* hee marked hem after, 932
Too be-traie them untruly \* pat trusten hym till.
On weies & women \* awrak hee his teene,
And solde them too seruise \* in sorowe too liue,
And robbed of riches \* all pe riche tounes. 936
bus hee wrought pat wrong \* with wreche of his anger,
For teene of pe Attenieins \* pat turned him too kepe. 2
Whan hee pis cursed case \* unkyndely wrought,
Hee ne laft no leng[er] \* in that lond pan. 940
For too fonde more fight \*his folke gan hee leade,
And fares too a countrie \* with Knightes ynow,
here a citie was sett \* seemely & noble, 944
pat Cappadoce was cleped \* a full kid place.
Many doughtie of deed \* dwelt pevin,
pat wern fresh too fight \* & fell of hur deedes.
Philip bedes hem biker \* & biddes pem yeelde

1 MS. distroide, with ie above oi.
2 Catchword—"When he dis kursede case."
Philip returns home.

Philip returns home.

At last he takes the town.

He returns home.

The queen receives him.

Philip says she has done amiss.

Yet no great blame is hers, for he had learnt in a dream all about her.

Philip makes a rich feast.

It betid in a time · tidly therafter, 

Philip made of folke · a feaste full ryche.

All his Princes of price · praised hee thider, 976

And ooper Lordes of lond · ne laft hee none.

Whan hee is fare fro fight · his folke for too feaste,

In Macedoine with his men · this mirth hee made.

As soone as pei were sett · & serued too-rightes, 980

1 MS. it it.
THE DRAGON COMES TO PHILIP'S FEAST.

Nectanabus by Nigremauncie • neew hym attires,  
And in a dragouns drem • hee drew to pe halle.  
Hee comme first too pe King • & too pe kid Queene,  
And sithen hee buskes aboute • pe bordes echone,  
Hee drouned as a dragon • dredefull of noyes,  
bat all pe gomes were arisge • of his grim sight.  
Jan farde hee forthe • too pe faire Queene,  
And hee holdes his hed • right in hur lappe,  
And kisses pat cumly • in knoweing of all.  
Philip saide too his fere • freely pese wordes,  
"Dame, of this dragoun • I doo pee too knowe,  
And every liuand lud • pat lenges herin,  
In a brem battail • abrode in pe feelde,  
When I was greefly bigo 1 • with a grim peele,  
Hee comme flie too feelde • & my fone schende,  
bat I was holpe by hym • hem too distrie."  
Whan pis tale was told • & tended of all,  
pe dragoun drew him awaie • with drift of his winges.

In a somer seasoun • soone therafter,  
As Philip satt by hymself • soothe for too tell,  
A faire breeding brid • bremlich went,  
And in pe lappe of pat lud • louely hee sittes.  
Or pis freelich foule • farde of pe place,  
Hee bredde an ai on his barm • & braides him pan.  
Philip wondred was • of this werk quainte,  
And satte still on pe stede • stirred no foote.  
pe ai fell on pe flore • in the frekes sight,  
And pe shell to-shett • on pe schire grounde.  
When it cofli too-clef 2 • per crep oute an addre,  
And buskes full boldely • aboute pe shell.  
When this worme 3 had went • wislich aboute,  
Hee wolde haue gliden in againe • graithlich & soone.

1 MS. bigo, with ne above o to the right.  
2 MS. too clef, with eue above f.  
3 MS. worme, with wrom above it; no doubt the older MS. had wrom.
AN ADDER COMES OUT OF AN EGG-SHELL.  209

But or hee had in his hed · hee hastily deide,¹ 1013 but dies before it can creep in again.
And Drew nere too his denne · but deide bi-side.
Philip for pis ferlich · fast gan wende
To noble Nigremauncieins · pat hym nyh were, 1016 It means that his son shall be a great conqueror,
And asked hem an answer · pis aunter too reede,
For cheef of enchauntment · chosen pei were.

"Sir," saide one enchauntiour · "your seemely make
Shall bere such a barn · in a brem tyde, 1020 it means that his son shall be a great conqueror,
pat by might of his maine · & maistrie of Kingses,
All so wide as pis worlde · shall wehlen his raigne.²

When hee aboute hath ibene · abrode in pe londes,
And iwonne at his will · pe wortlych³ places, 1024 but will die before reaching home.
pee kith pat hee comme fro · or hee com till,
Hee shall bee doluen & ded · as destenie falles.
As pee addre of pee ai · auntoed aboute,
And wolde haue shoten in pee schell · or hee schent were, 1028
So shall fare by pee freke · pat ferre may bee knowe.

When hee hath reigned a roum · as richest of all,
Or hee may too his marche · with his maine wende,
pee hee was fostred & fed · him falles too dye." 1032

Now will I cease pis sawe · & segge you more
Of hym pat hight Alisaunder · holly pee birth.⁴

[A portion of the story being here lost, the omission is supplied from a French prose text of a similar type.]

Le terme de l'effantement la royne approchoit, et lui commençoit le ventre moult a douloir. Si fist appeller Nectanebuz et lui dist : "J'ai grant douleur en mon ventre." Nectanebuz compta l'heure et lui dist : "Sousleve toy, royne, ung poy de ton siege, car

¹ MS. deide dyed, and deide is marked.
² Above the a is an e.
³ MS. wortlych, with worthy above it. Cf. l. 596.
⁴ Here follows the catchword—"Swiche fortune fel," but the next leaf is blank. For an account of the piece here inserted to complete the sense, see the note.
COMMENT ARISTOTE APRENT A ALIXANDRE LES SEPT ARS.

Apres, il fu de aage pour mettre à l’escole. Le roy Philippe lui fist mettre et plusieurs autres enfans gentilzhommes avec lui, lequel enfant les surmontoit tous de toutes choses en lettres et en paroles. Et aussi fait il en ysnelette et en vigueur. Dont il advint,

1 MS. deux.
ALEXANDER LEARNS TO BEAR ARMS.

quant il eut xii ans, il fu si aprins des sept ars par Aristote, le meilleur qui oncques feust, que il ne treuvoit homme qui tant en seust comme il faisoit. Quant Alixandre ot xii ans accomplis, on lui bailla escuiers sages et congoissans, qui avoient este par le pais et par les terres, et avoient use toute leur vie les armes. Et ceux l'aprinrent et enseignerent si bien de toutes choses qui aux armes appartenoient, que il en toutes choses seurmontoit ses compaignons. Quant le roi Philippe congnut la grant vigueur qui estoit en luy, si lui dist: "Filz Alixandre, je ayme moult la ysnellete de ton corps et le soutil engin de ton courage. Mais tristre suis que ta semblance ne ressemble à la mienne."  

"Quant ce ouy la royne Olimpias, si se doubta moult, et appella Nectanebuz, et lui dit :]

"Master on molde · what may mee befall? Of Philip sore am I aferd · for his fell speeche, 1036
For hee sayed too my soonne · in syght of myne yie, Hee was purlich payed · of his prise werkes, But hee chaunged his chere · & too pe chylde sayed, 'That pow ne art lyke mee, lude · mee lykes full yll ;'
Therfore my mynde & my moode · is marred 2 too care, For his woorde am I wrought · wofull in hert.” 1042
"Queene,” quoth Nectanabus · [care pou no more,3]
For the sake of thy soonne · [pat schal saue pe at nede.”3]  

The Lude looked on-loft · late on an eeue, 1045
And on a starre too stare · hee stynt full long, Hee hoped to haue there · of his hertes desyres; Too catche sum cunnyng · hee kest up his yie. 1048
When Alisaunder pat sawe · hee sayed full soone, "Father, wherfore · is pat farly too tell,

1 MS. moye.
2 MS. maried, with r above i.
3 Two half-lines are here lost, and are supplied from conjecture; blank spaces are left for them in the MS.
Alexander asks him to point out his favourite star.

He says he must wait till midnight.

He asks if he knows his own fate.

"Yes, my son will kill me."

Nectanabus goes down beside a ditch.

He points out the planets.

That thou lookest on-loft so long at his tyme?"

"Soone," sayed he segge "in syght I beholde
A brem sterre & a bryght that mee best lykes."

"Leene fader," quoth he freke "fonde I, mee tell,
The sterre pat yee staren on sticketh it in heuin?"

"Yea, forsoothe, deare soone" sayed hee than,

"It is in heuin full by beholde who-so myght."

"And may yee, syr," sayed he chylde "by sum maner wise,

Schowe mee schortly in shape pat schyning sterre?"

"Yea, wooste you see, my soonne in certeyn tymes,
The inkest howre of pis nyght ny by my syde,
Withoute pe citie," he sayed "in certeyn places,

So, lo! myghtst ou see pat seemely sterre!"

"That ilk for to see" he sayed, "I desyre,
And I shall wend thee with when pee well lykes.

But canst jou by any craft kenne mee now

What death dry jou shalt by destinie shape?"

"Yea," soonne, sayed hee po "in certein I knowe,
That I shall drye pe death in dreedefull dedes stoundes,
By encheson of my chylde such chaunce shall fall;
But whan, wott I not well ne in what place."

Nectanabus in pat nyght as hym neede thought,
Passeth forthe priuely pe Paleis without,
Hee gooth downe by pe dyche pat deepe was of grounde,
Euyll it is of syght the walles besyde.

["Sone," sayde Nectanabus "see 3ond pe sterres.]

Joyfull Jupiter Myrthfull Mercurie,
The leame of his lyght lykes well my hert!
So hee stynted pat stounde & styrrred no foote,
Hee pored on pe planetes pass ere hee woolde.

1 MS. Leue, with he above ne.
2 Here follows a half-line out of place, "the walles besyde," the line "Euyll it is of syght" being left incomplete.
3 A line is here lost.
Hee braides too pe bank · of pe brode water,
By pe shoulderes hym tooke · & shift hym in myddes,
With a wrathfull wyll · these woordes hee sayed:
"Wretched worldly wyght · why wylst pou knowe
The priuittie of planetes · or precious starres,
Syn pou art erthly thyself? · in an yll tyme
Kaughtst pou in pat craft · cunnyng of happes
Let them pat in heuin bee · knowe hy thynges;
That lore longes too Godde · & too no lud eles,
Thow pat worldly art wraught · thy wytt pou bisett
On every erthly thyng · & ern pou nomore!"
The segge sayed this sawe · souk or hee wer,
"Truthe haue I pee tolde · in tymes ypassed"—
And with pat sawe pe soule · fro pe seg hee partes.
Alisaunder anonne · ryght armed in hert,
Hee did hym downe too pe dyche · as hee no dreede
had;
Hee sprainde in a sprite · & spradde it aboute,
[And caus vp pe cors · and cayres to pe queene.] ¹
"Saye mee, seemely · sunne, what pou bryngst?"
"Ich haue broght," quoth pe burn · "a ded body here,
That noble Nectanabus · too name was hote."
"Sunne," sayed pat seemelich · "my sorowe is pe more!"
"It is thy foule fowlye · pat this fare wrought,
Your carefull conscience · yee casten so large,
That yee wern no wyght · but wyrch as yee lyst." 1105
The Queene quoth nought againe · but quickly & soone
Too burye pat burn · pe beurd gan heate.
Of this lyueles lud · ne lyst mee tell,
Of hym I cease my sawe · & seche too more.

Ther was a Prince full price · of powre y-holde,
Keeper of Cappadoce · that Kyng Philip aught.
A huge horsse & a hy · hee had that tyme,
The moste seemely in syght · pat euer seg wyst.
¹ A line is here lost, and supplied from conjecture.
DESCRIPTION OF BUCEPHALUS.

There was a horse that fed on men.

He was kept chained up.

Messengers took him to Philip as a present.

Philip has a cave built for him.

[Fol. 18 b.]

Traitors were thrown to him to eat.

Philip dreams, that whoever tames the horse will be king of Macedon.

Hee bore a hedde as a bole \* y-brested to-ryght,
And had hard on his hedde \* hornes y-grow,
Menne wern his meate \* that hee moste looued; 1116
for as many as hee myght \* murdre hee woolde.
Hee was byglich ybownde \* on bothe twoo halues,
Bothe his chaule \& his chynne \* with chaynes of yren;
Many lockes wer laft \* his legges aboute,
That hee nas loose in no lime \* ludes to greene,
To byte, ne to braundise \* ne to break no wowes.
for hee so myghty was made \* in all maner thynges,
Of such a body as hee bore \* pe blonke so sterne,
Was neuer steede in no stede \* fat stynt upon erth.
[\* A caue he comanded \* to coynt men inou3,]2
Dupe 3 as a dunioun \* dyked in erth,
All about bygge \* with barres of yren.

Therfore pe Kyng had cast \* too kepe pat steede,
In pat cane craftely \* enclosed with gynne.

For if a trayter wer y-take \* in tyme thereafter,
Or any thriftles theefe \* for thynges accused,
They shoolde bee cast in pat caue \* too pat kene blonk,
And bee deuoured with doole \* as pe doome woolede.
Anon as ever pe nyght \* nyied on erth,
Philip farde too bedde \& fell on a sleepe.

Of a myghtfull Godde \* hee mett pat tyme,
That on his bedysde satt \* \& his sawe tolde—
"Who prickes 4 on a playne feelde \* pe perelous beaste,
Hee shall raigne as a ryng \* ryall \& noble, 1145

1 This line occurs in the MS. two lines higher up, clearly out of place.
2 A line is here again lost, and supplied from conjecture.
3 MS. Dupe, with ee above u.
4 MS. Tho pricked, which is unintelligible.
When Alisaun
der was of age as I shall tell, 1148

He knew Latin.

Alexander was now 15.

He enters the
cave.

The horse licks
Alexander's

hands.

Some Athenians
see the horse
lying amid men's
bones.

1 MS. Deepe, with u above ce; see l. 1132.

2 Indistinct and uncertain.
That hee nas fast in no soote · before ne bihynde.
Therof pe blonk was blythe · & blainte no furre
But meeke was of maneres · without mischaunce.
Was nere lambe in no land · lower of chere,
No hownde to his hous-lorde · so hende to queme,
bat was leuer to lyke · pe lude bat hym aught,
hen was pe blonk to pe beurn · bat hym bistint.
Pan wendes pis weih · pe caue withoute,
And pe hors with his hand · hendely brings.
Soone hee leapes on-loft · & leti hym worthe,
To fare as hym lyst faine · in feelde or in towne.
The steede strauht on his gate · & stired hym under,
And wrought no wod res · but his wave holds.
When sire Philip gan see · pe seg so too ryde,
And his blonk behelde · abated of wrath,
Of pe michel meekenes · marueil hee had,
That pe steede so stern · stynt of his fare.
He sayde, "Sonne Aksaunder · of pis same chaunce
Iche had mynde in my slepe · by metyng fownde.
A greate glisiande God · grathly mee tolde,
That pou shalt raigne when I rotte · on my ryche londes."
"Faper," sayde pe freke · "if pou foreknowes
That I shall leade thy landes · when thy life endes,
Let mee be proued as Prince · in pres where I wend,
And fende mee finliche well · to fonde my strength."

Of this bounden beaste · blynne [we pe] speche,
Of King Philip pe keene · karp wee now.
When Philip had with his folke · faren on Greece,
And taken tresure ynough · in townes full riche,
Hee hurd tell of a towne · thriftily walled,
A citie sett by peece with full siker wardes,
Byzaunce pe bolde sted was pe borowe hote;
None better hym aboute pat any beurn wyst.
It was chosen for cheefe to cheffiren in,
And many merchauantes per-in pat much goode aught.
All pe Lordes of pe lond pat large was founde,
Helde it hur cheefe holde when happe camme of warre.

Many menne of pe caste of merchauantes ynow,
Wer brought to pe borowe too biggen & sell.
No deaufte nas founde in pat faire place,
On euery syde pe sea of-souhte the walles.
Pausanias a pris King none prester ifounde,
While hym lasted his lyfe on his lond riche,
Let build pe borowe too byde therin,
When hee was ferkid with fyght of his fone grimme.

That bolde borou Byzance pat buylld was to-rihtus,
Was called syn in pat cose Constantinoble,
Of Roome a riche Emperour pat reigned sythe,
Constantine hee was cleped a Knyght well alosed,
The somne of saint Elaine pe seemelich Ladie,
That weihes worshipen yet for hur werk hende,
A neew name too pat borowe hee named pan,
And called it Constantinople pat knownen is wyde.
For pat stalworthe sted so strong was founded,
Philip hoped pat holde with his help to wynne,
For too keepe in that kith cumlich & riche
All his tresour ytryed for, in tresoun or gyle,
That none robbed pe rink of pesse riche thynges.
Philip with his forefull folke fast hym arayes,
For too prouen his pride at pe pris borowe.

1 MS. of souhte, with f above the s, and also saftie above the latter part of souhte.
2 MS. Constantinople, with b above the p; see Werwolf, l. 1425.
3 MS. wightes, with weihes (marked) above it.
4 MS. For Ph.; but we must omit this second For.
PHILIP ATTACKS BYZANTIUM.

For the rydes pe Kyng with his route huge,
And hath pe citie besett on sydes aboute;
On floode & on faire loud his folke gan hee sett, 1239
3if hee myght derie with dint pat dereworthe place.
This seg biseeged so pe citie full long,
With all pe mane pat hee myght made his assautes,
But all pe ludes pat hee ladde for loue ne for aie,
No myght apeire pe place of a penny brede. 1244
For pat freelich freke as I fore tolde,
The kid Knight Pausanias pat King was of Spart,
That borowe in his best state let build so strong,
That all pe wightes in pe worlde it wynne ne myght,
But 3if fode lacked too ludes within. 1249

* * * * *

[The next page is blank, and the rest is wanting.]

For an account of the continuation of the story, see the note at the end of the "Notes to Alisaunuer," and consult the Preface.

*M. S. awe, with aie above it.
NOTES TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE."

P. 1. The first quire of the MS. consisted of 12 folios, or 6 pairs of leaves. Of these the three outer pairs have been slit up the back, which has occasioned the loss of the first three leaves, and of the tenth, which was once joined on to the third. The eleventh and twelfth are fastened in merely by their edges. The part omitted by the loss of fol. 10 corresponds to 144 lines of the French text, whilst the first three missing leaves correspond only to 186 lines of the same. This is to be accounted for, most probably, by the fact that the English translator did very much as he pleased, in some places following his original closely, in others condensing the story, and in others again giving us descriptions and explanations entirely, as it would appear, of his own invention. See note to l. 3.

P. 2. Of the later French prose version of the story a short specimen may suffice, as it is obviously inferior to the old version in rime.

The following corresponds to ll. 18—32 on pages 1 and 2:—

A considerable portion of the commencement of the story is repeated in the English version near the end—(ll. 4624—4806)—where we find Embrons, Gloriande, and Acelone named Ebroons, Gloriouns, and Achillones. A perusal of this repetition of the story gives us a very fair idea of the way in which the English translator must have begun his poem. Ebroons died soon after the affair with the Werwolf, and his brother too (I suppose), for he is never again spoken of as alive. Queen Felice lived to a good old age, ending her days in happiness and peace. The Werwolf turns out to be the Prince Alphouns or Alphonse, eldest son of the king of Spain.

P. 4, l. 115. Far was the local name of the Strait of Messina, called
Faro di Messina, or Far de Meschines: thus we read of "fluvimium magnum, qui dicitur Le Far de Meschines" in Benedict of Peterborough (ed. Stubbs, 1867), vol. 2, p. 125; and again, at p. 138 of the same work, we find the following.—"Et est notandum quod in fluvio illo del Far de Meschines sunt illa duo pericula maris maxima, scilicet Silla et Caribdis. Quarum una, Silla, est ad introitum del Far prope la Baignare, et Altera, scilicet Caribdis, est prope exitum del Far." Two formidable perils these, for the Werwolf to encounter on his way; but he seems to have safely avoided them!

P. 6, l. 170. The exact distance of this forest from Rome is afterwards stated to be seven miles. See l. 4679.

L. 1. (English text). The first two extant lines of the poem represent the concluding phrase of the extract from the French—que tot li plaist Ce que la beste de lui fait. The next line in the French text is, Uns vachiers qui vaches gardoit, &c.

3—35. These thirty-three lines are represented in the French text by only seven short lines, which run thus:—

Uns vachiers qui vaches gardoit,
qui en cele forest manoit,
el bois estoit avoec sa proie,
.i. chien tenoit en sa corioie,
de pasture la nuit repaire;
li chiens senti lenfant et flaire,
forment abale, et cil le hne, &c.

Hence it is clear that the excellent lines, 20—31, are original; and they shew that our own author was a man of very considerable poetical power. So again, the idea in l. 59—

"appeles and alle pinges: pat childern after wilnen"—
is entirely his own, and proves that he knew how to add a graceful touch to the poem he copied from.

P. 7, l. 19. towave was explained by Sir F. Madden as meaning to the wall; but I fancy it is but one word. See To-wave in the Glossary.

P. 9, ll. 80—93. Having shewn (note to l. 3) how the translator has there written 33 lines where his original had but 7, it seems right to give an extract shewing, on the other hand, that he has here only 14 lines where his original has 26, some of them being very curious.

"or oies

del leu qui estoit repairies
de la viande quala enquerre
par les vilains et par la terre;
avoec lenfant tant en avant
que a grant paine laportoit,
et quant lenfant na retrouve,
onques nus hon, de mere ne,
ne vist a beste tel duel faire,
qui li oist ullaer et braire,
et les pies ensamblle detordre,
et la terre engouler et mordre,
esrachier lerre et esgrater,
et soi couchier et relever;
et comme il socit et confont,
et querre aval et querre amont,
et les larmes fondre des ex,
bien penst dire, si grans dex
ne fu par nule beste fais,
lors eir sallis ens e markais,
si met a la terre le nes,
tout si com lenfes eit ales
desi ou le mist li vilains.
le suit li leus de rage plains;
tant la sui a esperon,
que venust est a la maison.”

P. 9, l. 80. The letter /, like r, is one that sometimes shifts its place in a word. As we find brod for bird, so we find worlde for worde; and woln,k may be intentionally put for wolnk. Cf. corft for craft, l. 3221.

83. no nei; = non ei, i.e. no egg. So thi narmes for thin armes, thy arms, in l. 666.

84. grimep. The MS, has ginnep. Sir F. Madden’s note is—“A verb is wanting after ginneth. We may, probably, supply it by ‘so ballyly he ginneth greue,’ or by some similar word.” But this rather spoils the rhythm of the line. Mr Morris says—“it seems probable that ginep = howl, utter, send out, from AS. gian, to open, yawn.” This is somewhat far fetched.

It is simpler to suppose that it is miswritten for grimep, which is not an inappropriate word, and is familiar to us from the expression in the Psalms—to grin like a dog, i.e. to grin with rage and spite. But it is still more to the point to observe that there is, as it were, some authority for the grinning of werwolves, if we compare with the text the following quotation—"pâi grenaudeau gladschipe euchan toward oSer, as wode vulues pet fainen of hare prai." Morris: Early English Homilies, p. 277 (E. E. T. S. to be published shortly). Cf. also “The Lyon did both gape and gre." Bp. Percy’s Folio MS. Carle of Carlile, 213.

P. 10, l. 121. Between this line and the next, the translator has missed a portion of the original, viz. the lines following:

“de mult de gens estoit loce;
de son signor avoit .i. fil,
biau damoisel, franc et gentil;
Brandins ot non, ce dist lescris.”

“She was praised by many people. She had by her lord one son, a fine lad, frank and gentle; he bore the name of Brandins [or Braundius], as says the writing.” The name of Brandins being so very like Brande, the translator may easily have lost his place, and omitted the passage unintentionally. Braundins is mentioned afterwards, as the reader will find.
136. *a noyement = an oynement*, i.e. an ointment, unguent. Cf. note to l. 83. See l. 139.

141. "All the form of man so amiss had she shaped (transformed)."
—Morris; *note to the line in* "Specimens of Early English."

143, 144. "But truly he never after possessed any other resemblance that belongs to human nature, but (was) a wild werewolf." The construction is involved.

P. 11, ll. 156—160. Here the translator, finding a tendency to repetition in his original, cuts matters short, omitting how the werewolf lived two years in Apulia, and grew fierce and big and strong; and how, hearing of the treachery of King Embrouns' brother, he resolved to steal away William in the manner already described. It is needless to say that ll. 161—169 are wholly interpolated.

P. 12. l. 206. There is something amiss with this line; it hardly makes sense as it stands. In l. 35 the phrase is "to hold to baie;" in l. 46 it is "to hold at a baye." So here, if one may be permitted to change "&" into "at," we have,

"to have bruttenet *pat bor at pe abaie sep[en]*

i.e. "to have afterwards destroyed the boar, (when held) at bay."

P. 14, l. 251. In the original, William very properly grounds his refusal on the fact that he does not know who the emperor is, or what he wants to do.

"*non ferai, sire. et por coi,*
car je ne sai *que vos voles,*
qui vos estes, ne que queres;
ne se voles riens, se bien non,
ja ne me face *Dix pardon!*"

261. "Read *wend,*" and again elsewhere, in l. 5185. This elision of a final *d* in such words as *hond, lond, sheld, held,* &c. is by no means uncommon in ancient poetry, and arises simply from pronunciation."—M. We find *wend* in l. 229.

267—272. Hereabouts the translator condenses his original with great judgment. The "churl's" grumbling, as there given, is not very interesting.

P. 15, ll. 293—295. The French merely says,

"en ceste forest le trouvai,
asses pres dont nous somes ore."—

The man who could turn this prosaic statement into

"*how he him fond in *pat forest* *here fast bi-side,*
clothed in comly clopping *for any kinges sone,*
vnder an holow ok *puth help of his dogge*"

had certainly both poetic power and a lively imagination. Indeed, the translation is very superior to the original, as far as I have compared the two. It should be observed that, immediately after writing the two lines printed above in italics, the translator boldly omits about 16 lines of the cowherd's rather prosy story.

P. 16, l. 325. Mr Morris explains *fordedes* by making it equivalent to
NOTES (PAGES 16—19).

fayre dedes, kind actions. That this is incorrect appears from the fourth line on fol. 81 (l. 5182),

“of al be faire forde dood...”

The expression "fair fair deed" would be unmeaning tautology. See the glossary.

329—343. The translator here follows the original pretty closely, giving, however, rather the sense than the exact words.

P. 17, l. 347. “This is not an error of the scribe, as at first supposed, but formed by the same analogy, as alizt for alighted, comfort for comfort- ed, gerde for girded, &c. It occurs often in the Wycliffite versions of the Bible.”—M. The very word command (== commanded) occurs in l. 2557 and 2564 of the alliterative Romance on the Destruction of Troy.

P. 17, l. 360—365. Compare the original text—

“Salves moi Huet le nain,
et Hugenet et Aubelot,
et Martinet le fil Hengot,
et Akarin et Crestien,
et Thumassin le fil Pain,et tos mes autres compaignons;” &c.

In l. 362, Sir F. Madden printed dwery, but he says, "This word is doubtful in the MS, and may either be read overy (as printed by Hartshorne) or dwerth. It seems to be intended to represent the F. dree, dree, B. Bret. dree, drud, signifying a loved friend or companion. But if the final letter be supposed to take the place of g, it may then mean dwarf, from S. dverg."

The excellent suggestion at the end of this notice of the word is now seen to be perfectly right; for dwerth (dwarf) is simply the translation of le nain, Lat. nanus; and just as wireb is written for dverg, so our author continually writes purp for pur = through.

For kinnenman in l. 365, I should propose to read Thomasin or Thomasyn. It would improve the alliteration, of which there is none in the line as it stands.

P. 18, l. 379. She would have slain herself by refusing food, according to the French text.

"jamais sa bouche ne mangast,
se cil ne la reconfortast.”

388, 389. These “boars and bears, many horse loads, harts and hinds, and many other beasts” have all grown out of four boars only, like Falstaff’s “men in buckram.” The French merely says, de iiiij senglers quorent pris.

403. held == eld, age. Compare
et mesisme de tel aage
com Guillermes poisit bien estre.

P. 19, l. 423. The translator here misses a very curious statement, not perhaps understanding the allusion. Nor do I.

de riches dras batus a or,
com sil fist fix roi Alphinor,
qui sire et rois est de Hongrie,
qui si est de tos biens plentine;
ne adonques a icel tans
navoit mie plus de. iiiii. ans
et norri puis. viii. ans nos plains.
Here we not only learn, once more, that William was about 11 years old
when arriving at the emperor's court (see p. 2, l. 35, and p. 15, l. 296),
but we are told that the child was found in rich apparel adorned with
beaten gold, as if he had been son to the king Alphínor, who is lord and
king of Hungary, (and) who is so abundantly possessed of wealth.

429—432. The French text has
"li damoisiais," fait lempereur,
"je cuit, par le baron saint Pere,
qu'il est de mult tres haute gens;
car mult par est et biax, et gens," &c.

P. 23, l. 433. The French text continues thus:—
et soupirer et baillier,
et refroïdier et reschauffer,
muer color et pressurer,
et tramblor to en itel guise,
comme se fievre mestoit prise, &c.

P. 24, l. 455. Compare
dont ai je tort qui en blasmoie
mon cuer.

460. The French text throws no light on the true reading. The am
in the MS. is indistinct. Sir F. Madden suggested "nad þei ben, i may
boute bale," &c., which I have adopted, with the slight change of may
into mist.

470. We should have expected to find brouner rather than brown.

472. There seems something wrong here. I had proposed to read
"to the harde asente," i.e. assent to the inflection. Sir F. Madden
considers that the introduction of to offends the ear, and proposes,
but with diffidence, "the hardere asente," i.e. assent with difficulty.
The French does not help one, being much more concise in this pas-
sage.

P. 25. After l. 500 we should expect some such line as,
"So heried ouer al' and so hey3 holden."

P. 28, l. 576. The catchwords are written, as usual, at the bottom of
the last page of each quire.

584. The MS. has "be kosin ful nere," instead of "here kosin." This
is due to the omission of the small flourish which is used as a con-
traction for er. In the same way we find "pidere" instead of "pidere"
in l. 47, and elsewhere.

592. For leliest, Sir F. Madden has leuest. The two words would be
exceedingly alike, for the scribe makes his l's so short that they are very
little longer than the first stroke of a u. But over the second downstroke
(which is a little shorter than the first) a long fine stroke can be detected,
which is his method of dotting an i. Leuest means most dearly, and leliest is most leally, so that the sense is much the same.

600. The MS. has I. 601 before 600, but the emendation so obviously assists the sense, that it hardly requires apology.

P. 29, l. 611. For this line and the preceding the MS. has—

"& ofter þan ix. times · hit takeþ me a-daye,
& ten times on þe nijþ · nought ones lesse.”

I have taken the considerable liberty of changing the places of nine and ten, because the alliteration of both lines is thereby improved. The ten is as well suited to the chief-letter in takeþ, as nine is to the initials of niȝt and nought. I do not suppose that any one will quarrel with the alteration of the sense. When we consider that these numbers were selected for "no other reason than to secure alliteration" it must be right to place them where they best fulfil that object.

625. For “cosynes” read “cosyne.”—M. This suggestion is supported by ll. 694 and 602. But there is no harm in retaining cosynes, as it is used to denote a female cousin, as in Lancelot of the Lake, ll. 1185, 1270, 2287, and 2802.

P. 30, l. 645. I suspect that “answeres” ought to have been “answered.” Cf. note to l. 1076.

649. The MS. has merely “after prow,” which makes the line halt.

P. 31, l. 692. The MS. having here the letters “ihû” it is difficult to write the word otherwise than “iḥesu.” Otherwise the ḫ is a corruption of the Greek ℏ or e, so that "iḥesu" would be a truer form. On the contraction ℏco for iḥccc inherent, out of which ℏcs has been made (the mark of contraction being at the same time turned into a small cross), see Hone’s Ancient Mysteries Described, p. 282.

698. The e and i being much alike, Metynat may be meant for Metynce, but Metynge is better spelling; see l. 706.

P. 32, ll. 712, 713. The construction is—“For there is no lord in any land, enjoying life—no emperor nor renowned king known to be so rich—that he is not of sufficiently low birth to wed that seemly lady.”

723. The word houses nowhere occurs again in the poem, the usual form being bıhous. The alliteration also points out that the initial bı is really required.

P. 33, l. 753. “Read, tok him til a sete.”—M. But I am not sure that this ingenious emendation is altogether required; tid may be here, as elsewhere, another spelling of til = soon, quickly.

756. Here “For þat” seems to mean “for whom.” See l. 769.

771. The MS. seems to have “chanber” in 685 and here; but it is probably a mere slip for “chamber,” the spelling adopted in ll. 755 and 769.

P. 34, l. 788. “This is not so much an error as an abbreviation before an infinitive, which has occurred to me often in other MSS. It should probably be ‘for to slake.’ Bryant places this, very unnecessarily, among the list of provincialisms.”—M. Forto is very common in this MS. See l. 783 just above. Another form is forte, which occurs in Piers Plowman, Text A. vii. 277.
793. Sir F. Madden prints "as a wo werpwewish," with a reference to the common phrase "wo worth." The MS. may also be read "wo wery" = wo-weary, weary with wo. The word "worp" is spelt elsewhere in the MS. with an o.

799. wher, whether.

804. Go we is a form of invitation. Cf. "gowe dyne, gowe" in Piers Plowman; A. prol. 105. It occurs again in l. 1184.

P. 35, l. 824. "to glade with nch gome," i.e. to gladden each man with. See note to l. 1825.

843. pa is put for pat frequently in the present poem. See ll. 765 and 903.

P. 36, l. 862. whiles, wiles. So also we find where for were.

P. 37, l. 883. "So completely was that word wound in to his heart." But this is rather a forced phrase, and it would have been quite as well if the scribe had written—

so witerly was pat wish wounded to herte, i.e. so completely was that man wounded to the heart.

909. Repeated, nearly, from l. 433.

P. 38, l. 920. Read " ther ne schal wizth."—M. I copy "no wizth" from l. 786.

P. 39, l. 964. salerne. "The city of Salerno was famous from very early times for its university and school of medicine, which was protected and flourished most under the Norman princes."—English Cyclopaedia. Cf. Morte Arthure, ed. Perry, l. 4312.

P. 41, l. 1021. "There is some error here, apparently, in the MS."—M. If hete is to stand, it may mean to bid, from the A.S. hitan, to bid, promise. Then the line means—"and to bid her then to play as she pleased in the meanwhile." Here = her. Cf. l. 1716.

1028. For antresse we should expect to find "anteres." P. 42, l. 1069. "Ouer gart gret ost. Gart appears here to be an error of the scribe, and should be omitted. Ouer-gret is used by Chaucer, Cant. T. 16116."—M.

1075. tyding seems to be the plural form. See l. 1134, and note to l. 4877.

1076. Read "a-greued."—M. It is worth noting that s is not frequently written for d. In "Pierce the Ploughmans Crede," l. 6, patres is written for patred.

P. 43, l. 1093. So, too, e is often written for o; we should expect to find onys in this line, for in alliterative lines the vowels used as rimelaters are generally different ones. O is written for e in l. 818.

P. 44, l. 1127. In a strong light, the word "pider" can be traced as having occupied the apparently blank space. It was probably erased as having been repeated by mistake. Hence, there is no word to be supplied here.

P. 45, l. 1163. "pierst batayle" means "the first battalion or company." Cf. l. 1152.

P. 46, l. 1190. fresly = fersly, fiercely. This shifting of the letter r
may have been intentional. See "The Romans of Partenay;" ed. Skeat, 1866; preface, p. xvi. Cf. note to l. 80.

1196. "Read 'grettest;' and also in l. 1365. The is similarly elided from 'menskfullest,' in l. 1435."—M.

1211. The word so is required for the alliteration, and it improves the sense. What so = howsoever, and occurs elsewhere.

P. 47, l. 1222. "For te read to."—M. But perhaps te may stand. See notes to l. 788 and 1093.

1226. In the "Romans of Partenay," for is miswritten for fro over and over again. See note to l. 1190.

P. 48, l. 1280. The initial vn-belongs to both words, i.e. unwounded or untaken.

P. 49, l. 1299. deder clepe, caused to be summoned. Cf. deder fecche in l. 1303.

1307. We must read hem, not he. The scribe probably forgot to make the stroke over the e.

P. 50, ll. 1323-4. I have ventured to transpose these lines, as they are otherwise devoid of sense. The MS. has—

"wip alle worchipe & wele so was he sone

to burye him as out to be swiche a burne nobul;"

but it is clear that "so was he sone" (= so was he soon buried) must end the sentence.

1350. The sense seems to require the insertion of be or ben—"nadde

be he socour of o seg," &c. Cf. l. 1358.


P. 52, l. 1401. The second he may be miswritten for hire or here, i.e. her. Read "to come, here granted." Cf. note to l. 584.

1415. "but thei thre one, except they thre only.

P. 53, l. 1425. "And who, by descent, was then keeper of Constantinople." But the relative is omitted, probably by an intentional idiom.

It may be observed here, that it appears by the sequel that the Emperor of Greece was the father of the Queen of Palermo, and William's grandfather. Also, the emperor's son was called Partendo or Partenedon, and was, of course, William's uncle.

1427. The ending -and in grethand is doubtless a mere mistake, due to the word glerman just before.

P. 54, l. 1478. Diting is simply miswritten for tiding. Such an inversion of letters is occasionally found; thus, in the Romance of Parthenay, aduertise is written for aduersite (adversity) more than once.

1490. mened of, bemoaned by; so in ll. 1491, 1492, we find biloued wip meaning beloved by.

P. 55, l. 1504. We have had this line before. See l. 246.

1516. her sche sese myt, ere she might cease.

P. 57, l. 1576. This line has occurred before. See l. 1033.

P. 58, l. 1627. Compare,

"In middes on a mountayne: at midmorwe tyde

Was piht vp a paunlon: a proud for he none,
And ten thousand of tentes · I-tilled byesdes," &c.

Piers Plowman, Text A. ii. 42.

"Tentes and pavilons streight and pight freshely."

Romans of Partenay, 869.

P. 59, l. 1638. hese, ease. Cf. her, ere, l. 1516 ; and hende, end, l. 1369.

1640. Mornyng out mesure, mourning without measure.

1644. The line would sound better, if born and was were to change places, as in—

"Mai banne bat he born was · to body to or to soule."

Piers Plowman, A. i. 60.

1654. Both alliteration and sense require some such word as wist, which I have inserted.

1662. tent, intent, purpose, design. See Tent in Halliwell's Dictionary.

1664. profites love. This might seem to mean "for love of the prophet." But this would be quite out of place, and, in fact, the line expresses the same idea as l. 3251 does.

P. 60, l. 1676. The negative prefix in vnperceyued affects all the words following it in the same line. Cf. note to l. 1280.

1686. For this story of dressing up in bears' skins, see S. Baring Gould's Book of Werewolves, p. 36. Egillson's explanation of the O.Norse word berserkr is, one who wears a bear's sark, or a habit made of bear-skin over his armour.

P. 61, l. 1723. This mention of bear-baiting at a stake is worth remarking. Cf. Havelok, l. 1840.

P. 62, l. 1742. "You appear so furious a bear for a man to look upon."

P. 63, l. 1777, whiche. We should have expected to find hou used here. 1793. This is William's second experience of a "dern den" under a "holw hok." See ll. 17, 295.

P. 64, l. 1825. to kepe wip our lives, to preserve our lives with. Compare—

"Oper catell, oper clop · to coveren wip our bones," (i. e. or wealth, or cloth to cover our bones); Pierce the Ploughman's Crede, l. 116.

P. 67, l. 1944. lengep may also be read lengey. But the true reading is probably lengpe, i. e. lengthen, as in l. 1040. Cf. l. 2345.

P. 68, l. 1957. It is not uncommon in MSS. to find the word pope erased or struck out. See The Romans of Partenay, p. xviii.

P. 69, l. 1983. For at sent Sir F. Madden would read a-sente, assented. But I think the MS. reading may stand; at sent = at assent, i. e. that she was an assenting party. For sent = assent, see Halliwell. See also l. 3017.

P. 71, l. 2073. treie and tene. "This expression is very ancient, and may be found in Cædmon."—M. See Cædmon; ed. Thorpe, p. 137, l. 15.
P. 73, l. 2127. *do cri* e, cause to be proclaimed. So in l. 2145, *let he sende* = he caused to be sent. See l. 2174.

P. 76, l. 2236. *for-waked*, tired out with waking or watching, fatigued for want of sleep.

"It should properly be *for-waked* [as in l. 790], but this variation between *waked* and *walked* is to be met with in other MSS."—M. Compare

"And sone the knyght he be the brydyll nom,
Saying, "Awalk! It is no tyme to slep."

*Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 1048.

P. 77, l. 2254. Perhaps *bi* should be *be*; then *pat him bi zive schold* = that should be given him.

P. 82, l. 2432. *helles*. "Read *delles*."—M. But *helles* may stand, as being the plural of *hel*, a hill; see ll. 2233, 2318.

P. 83, l. 2463. I think the rhythm, alliteration, and sense would all be improved by inserting *softeliche*:

And as sone as he hade *softeliche* 'sette it adowne.

2471. Perhaps we should read *blemched*, i.e. blemished.

P. 84, l. 2501. *pat he bar*, that which he bare.

P. 85, l. 2554. *semes*. Printed *serues* in Sir F. Madden's edition, with the note:—"This word is doubtful, and looks in the MS. more like *seines*." But the word is *semes*, in which the first stroke of the *m* is not quite joined on to the second. There is no stroke above it to show that it is an *i*; nor do I read the word as *serues*. *Semes* means horse-loads.

P. 87, l. 2626. Here is a direct allusion to the part of the story which is lost in our English MS. It will be found in the French text, on p. 2.

P. 89, l. 2680. *lengye*. Or it may be read *lengye*, which would be perhaps better in this place. *Lengye* (the infinitive mood, like *wonye* in l. 3312) is to *dwell, remain*; *lenghe* is to *lengthen*.

P. 90, l. 2707. *sece*. Printed *seie* in Sir F. Madden's edition; but a close examination of the MS. shews *sece* to be the word. The sense is— "Now *cease* we to talk about the besiegers;" of which "Now *say* we" is the exact contrary.

P. 91, l. 2731. *grec*. This may be also read *grept*; the usual form is *greyped*. Cf. the form *a-greped* in l. 52.

P. 94, l. 2845. This "park" is the orchard or menagerie already mentioned at p. 3, l. 65.

2864. *drey*. This may also be read *drep*, as printed by Sir F. Madden. I have printed *drey*, as coming closer to the form *dreizhe*, in l. 2796.

P. 95, l. 2870. The sense and alliteration both require the word *downter* to be inserted; see l. 2875.

2890. *bilaft*, remained or stayed behind, whilst the hart fought the beasts.

P. 96, l. 2900. Sir F. Madden prints "*pat he gart*," &c.; but the MS. has *gate*. *Gart* or *garte* makes better sense, and is perhaps right. If so, the wrong spelling *gate* was copied from l. 2895.

P. 97, l. 2964. *be kinges sone*, i.e. to the king's son.
P. 98, l. 2998. So also we have hire þouȝt in l. 2873, and here þouȝt four lines below it.

P. 99, l. 3021. busked hem, i.e. þei busked hem. This omission of the nominative is frequent, and no doubt intentional.

P. 102, l. 3105. "Probably for er than an ern."—M. Er than would mean ere then, or sooner then, with reference to the er following. I almost think the first of the three er's is best omitted. That ar is mis-written for an, there can be no doubt.

3116. Insert the metrical dot after ben. The alliteration follows a rule not unusual in old English, that each half-line is alliterative within itself. Thus:——

It wéneþ þat wé ben · riȝt swíche as it-sélue.

P. 105, l. 3203. Something seems wrong here. If ne be inserted, and fair changed into fairre (= more fair, as in l. 4437) it would be clearer. Perhaps, then, we should read——

alle men vpon mold · ne miȝt sen a fairness couple, &c.

3220. "Something seems wanting to complete the sense, such as neuer wol i haue."—M. That is, we should read——

þôþe armes al my lif atteli · neuer wol i haue——

where atteli is the infinitive mood. If the line is to stand unaltered, atteli must be put for attele i; i.e. other arms all my life I design never (to) have. Then the alliteration would fall upon the vowels, as thus:——

þôþe armes al my lif · atteli neuer haue.

3221. It is difficult to tell whether or not the spelling carfti was intentional. Carfti appears also in The Romans of Partenay, l. 5708; and kerse is the usual old spelling of cress.

P. 106, l. 3260. The word to seems to be required, and the line then means, "for it had advanced to night, by that time." To fure forth is to proceed, advance, go onward, go forth; see ll. 2730, 4450. Cf. also l. 3526.

P. 107, l. 3282. For kniȝt kud, a better reading would be kud kniȝt. The sense is the same both ways.

3290. For is, Sir F. Madden prints his. Both spellings of the word occur throughout the poem. The MS. has is in this place.

P. 108, l. 3315. One of the now's is redundant.

P. 110, l. 3374. "A word seems requisite to eke out the line. Perhaps we might read—'Kniȝtes with sire William thanne kauȝt god hert.'"—M. Whilst adopting this suggestion, I have ventured slightly to shift the inserted word. It now occurs to me, however, that the real error is in kauȝt. This, being plural, should be kauȝten or kauȝti; and then the flow of the verse would be preserved without any insertion of an extra word at all.

P. 111, l. 3399. Perhaps it should be, "ac spacy as þe spaynoles," &c.

3404. lorde. "Read lorde, and in the following line lord. The same singular mistake (if it be one) occurs in p. 142, l. 24 [l. 3955 of the present edition] for lordschip."—M.
P. 112, l. 3450. "The illuminator has neglected to supply the capital letter here."—M. The little w was made, as usual, by the scribe for his guidance. Three times the illuminator has mistaken his instructions, and made a large M instead of a W; see ll. 4660, 4880, 4923.

P. 113, l. 3477. The word omitted is no doubt kniȝt, for this word is considered as being alliterative to crist; see l. 3671.

P. 114, l. 3509. The werewolf leapt into the sea, and crossed the Straits of Messina to the opposite shore. This part of the story gives us some idea of what the missing part of the English translation was like. See p. 4.

P. 115, l. 3530. The MS. may be read either sthoure, or schoure (as in Sir F. Madden's edition). Sthoure is, I think, the word meant; for see l. 3556. The scribe uses th as equivalent to the sound of t very frequently; see miȝthi, mizth in ll. 3549, 3557 just below, and wizthli in l. 3581.

3533. We should perhaps read, "& conquered."

P. 117, l. 3597. lat me worp, let me be, let me alone.
So in Piers Plowman, ed. Wright, p. 12.

For-thi I couscille al the commune
To late the cat worthe.

P. 118, l. 3639. There is a sort of gap in the sense which seems to point to the loss of some such line as

Meyntened so his men · þat manly, þei sone.

3646. "The final words of this and the two preceding lines are partly erased, but legible. The later hand has endeavoured to restore them."

—M.

P. 119, l. 3665. For he, sc. the king of Spain's son. The change of the subject is rather a rapid one.

P. 120, l. 3695. "A verb is here wanting to complete the sense."—M. It is difficult to guess the missing word; perhaps the sense may be bettered by reading,

but I miȝt nouȝt awei þer-þith · i-wisse, sire, & treuþe.

3705. þe saules. Read "there saules."—M. An almost better reading would be "here saules," but is not so like what the scribe has given us.

P. 121, l. 3737. man wod. Perhaps an error for wod man.

P. 122, l. 3778. tom, opportunity. Not a very common word. It occurs, however, in Piers Plowman, A. ii. 160.

I have no tom to telle · þe tayl þat hem folweþ.

P. 123, l. 3789. Iced. This, if pronounced issed, seems to be equivalent to the Scottish yschit, issued, a not uncommon word in Barbour's Brus.

3799. The scribe's spelling of þurh was clearly influenced by his knowledge that he was about to write the word your very soon.

3803. & I mowe come bi, if I can get hold cf.

P. 124, l. 3825. The word þat should be omitted, but it is in the MS. 3835. In hounde, there is a (superfluous) stroke over the n.

P. 125, l. 3883. Ferde is the reading in the parallel line, 3737.
3884. The question has been raised whether in the phrase in Judges ix. 53—"all to-brake his skull "—we ought to join the to to the word all or to the verb brake. It seems certain that, originally, the to was a part of the verb, and separate from all, and the present line is an excellent evidence of this. It seems equally certain that, in the sixteenth century, the prefix to was not very well understood, and the result was that all-to was considered as a short way of writing altogether. See "The Bible Wordbook," by J. Eastwood and W. Aldis Wright. Those who would consider the to as belonging to al, and who consider alto as properly only one word, must go on to explain what is meant by alfor, albi, and ala; for we find in this very poem the prefixes for-, bi-, and a- also preceded by the word al. See ll. 790, 793, 661, 872.

P. 127, l. 3925. The first "&" seems redundant.

P. 130, l. 4042. & pouzt, i. e. and he thought, an example of the omission of the pronoun, a license in which the author indulges rather freely.

4055. dared, became motionless as if stupefied. The word occurs in Chaucer.

P. 131, l. 4061. any-skines, written any skines in the MS. I have preserved this curious spelling, because I have observed it elsewhere, viz., in one of the Trinity MSS. of Piers Plowman. See the foot-note to P. Pl. A. ii. 26, in my edition, and also the foot-note to Passus x. 2. In the latter place, foure skenis, foure skynnes are various readings for foure kunne. In fact, any skines is only another way of writing anys kines. "Such forms as alleskynes (all kinds of), noskynes (no kind of), are instances of the genitives alles (of all), and nones (of none)." Morris: Specimens of Early English, p. xxiv. I would submit, however, that alleskynes, noskynes, are here wrongly translated; the former means, of every kind, the latter, of no kind, just as anyskines means of any kind, and foure skynes means of four kinds. The phrase in Piers Plowman, "of foure kunne jinges," means, of things of four kinds.

4065. Probably an error for—"pattow ne wost." The sense is, "It can't be that you don't know."

P. 132, l. 4104. That chawnded is the right reading is rendered probable not only by the recurrence of the word in l. 4500, but by the use of the equivalent word forschop in l. 4394.

P. 133, l. 4150. Probably we should read, "ne may zou deliuere."—M. This is a slightly bolder alteration, but a considerable improvement.

P. 137, l. 4278. "Sepe in MS. Read ‘sothli for sothe.’ A pleonasm arising from some blunder of the scribe."—M.

P. 140, l. 4379. "A slight liberty has been taken here, and also [in lines 2323, 3942]. In all three cases the word is written in the MS. ‘wirhe’ or ‘worthe,’ but the correction is so obvious, and the difference so small between c and t [in the MS.], as to warrant the alteration."—M. It may be added that sc is almost always written like st.

P. 141, l. 4418. his gref forgaf, gave away, i. e. laid aside his anger. Greff is sometimes anger caused by vexation, as in Alisounder, l. 264.

P. 145, l. 4551. knew his sone sone, knew his son soon.
P. 146, l. 4577. "Therefore, O King of heaven, praised should you be, who have lent thee (Alphonse) thy life, to deliver us all." It is rather an awkward sentence; but it is usual, in Early English, to find "haþ" put for "hast" in a sentence thus framed.

P. 147, l. 4632. boute bot, without a boat? The usual meaning of boute bot is "without remedy," but this would be unsuitable here, for we have "boute hurt oþor harm" in the next line. The werewolf had to swim across the Straits of Messina, and doubtless found it a hard task, for he took care to secure a boat for the return journey. See l. 2729. In l. 567 we have "boute mast," and in l. 568 "boute anker or ore." More probably, however, boute bot = boute bod, without delay, as in l. 149.

P. 148, l. 4662. ioye. Sir F. Madden prints "fope," with a note that we should read "ioye." A close inspection of the MS. shews that the first letter is really an i, with a blur to the right of it making it look like a long s. The letters y and p are made alike, throughout the MS.

4665. most, i.e. most glad.

P. 150, l. 4716, god under god, wealth under God; the author uses under God or under heuene to signify throughout the world. The expression is repeated in l. 4732, and in l. 4730 we find "worldes god" for worldly wealth.

4717. Read "it ne schal redili."—M. After this line occur the lines, "& þerto heizelie am i holde þ for holliche i knowe, þat alle þi sawes be sop þat þou seidest ere." These lines are out of place here, and occur in their proper places lower down. The repetition of them, however, teaches us somewhat; for it affords a most certain proof of the unsettled state of orthography. We here find the same scribe, in re-writing the same lines, altering heizeli and holliche into heizliche and holli, so that he considered the endings -li and -liche as perfectly interchangeable, and it was a mere chance which of the two he adopted. We also find seidest altered to saidest, shewing the equivalence of the ei and ai sounds. There is also a difference of reading; for "þi sawes" reappears as "þe sawes." Lastly, the change of "holde" into "hold" shews the uncertainty attending the use by scribes of the final e.

4730. woldest zerne, wouldst yearn for, wouldst desire to have.

P. 151, l. 4736. a mite worþ. Just below, l. 4754, the phrase used is a bene worþ. Compare

Schal no deneul at his dep-day þerum him worþ a myte.

Piers Plowman, A. viii. 54.

A straw for alle swevenes significanse!

God help me so, I counte hem nought a bene.

Chaucer, Troil. & Cress, bk. v. st. 52.

So we find, in the Knightes Tale—the mountance of a tare (l. 712)—nought worth a myte (l. 700); in the Milleres Tale—nat a kere (l. 568); and in the Pardoneres Tale—the mountance of a corn of whete (l. 401).

P. 152, l. 4785. wil our lord wold, whilst our Lord would (permit us
to live). This is repeated in l. 4802. In the present line, however, *wil our lord villep* would be a better reading.

P. 153, ll. 4797, 4798. "All the nobles immediately prayed for them busily, (on the understanding) that they must by all means amend their trespass,” viz., by a life of penitence. Such an ellipsis is not uncommon; in l. 4800, however, the introduction of the word *so* before *that* makes the sense clearer.

P. 154, l. 4827. This line is repeated, slightly varied, at l. 4888.

P. 155, l. 4877. *tidiging*. Both this and *tidinges* are plural forms. Cf. l. 1075.

P. 159, l. 5004. *bepleem*; so in MS. Read "bepleem," i. e. Bethlehem. 5013. *hurtle*. "This term is used in Chaucer twice, Cant. T. 2618, 4717 [ed. Tyrwhitt], and in the Wycliffite versions of the Bible is far from uncommon. We find it also inserted in the Prompt. Parv. ‘Hurtelyne, as too thynges togedur, impingo, collido;’ and, at a more recent period, Shakspeare introduces it into his Juliius Caesar, Act ii., sc. 2.

'The noise of battle hurled in the air,
Horses did neigh, and dying men did groan.'

The line in which this word occurs in our Romance is, perhaps, the finest of the whole poem, and not surpassed by the more polished diction of the Dramatist."—M.

I would add that *hurlest* is a reading adopted for *hurtlest* in later editions of Cant. Tales, in l. 4717. But we find in Chaucer the word in another place, "And hertely they hurtele al attones."

*Legend of Good Women*; Cleopatra, l. 59.

It occurs twice in the "Romans of Partenay;" see the glossary. It is used with great effect by Gray—

Iron sleet of arrowy shower

_Hurtles_ in the darkened air;—

though he obviously copies here from Shakespeare.

5014. *desgelii*. I let this word stand, though I believe it should be *desgelis*, or, better still, *desgelis, disgelis, or disgelis;* for which latter form see l. 485. It is best explained by a passage from Chaucer’s Persones Tale—"precious clothing is capable for . . . his strauengeness and disin-gines," &c. Hence *disgelis* means strangely, extraordinarily, unusually, inordinately, and is equivalent etymologically to *disguisedly*; but it should be noted that the meaning of the Old French *desguiser* is rather to alter than to conceal the outward appearance of a thing, whence desguiser is often used in the sense of to trim, deck out, or adorn. In the present case, the sense is, that "there was so strange and unusual a din, that all the earth quaked.” In l. 485, Melhiors laments that she would, if she married beneath her, ‘be extraordinarily disgraced.” We must not connect this with the A. S. *digellice*, secretly, for this would contradict the sense in both places. The din (l. 5014) was not *secret*, but very manifest; and in l. 485 Melhiors is expressing that it is open and public and unusual disgrace that she is afraid of, and that if she could keep the matter secret, all would be well.
P. 160. l. 5035. I fail to discover any alliteration in this line.

P. 167. l. 5262. vnderston is probably the provincial pronunciation of vnderstonde; thus, and only thus, can we explain the curious reading vndersto in l. 5533 (which is very clearly written), where the scribe has forgotten to make a stroke over the o to denote the n. Cf. note to l. 261.

P. 168. l. 5300. For i knew we should probably read i know. The letters e and o are often miswritten, one for the other.

5322. po. Read "pe."—M. But I do not feel convinced that the alteration is needed. As it stands, we may translate it—"Readily towards Rome then, by the direct way;" taking riztes gates as an adverbial expression. There is some difficulty about riztes; see the glossary.

P. 170. l. 5378. "Anon then in haste he bad (men) cause his steward to come to him," &c. Come sometimes means become; this might suggest the sense, that William made the cowherd his steward, but the latter explanation is disposed of by l. 5391.

P. 172. l. 5437. This curious expression, "the emperor's mother William," meaning "the emperor William's mother," deserves notice. It is the usual old English phrase. Thus, in Chaucer's Squyeres Tale, we find

"Or elles it was the Grekes hors Sinon" (C. T. ed. Tyrwhitt; l. 10523).

That is, "or else it was Sinon the Greek's horse." In my opinion, it was very injudicious of later editors to substitute Grekissch for Grekes; for, with the latter reading, the line can only mean—"or else it was the Greek horse, Sinon," which makes out Sinon to be the name of the horse!

P. 174. l. 5516. "That had had many hard haps theretofore, and (had) been once in great trouble and misfortune." The repetition of hadde is quite right.

P. 175. l. 5536. zif, give; like gif in l. 5539 below. It is not the conjunction zif (if) in this instance.
NOTES TO "ALISAUNDER."

[X.B.—In the following notes, by the Greek text is meant the text of MS. No. 113 (du supplément) of the Bibliothèque du Roi, a long extract from which is given in "Notices des Manuscrits de la Bibliothèque du Roi," tom. xiii. p. 219, edited by M. Berger de Xivrey. By the French text is meant the text of MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 7517, quoted in the same volume. By the Latin text (unless otherwise specified) is meant the version contained in "Historia Alexandri magni regis Macedonic de preliis," printed, according to the colophon, in a.d. 1490.]

P. 177, l. 9. one, i.e. Alexander; though in l. 11 the poet begins to tell first of all about his grandfather Amyntas.

21. Twoo sonnes. Rather three, viz. Alexander, Perdiccas, and Philip. Perdiccas, like Alexander, was put to death by the wiles of Eurydice, according to MS. C.C.C. 219.

22. The variations of spelling are due to the fact that the copyist has evidently made alterations of his own in order to make the significations plainer. Thus elder (which occurs again in l. 27) is explained by elde. It is very fortunate that he has been at the pains to preserve the old spelling. It must be noted that he sometimes places the old spelling, sometimes the modernized spelling, in the text. Thus, in l. 1132, we find Dupe altered to deep, but in l. 1156 he writes deep, with the old spelling dupe above it. I have therefore, in all cases, adopted that spelling which seems rightly to belong to the original MS.

P. 178. l. 28. ll. 4651 and 5226 of the Werwolf resemble this one.


33. In this line, the cross-stroke to the initial D is made in the MS., showing plainly that the letter D was used in the original. In other places, the copyist has written the small letter § without the cross-stroke, as in l. 41, and elsewhere, and I have not always noticed this; for the omission of the cross-stroke is very common even in a thirteenth century MS.; see Mr Morris's Genesis and Exodus (E. E. T. S., 1865). It may be added that the copyist has two ways of making a d; one with a long up-stroke, i.e. § without the cross-stroke, and the other with the up-stroke curled round to the left and brought down again. Only the former of
these is used where $e$ is meant. This is a convenient place for observing that there is a second copy (inferior and with several omissions) of the first 43 lines, at a later page of the MS., viz. on fol. 16 b. The following variations may be noted:—In 1.2, for thinken, the second copy has thyken, with an e over the y. No doubt the original had thenken (the right spelling, see Werwolf, l. 711), and it was rendered by thinken or thyken. In 1.3, for whether, another reading is outer. In 1.4, for loose the second copy has lose, which is better; I am convinced that the original could not have had so many double vowels as abound in this copy; thus yee and ooper in 1.1 should rather have been ye and ooper. In 1.38, for her the second copy has the more usual spelling hur.

44. In the Werwolf, we find the same method of concluding a paragraph, and nearly in the same words; see ll. 5396, 5466.

47. "Igitur alexander, inter prima initia regni, bellum ab illiriiis, pacta mercede et philippo fratre dato obside, redemit. Interiecto quoque tempore, per eundem obsidem cum thebanis gratiam pacis reconciliat. Que res philippo maxima incrementa egregie indolis dedit. Si quidem thebis triennio obses habitus, prima puericæ rudimenta in urbe seuercitatis antiquæ et in domo epaminondæ summi et philosophi et imperatoris deposit." MS. C.C.C. 219, fol. 2. And see Orosius, as above.

P. 180, ll. 87, 88. hym betides, For hee. The MS. has hee betides, for hym, with ee over ym in the latter word. The reading given in the text is the only one that can be grammatically correct.

102. This date is from Orosius. It is right within a few years.

109. Assyriens, i.e. Illyrians. "Post hos, bello in illiriiis (sic) translated, multa milia hostium cedit; urbem nobilissimam larisseam capit." MS. C.C.C. 219, fol. 2 b. So in Orosius; and indeed, the Assyrians are out of the question. The reader must expect to find the greatest confusion in the proper names; in one of the French copies, for instance, Artaxerxes is called Arressessers. In l. 130, we have Larissa called the city of the Assyrians.

P. 181, ll. 119, 131. In both places, the e in Larissea or Larisse has a slight tag below it. In Latin MSS., this denotes æ, and we thus have another slight indication that our author translated from the Latin. Cf. note to l. 255.

124. Over deraine is written, as a gloss, the later spelling deraigne. One or two quite unimportant variations of this kind I have omitted to mention.

133. "Inde Thessaliam non magis amore victorie, quam ambitione habendorum equitum Thessalorum, quorum robur ut exercitu suo admisseret, invasit."—Orosius, as above.

135. The MS. has see, with swee or sua above it, hardly legible. In l. 299, there is a similar difficult word. Considering both passages, the word blundered over is probably sese, sesen. Cf. Seseden in l. 234.

P. 182, ll. 155—170. Orosius simply says, "Igitur victis Atheniensibus, subjectisque Thessalis," and in MS. C.C.C. 219 we merely find, "Quibus
rebus feliciter prouenientibus." That the poet has spun this out into 16 lines seems to me highly probable, and it will therefore be but a vain search to look for an original that may agree with his translation more closely. Just below we have 22 lines, 178—199, which seem to me evidently his own, every word of them.

172. Arisha or Erubel. In his edition of Orosius, Havercamp adopts the spelling Aruba, the common reading being Eurucha; we also find the spellings Arucha, Erybba, Arymba, &c. Compare—"Olimpiadem, neoptolemi regis molossorum filiam, uxorem ducit, conciliante nuptias fratre patrueli auctore iriginis sarraba rege molossorum, qui sororem olimpiadis trodam in matrimonio habebat; qua causa illi exitium (sic) malorumque omnium fuit." MS. C.C.C. 219, fol. 3.

P. 183, l. 199. Cf. Werwolf, l. 671.

P. 184, l. 234. Sededen begins with a double long s. Wherever I have printed ss, it is to denote a character resembling a German sz.

240. "(Aruba) privatus in exilio consenuit."—Orosius.

P. 185, l. 248. hampered is doubtless the word wanted. It occurs in the Werwolf, l. 1115, &c.

255. Comothonham. Several MSS. of Orosius have "Cū mothonam urbem oppugnaret," &c.; where Ču means Cum. Hence the strange word Comothonham, repeated in l. 310; and hence, also, a clear proof that the poet translated from a Latin original, as he himself asserts in l. 458.

256. The MS. has "holde menne þere," but the alliteration shows that we must read holde; holde belongs to the next line, which see.

254. greffe, i. e. vexation, anger; cf. Werwolf, 4418.

268. areblast. Rather, read arblast, which the copyist has turned into aireblast, i. e. air-blast!

P. 186, l. 284. merken. Probably not an error for maken, as might be thought; for the word occurs again in l. 932. See the Glossary.

291. flocke. Possibly an error for folke; yet flocke makes good sense. Soundes or soundes is no doubt put for sondes, messengers.

292. The MS. reading "Gamus" must be a mistake for Gainus or Ganus; see Gainus in the Glossary.

295. cournales; see Werwolf, l. 2858.

299. The MS. has seeen or seene, with i over the ee. The right word is perhaps sesen, written sesene, and read as science by the copyist.

302. Here and elsewhere many a is written "many a," with the a above the line, as if it did not belong to the phrase; but see Werwolf, ll. 3410, 3411. A large portion of the description of this siege of Methone is doubtless of the poet's own invention.

P. 187, l. 329. The outline of the story of these wars is given in Orosius.

P. 188, l. 347. wone is no doubt the right word, weende being an ignorant gloss upon it, subversive of the sense.

349. MS. has strane, or straue. Perhaps it means, "Steads, stirred from the place, strain under men." Otherwise, for strane read stronge, and the sense is, "Steads stirred from the place under strong men."
For men under = under men, see l. 1188.

362. *spenen* is the right reading, and is put for *spenden*, like *wen* for *wend*, &c.

P. 189, l. 391. The alteration of *Phosus* into *Φοσυς* is a convincing proof that the copyist took an occasional liberty with the spelling. He could not have had *Φοσυς* before him in an Old English MS. of the 14th century.

P. 190, l. 416. The copyist has written *stelger*, and marked it as being a word he did not understand. The words may have been run together in the older MS. *Stel ger* is simply "steel gear."

421. Here is another proof that the poet probably followed the Latin of *Orosius*. We find there the phrase—"Philomelo duce"—whence he adopted the form *Philomelo* in l. 364, and did not alter it here. Yet *Orosius* afterwards has—"sequenti praelio inter immensas utrinque populi strages Philometus occisus est: in cujus locum Phocenses Onomarchum ducem creaverunt."

P. 191, l. 439. *3eme*. The MS. has either "3enn" or "3eme." The latter is right; see l. 365.

445. This line means, "that ever they paused in the strife, (though it had caused them) to die upon the field."

451. *for his grete yic*, in return for his great eye; a curious way of expressing that his vow, mentioned in l. 281, had been fulfilled.

452. Here the more historical part of the story ceases, and the romance properly begins. From this point, also, the poet translates from a different source, as explained in the Preface. Ll. 452—1092 should be compared with the first 722 lines of Mr Stevenson's edition of "The Alliterative Romance of Alexander" (Roxburghe Club, 1849); from MS. Ashmole 44. See also Gower, Conf. Amant, bk. vi.

457. This shews that the poet used more books than one to translate from. His regret that he could not trace the lineage of Nectanabus shews that his probable object in the preceding part of the poem was to trace the lineage of Alexander, and to say something about his father and grandfather.

459. *Nectanabus*; called also *Anectanabus*, *Anec*, or *Natabus*. The story of Nectanabus is utterly rejected by Lambert li Tors. See "Li Romans d'Alixandre," par Lambert li Tors et Alexandre de Bernay; herausgegeben von Heinrich Michelant: Stuttgart, 1846, p. 5.

460. This line occurs, slightly altered, in the *Werwolf*, l. 119.

463. Some such word as *kene* or *kid* must be supplied.

465. *Y-wis* may mean *prudent*, *knowing* (A.S. *ge-wis*), but as it is elsewhere *always* an adverb in both poems, I prefer to think that the sentence is incomplete; and that this line ought to be followed by some such line as—

"For a wel kud clerke · and koynt in his liue."

P. 192, l. 473. *But*, except.

475—483. The Latin is—"non movit militiam, neque preparavit exercitum, sed intravit cubiculum palatii sui; et deprehendens concham
eream plenam aqua pluiali, tenensque in manu virgam cream, hic per magicos incantationes intelligebat in ipsa concha classes nanium super eum potentissime venientes."

493. *nine grete nations.* The number nine may have been selected merely for the alliteration. The names of these nations vary greatly in the different copies. The "Augni" or "Augni" (for our MS. may be read either way, on account of the m or n being here represented by a horizontal line) may perhaps be the Αξανοὶ of the Greek, or the "Argiri" of the Latin text. By the "Bosorii" the translator would probably mean the men of Bussorah or Bassorah; yet this city was not founded till A.D. 636. It represents the Βόσπορος of the Greek text, and possibly answers to the "Rosphariens" of the French text (MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 7517). The "Agiofagi"—("Agiophii" in the Latin text)—are the "Agriophagi" mentioned in the Latin MS. No. 8518 of the Bibl. du Roi:

"Another folk woneth in the west half,
That eteth never kow no kalf,
Bote of panteris and lyouns,
And that they nymeth as veneses.
Othr flesch, no othr fysch,
No othr bred, heo no haveth, y-wis.
Feorne men, and othr therby,
Clepehe heom Agofugy."


P. 193, l. 515. The Christian sentiment in this line and in l. 523, of ascribing strength to God only, is the poet's own.

I here add, by way of illustration, the speech of Nectanabus as given in the various texts.

Σν μεν, καλως και ἐπιεικῶς ἢν ἐπιστεύθης φρονμαί φυλαττων, καὶ μὴ ταιτα λέγε. Δεικως γὰρ καὶ οὐ στρατιωτικῶς ἐφθέγξω. Οὐ γάρ ἐν ῥχλω ἡ δύναμις, ἀλλὰ ἐν προθυμίᾳ ὁ τάλεμος. Καὶ γὰρ εἰς λέων πολλὰς ἐλάφοις ἐχειρώσατο. Καὶ εἰς λύκως πολλὰς ἀγέλας πομπηϊν ἐσκύλουσεν. "ὢςτε ὦν σύ πορευθῆς ὑμα τοῖς ἐν ὑποταγῇ σοι στρατιώταις τὴν ἱερὰν παράταξιν φύλαττε: λόγῳ γὰρ ἐν τῶν βαρβάρων ἀναρίθμητον πλήθος πελάγει ἐπικαλύψω."—MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 113 (suppl.); quoted in Notices des Manuscrits de la Bibliothèque du Roi; tom. xiii. p. 223.

"Custodiam quam tibi condidi bene observa; sed non tamen sicut princeps militie egisti, sed sicct homo timidus. Uirtus enim non ho valet in multitudine populi, sed in fortitudine animorum; an nescis quod nunus leo multos ceros in fugam vertit?"—Historia Alexandri; edition of 1490, page 1.

"Va-t-en à la garde que je t'ai commandee, et veille curieusement, et pense de bien garder ta recomandise. Car tu n'a pas parle comme prince de chevalerie, mais comme homme pauvreux. Car il n'assiert pas à gouverneur de peuple qu'il s'esponsente pour grant quantite de gent; car victoire ne gist pas en multitude de gent, mais en vigueur et force de courage. N'as tu pas veu par plusieurs fois que ung [lyon?] meit à la
fuite grant quantite de serfz [serfz ?].

1. Aussi se peut poy contretenir la grant multitude contre les vigureux."—MS. Bibl. du Roi; quoted in the above vol., p. 287. See also Alexander, ed. Stevenson; p. 4, ll. 97—110.

P. 194, l. 532. Fleete certainly means to float here; yet the Latin has "videbat qualiter egiptii sternebantur impetu classium Barbarorum." Out of this the translator has made this curious passage about the "god of Barbe," the origin of which is to be traced to a misunderstanding of the Greek text, which says, "he sees the gods of the Egyptians steering the enemies' boats, and the armies of the Barbarians being guided by them."

545. white sendal; "linea vestimenta."

549. let trusse, commanded his men to pack up.

557. Seraphin; so spelt in the French text. The Latin has Serapis.

P. 195, l. 565. He shall hye hym againe. The response of the oracle must be given in the words of the Greek text. It runs thus: ὁ φθηγὼν βασιλεὺς ἥζει πάλιν ἐν αἰγύπτῳ, ὁ γνήσιος, ἀλλὰ νεάζων, καί τοὺς ἔχθροὺς Ἰμών πέρας ὁποταξέι. Here the word πέρας is ambiguous, and may mean "having destroyed" or "the Persians." M. Berger de Xivrey draws special attention to this oracle, which he considers as the basis of the whole romance. It was fulfilled, not by the return of the old man Nectanabus, but by the visit to Egypt of his son, the young man Alexander. It is accordingly alluded to again in the passage where Alexander, seeing the great image (mentioned by our author in l. 568), inquires whom it represents. He is told it represents Nectanabus, upon hearing which he falls down and kisses the feet of it. Cf. Alexander, ed. Stevenson, l. 1135; Weber's Metr. Rom. vol. i. p. 67.

574. Here begins a new paragraph—"Quomodo Anectanabus ascendit palatium ad Olimpiam reginam;" and in Mr Stevenson's edition is the heading—"Secundus passus Alexandri."

584. "Aue regina Macedonie! designatus ei dicere domina."

P. 196, l. 594. "Uerbum regale dixisti, quando egptios nominasti."

596. The MS. has worclich, a mere error for wortlich, which is another spelling of worthlich; cf. l. 1024.

601. ludene of pat language, the speech (or meaning) of that language.

"Sum understandis in a stounde · the steven (voice) of the briddis," &c.

Alexander, ed. Stev. l. 252.

Compare also the passage in Chaucer about Canace understanding the language of birds.

—sche understood wel every thing
That eny soul may in his lydne sayn,
And couthe answer him in his lydne again.

The S quyeres Tale, Pars Secunda; ll. 88—90.

613. We should rather read, Too defend pee fro doole.

616. Imped, set; lit. engrafted. "Tabulam cream et eburneam

1 The editor has a note—"On reconnait là les idées provenant de la supériorité si marquée de la chevalerie, au moyen âge, sur les serfs et sur les vilains." True, no doubt; but serfz probably means stags in this passage, nevertheless.

620. The contents of the circles are wrongly given. They should be (1.) The 12 intelligences—"duodecim intelligentias"—"les xii, intelligences, c'est assavoir les xii. entendemens;" (2.) the signs of the zodiac, called in MS. Ashmole "a dusan of bestes;" and (3.) the courses of the sun and moon.

P. 197, l. 628. forcer, a box; "une boiste d'ivoire." It contained a species of horoscope, in which were the seven planets, to each of which was assigned a particular kind of stone. Thus in l. 634 we should rather read, "Seven stones," but the poet has written Fourre for the sake of alliteration, regardless of facts. The seven stones are mentioned in the Latin MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 8518. "Jovem quippe viseres ærino lapide nuncupatum. Solem cristallo, Lunam adamanate, Martem dici sub lapide hematite, Mercurium smaragdo. Venus autem saphirina erat; Saturnus in ophiite. At vero horoscopus lygdiinus erat." The Greek text has the same.

656—674. This passage is not in the Greek, Latin, or French texts, and was inserted by the translator from another source (see note to l. 837), to account for Philip's ill-will against Olympias. The interpolation is needless, as a dream is contrived by Nectanabus expressly for Philip's information soon afterwards; see ll. 807—874. The present passage is also omitted in MS. Ashmole 44.

P. 199, l. 694. "Neque iuvenis neque senex, et barbam canis habens ornatam. Unde si placet, esto illi parata," &c. The "silver horns," however, are essential, as being the chief characteristic of the god Ammon.


698. glisiing is another form of glisiande, glistening.

700. Supply the word pee. Nye, to draw nigh, occurs in ll. 739, 817; and nye pee in l. 764.

702. "Si hec videro, non vt prophetam nec diuinum, sed vt deum ipsum adorabo."

710-744. This passage is much amplified. It is much shorter in the Ashmole MS., and the Latin merely has—"cuellit herbas, terebusque eas et success illarum tuit, et fecit incantationes per diabolica figmenta; vt in cadem nocte Olimpia deum Hamon concumbentem secum vidercet, dicentemque ei post concubitum, mulier, concepist:i defensorum tuum." P. 200, l. 726. rive. The MS. has rive, with f over the u, rightly explaining rive by the modern word rife.


756. No nooper, none other, nothing else. So also bi narmes for bin armes (Werwolf, l. 666).

P. 201, l. 760. Too waite at a window, to watch at a window. A favourite phrase of our author's. See Werwolf, ll. 779, 2982, 3030, 3300.

764. The line would run as well again if pee nye were altered to nye
pee. Compare—"Nam ille deus in figura draconis ad te veniet; et exinde humanam formam accipiens; et mea similitudine apparebit."

770. "Si veritatem probare valebis, te quasi patrem pueri habebo." But this is sometimes curiously altered, as in the following:

"Then salle I cherishe the with chere; as thou my child were,
Loute the lovely and love; alle my lyfe days."

Alexander, ed. Stevenson, l. 368.

774, 775. These two fine lines certainly surpass the bald statement—
"circa autem primam vigiliam noctis."

779. staked on wightes, fell relaxingly upon men. Wightes, not mighty, is the right reading. Compare—

"Qwen it was metyn to the merke; that meen ware taryst,¹
And folke was on thair firste slepe; and it was furth eyyne."

Alexander, ed. Stevenson, l. 374.

781. a dragones drem, a dragon's drooning. Drem or dream is sometimes a loud, drooning sound. The Latin has—"et sibilando contra cubiculum Olimpie cepit transaulare." The French has "ala suflant entour le lit." Cf. II. 982, 985.

782. makes his lidene, i.e. talks softly. Compare ludene above, l. 601.

P. 202, l. 802. Deemes, i.e. will deem. Philip had been from home for some time; she wonders what he will say when he returns.

808. "Euellens herbas, trituravit eas et tulit succum illarum, apprehendensque auem marinam, cepit super eam incantare, illam de succo herbarum lienis."

813. Compare—

"And [with?] the wose of the wede; hire wengis anoynes."

Alexander, ed. Stevenson, l. 413.

817. The phrase nied þe night occurs in the Werwolf, l. 770.

P. 203, l. 824. The Latin has "deus Hamon;" and "Amon" is here mentioned in MS. Ashmole.

826. The word deede was miswritten deene owing to confusion with deerne. Compare—

"pat deede derne; do no mon scholde."

Piers Plowman, ed. Skeat, A. x. 199.

In the Latin follows—"quod videret os uulue consuere et annulo aureo consignare et in ipso annulo erat lapis vbi erat sculptum caput leonis et currus solis et gladius peracutus."

837. nyed, approached (a favourite word with our author), is almost certainly the word required here. The following passage is worth notice here.

"Philipe aussi long temps apres ses nopees songea quil seelloit le
ventre de sa femme dung grant seel anquel estoit graue lymaige dung
lyon; par lequel songe, comme plusieurs eussent expose a phellippe qu'il

¹ Read "ta ryst," i.e. to rest.
se donnast garde de sa femme, Aristander le deuin affermoit quelle auoit chargie denfant. Car on ne seelle point les choses vuydes ; et que elle se delieroit dung enfant, plain de courage et ayant nature de lyon.

Deuant ce on auoit venu vng dragon couchant empres olympique lors dormit, la quelle chose Refroida tresfortPhilippe enuers elle.” MS. Douce 318, chap. iii. The same MS. informs us further that Philip avoided Olymias, because he feared magic or poison; that he sent to Delphos, and was told to sacrifice to the god “Amon,” and that he would lose an eye as a punishment for having beheld Amon with her; all which is related by Plutarch. But Eratosthenes says, his mother only told Alexander the secret of his birth on his setting out on his expedition. A similar story is told of the mother of Scipio Africanus. Plutarch explains the dragon story by saying that Olymias belonged to a tribe that religiously cherished serpents of great size. Justin says, Olymias dreamt of having conceived a serpent. “Vincent lystorial” (i.e. Vincent of Beauvais, in his “Speculum Historiale”) ascribes the engendrure of Alexander to Neptanabus, but this is flat against Holy Scripture, since in the book of Maccabees [bk. 1. chap. i. v. 1] Alexander is expressly called the “son of Philip.” All this, and more, is to be found in the above-mentioned MS., chap. iii.

853. pe some course of pe sell, the course of the sun upon the seal. MS. Ashmole has “the course one the sonne.”

P. 204, l. 855. some rist, rising of the sun, the far East; “ad orientem, vnde sol egreditur.”

860. The MS. has boldes, but we must read holdes; cf. note to l. 256.

873. meting, dream. See the Glossary.

875. Here begins a new paragraph in the Latin, with the heading, “Qualiter Anectanabus in figura draconis antecedebat Philippum in prelio deuincendo et hostes.”

879. lasches, lashes, i. e. heavy strokes. Cf. the phrase “to deal dints ;” Werwolf, 3440.

883. Deraide, acted madly or terribly. It is the past tense, not the past participle, but we ought perhaps to supply hym after it.

P. 205, l. 895. Here loren is correctly glossed by lorne, i. e. lost.

900-953. The whole of this passage is an interpolation from another source, and belongs rather to history than to the romance. The drift of it agrees with the account given by Orosius.

901. The MS. has—“Was going too pe our Greece,” &c. But the word “pe” must be corrupt, being an article without a substantive, and, moreover, a verb is required. I propose ride as very probably being the correct reading, as it is the expression used in 1.5471 of the Werwolf in a similar case. If the first two letters of ride were erased, de might easily be confused with Se or pe.

903. The Athenians stopped him by occupying the pass of Thermopyle. “Athenienses ... angustias Thermopylarum ... occupavere.” Orosius, ed. Havercamp, 1738, p. 171.

904. to keuere him gate, to recover (or obtain) for himself a passage.
908. *pe entres*; the entries, i.e. the pass. *Enforced*, strengthened, forcibly occupied.

909. We must read either *po marches*, or *pat marches*; for the plural form *po* see l. 912. The MS. has *pat marches*.

911. *agrised* is a gloss upon *agrise*, the form used by our author.

913. Philip, failing to harm his enemies, cruelly attacks his own allies; "paratum in hostes bellum vertit in socios." *Orosius*.

P. 206, l. 923. Besides of, we almost require to insert *was*.

"Hee wrathfull of wille was · wronglich þære."

928. Lines 2621, 2647 in the *Werwolf* resemble this line.

933. The MS. has *traie*, with *be* written before it above the line; perhaps *traie* is the right reading, and *betraie* the gloss upon it.


940. *He ne left no lenger*, he remained no longer; cf. l. 950.

942. *fares*, goes. This makes sense, but I suspect the right word is *cayres*.

944. "Post hæc in Cappadociam transit, ibique bellum pari perfidia gessit, captos per dolum finitimos reges interfecit, totamque Cappadociam imperio Macedonie subdidit." *Orosius*. The editor (Havercamp) remarks that this is false, and that *Cappadociam* is a mere mistake for *Chalcidicam* or *Chalcedem*; and he is doubtless right, as the siege of Olynthus in Chalcidice must be meant.

P. 207, l. 954. At about this line we drop the history and return to the romance, taking it up from l. 899.

955. "Nevertheless I know (it) not yet, nay, as I trow." *Not = ne wot*. This is awkward enough. It represents the Latin—"Peccasti, inquit, et non peccasti, quia violentiam a deo passa es."

974. This line occurs in the *Werwolf*, l. 1416; cf. also l. 5250. It should be observed that a new paragraph begins here in the Latin, with the heading, "Quomodo Anecanabus in figuram draconis apparuit Philippo in conuiuo, et osculatus est Olimpiam."


P. 208, l. 982. See note to l. 781, and cf. l. 985. The Latin has "fortiter sibilatam."

992. *iuuand lud*, living man; a favourite phrase of our author's; see l. 790, and *Werwolf*, ll. 1690, 3678, 5429.

994. *greedy bigo*, grievously beset; *bigo* is glossed by *bigon*. 999. Here begins a new paragraph in the Latin, with the heading, "Quomodo auis generavit ouum in gremio philippi, de quo contracto exiuit serpentis, qui statim mortuus est."

1004. "He laid an egg in his lap, and then hurries away." *Hee* might stand for *she*, but *him* is always masculine. We should certainly have expected to find the feminine, as in the Latin and in MS. Ashmole 44.

1008. *to-shett*, i.e. "brast all esoundir," as MS. Ashmole has it. Cf. *too-clef* in the next line.
P. 209, l. 1013. had in his hed, got his head in. Deide is the right spelling, and dyed the gloss.

1022. Raighe is the old spelling, reigne the gloss.

1024. wortlych is found as an occasional spelling of worthlych; worthly is a gloss. Cf. l. 596.

1025. "Ere he come unto the country that he came from."

1026. doluen and ded; more correctly, ded and doluen, i.e. dead and buried. Cf. Werwolf, 5252, 5280.

1030. room may mean room, space; and hence, a while.

1031-2. "Ere he may wend with his host to his (own) land where he was fostered and fed—it befalls him to die."

1033. Here begins a new paragraph in the Latin, without a heading, and in MS. Ashmole 44 is the heading "Tercius Passus Alexandri."

1034. A portion of the story is here lost. I might have supplied the omission from MS. Ashmole 44 (see Stevenson's edition, II. 525—672), but the great length of this passage and the consideration that to supply the omission from another alliterative poem might lead to confusion between the two, were reasons against this. Or it might have been supplied from the Latin, beginning at—"Appropinquans autem tempus pariuendi"—and ending—"Audiens hee Olimpia terrore pertertia vocavit Aene-tanabum, et dixit." It seemed to me, however, that a quotation from the French would be more acceptable, and the omission is supplied therefore from MS. Bibl. du Roi, No. 7517, as edited in the 13th vol. of "Notices des Manuscrits," &c.; pp. 297-299. The following words may require explanation:

chev, fell; —croulla, shook; —nois, snow (explained by neige by the editor of the French text); —targa, tarried, delayed; —me feust, perhaps we should read ne feust, for the Latin has, "cogitani quod infantulus iste nullatenus nutriatur," and the Ashmole MS. has, "That this frute shall hane na fostring' ne be fed noithire"; —voir (Lat. "glaucus"), gray; MS. Ashmole has "zedlow;" —sestature, stature; —non pour quant, nevertheless; —ysneltete, quickness (cf. O.E. snell); —doubta mout, feared greatly.

P. 211, l. 1038. "He was very well pleased with his noble deeds, but (then) he changed his demeanour," &c.

1041. The MS. has maried, with r over the i. Hence, the old word was marred, altered to maried; for marred is a common word with our author. Marred too care, vexed unto great anxiety, is a not very intelligible phrase, and therefore liable to alteration. It means much the same as wofull in hert in the next line.

1043, 1044. Blank spaces are left in the MS. for the two half-lines. Compare—

"Be noxt afrixt," quoth the freke · "ne afrayd noythir,
It sall the noy noxt a neg · nane of his thoxtes."

Alexander, ed. Stevenson, 1. 675.

In which passage, a neg is equivalent to an eg. There is nothing lost (save a half-line) between ll. 1044 and 1045.
P. 212, l. 1054. *fonde I, mec tell,* I ask (you to) tell me.
1055. Cf. "Quat sterne is at ye stody one quare stekis it in hevyne." Alex. l. 683.
1061. *inkest,* blackest. The MS. is rather indistinct; the "*kest*" is plain, but the beginning of the word is represented by a straight horizontal stroke (elsewhere used for *m* or *n*), with a dot over the very commencement of it. *Enkê=ink* occurs in "Meidan Maregrete," ed. Cockayne, stanza 61; and in Wycliffe's version of the Bible. The Latin merely has, "Sequere me hora noctis," &c.
1076-7. Compare the version in MS. Ashmole—
"Alexander, athill sonne · (quoth A nec his syre),
Loo yondir, behald over thi hede · and se my batter werdis (dire destinies).
The eylle sterne of Erenles · how egirly it soroses,
And how the mode Marecre · makis sa mekill joy,
Loo yondir, the gentill Jubiter · how jolyte he schynes." (ll. 701-705.)
1080-1. *Hee* pored, i.e. Nectanabus. *Hee* braides, i.e. Alexander.
Perhaps there are a few lines lost between these two. Compare—
"The domes of my destany · drawis to me swythe,
Thik and thrathly am I thret · and thole mone I sone
The slæter of myne aven son · as me was sett ever."
Unethis werped be that wordes · the whitt me recordis,
Thanne Alexander as sone · was at him behind,
And on the bake with slike a bire · he bare with his handis
That donne he drafe to the depest · of the dike bothom."
Alexander, ll. 706—712.
The Latin has—"Fata mea mihi propinquam mortem a filio meo comminatur. Taliter eo vidente, accessit ad eum propinquius alexander," &c.

P. 213, l. 1092. *sounk or hee ver,* ere he was sunken.
1094. This corresponds with l. 722 of MS. Ashmole 44. Though there is not the slightest hint of any omission in Mr Stevenson's edition, there must be several pages lost in the Ashmole MS. between this line and the next; for the story leaps at once from the dying words of Nectanabus to the duel of Alexander and Nicolas, entirely omitting the rest of the story as told in the Greaves MS. Hence from l. 1094 to the end is the *only existing copy in alliterative verse* of this portion of the story. It does not go quite far enough to supply the whole of the lacuna in the Ashmole MS., but it nearly does so, contributing 155 lines towards it.
1094. *hee* in this line is probably put for *hue,* i.e. *she,* the word *soule* being feminine.
1095. *armed,* fortified, bold.
1098. The French has—"et prist maintenant le corps et le porta au palais. Quant la royne le vit, si lui dist, ‘Filz Alixandre, que aportes tu?’"
1103—1105. These words belong to *Alexander.* The French has—"En yecelle maniere que tu soufriris que il feusse mon pere, à tort, pour ce que tu ne le me deis, l'as tu fait occire à tort."
1107. heate, false spelling for hete, command.

1110. The initial T of this letter is rather larger than usual, and a new paragraph begins here. At this point I should conjecture that the Quartus Passus of the Ashmole MS. may have commenced. In our MS. "A horss" is here written in the margin, to intimate that the story of Bucephalus begins here. In the Latin, a new paragraph begins here with the heading—"Qualiter quidam princeps de Capadocia aduxit equum bucafalum ad philippum regem macedonum."

P. 214, l. 1114. a hedde as a bole, a head like a bull; an allusion to the etymology of Bucephalus, from ὑφός, an ox, and κεφαλή, a head. The name, however, really means a horse branded with a mark like a bull's head; see Liddell and Scott's Greek Lexicon. I here add the description of Bucephalus as given in the Old High German poem of Alexander, written in the twelfth century by a priest named Lamprecht, as a specimen of that version. For the translation I crave indulgence, as it may not be quite correct. The letter z (italic) is used instead of a letter in Weismann's edition which resembles a z with a slight tag to it.

daz ros daz was wunderlich
irre unde vil strich,
sel unde stanc von gescäfnisse,
des sult ir sin gwisse,
iz hête unzalliche craft
unde unmäzliche macht;
iz irbeiz di lüte unde irslüch,
iz was freislich gnühl,
ine was siu munt,
daz wil ih ú tún kunt,
alsetine esele getän.
di nasen wären iné wité úf getän,
sié óren wären iné lanc,
daz houbit magir unde slanc.
sié ougen wären iné allirvare
glich eineme fliegender are.
Sín hals was iné lochekte,

The horse was wonderfully
wilful and very full-of-strife,
quick and strong of shape,
(of it should ye be certain).
He had unspeakable strength,
and measureless might;
he bit people and slew (them),
he was terrible enough.
To him, was his mouth
(that will I make known to you)
just-like an ass's made.
His nostrils were wide opened,
his ears were to him long,
his head meagre and lank.
his eyes were to him of-all-colours
like (those of) a flying eagle.
His neck was to him covered-with-
locks,
I ween he was of a lion's kind.
On his shanks had he heifer's hair,
on his sides leopards' spots:
like Saracen, so ALSO Christian man
never a better horse won.


1130. hym may refer to the spokesman of the messengers; but hem would be a better reading.

1131. The French has—"si dist à ses ministres, Recevez ce cheval,
et le metes en une grant quage de fer, et illeuc l'encloys," &c. He commanded bygge, would mean "he commanded (men) to build."
1144. Who prickes is surely the right reading; compare—"celle nuit songa li roys que une voys li disoit, que cil qui chevaucheroit se cheval regneroit en son rangue apres sa mort."

P. 215, l. 1158. in theyr looke, in their sight.

1159. freten, false spelling for freten, eaten.

1161. The MS. may be read as "iustes" or "iynses," the word being indistinct. The former, however, is certainly meant.

1162. The line ends with the letter b followed by a space; beaste is the spelling in l. 1130.

1167. abowed, like abouted (for which see Werwolf, 3716, 3721), should perhaps be followed by the word to.

P. 216, l. 1186. lete hym worthe, let him be, let him do as he liked. See note to Werwolf, l. 3597.

1193. The MS. has stynt, with ed above it to the right. Thus stynt is the old reading, stynted the gloss.

1201. We learn from the Latin that Philip grants Alexander's request by giving him a royal chariot and a company of knights, and the story of the duel between Alexander and Nicolaus or Nicholas follows shortly after. But our author again digresses from the romance story at this point, and takes up the history of Orosius.

P. 217, l. 1226. The story of the Finding of the Cross by Helen, the mother of Constantine, is well known, and is here alluded to.

1231. This line begins with "For Philip," but the For is redundant, as it appears in the line above. For "to wynne" we should probably read "wynne," as the to is inserted above the line by the copyist, who may not have known that infinitives are often used without it.

1233, 1234. "For that, in treason or guile, none should rob the man," &c.

P. 218, l. 1241. The conclusion answers to the passage in Orosius—"Philippus vero, post longam et irritam obsidionem, ut pecuniam quam ob-sidendo exphanserat, praedando repararet, piraticam agressus est." Orosius, lib. iii., cap. xiii., ed. Havercamp, 1738, p. 174. We may readily imagine that the poet, after a description of Philip's fleet and piratical expeditions, would, on arriving at the passage—"ad Scythiam quoque cum Alexandro filio praedandi intentione pertransiit"—revert to Alexander's exploits at the mention of his name. No doubt also, instead of giving the historical account, he must have taken up the romance again by relating Alexander's duel with Nicolas; for which see Mr. Stevenson's edition and Weber's Metrical Romances.

But it may fairly be observed, that the portion of the Romance exhibited in this fragment is, in a certain sense, complete. The whole Romance may be divided into three parts: (1.) the infancy of Alexander; (2.) his acts; (3.) his death. The first of these is contained in the first 1201 lines of the fragment, and lines 1202—1249 do not properly belong to the Romance at all. To add a sketch of the remaining two parts is inexpedient, on account of the great length of the second part. The first part is contained in the first 37 pages of Weber, whilst the whole Romance occupies 327 pages.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

ABBREVIATIONS, &c.


The following are used in a special sense—v. a verb in the infinitive mood; pr. s. present tense, 3rd person singular; pr. pl. present tense, 3rd person plural; pt. s. past tense, 3rd person singular; pt. pl. past tense, 3rd person plural. Other persons are denoted by 1 p. and 2 p. Also imp. is used for the imperative mood, and pp. for the past or passive participle.

Note. Numbers with an obelus (†) prefixed, refer to the "Alisaunder."

The numbers refer to the lines of the two poems. For an account of the method of reference in the former edition, see note at the end of this index.

A-, throughout the poem, is generally disjoined from the word of which it forms a prefix or part, and this is universally the practice in MSS. of ancient English poetry. In most, if not all, words of Saxon origin it represents and is equivalent to the S. on, an, of, or af, as a-bote, a-doun, a-dread, a-jougd, a-line, a-nilz, a-slepe, a-wy, a-wounded, &c. The same rule holds good in other branches of the Gothic language. See Ihre and Wachter. —M.

A, int. ah! 602, 663, 845, 928, &c.
A, 2 p. s. imp. have, 978, 1177.
Abaie, 206, Abaye, 46, n. F. bay. A term borrowed from the Baie, 35, F. hunting phrase, être aux abois, to stand at bay. See abois in Cotgrave, and abash in Wedgwood.

A-bate, v. to abate, 1141.
A-bowed to, bowed down to, † 1167.
A-buschid, pp. F. in ambush, 3634.
Ac, 106, &c.}
A, 678, conj. S. but.
Ek, 715, v. F.
A-chape, 1248,
A-schape, 1671, 1855, 3013, v. F.
A-coupyng, 3438,
A-cord, n. F. agreement, 2964. Ch.
A-cord, n. F. agreement, 2964. Ch.
A-coupyng, 3438,}
A-coupyng, 3602, n. F. violent

Acoyed, pt. s. enticed, 56. Ch. See Coies.

A-curentd, pt. pl. F. encountered, 3002.

A-day, 190, in a day, in the A-daye, 610, day-time.

A-dote, pr. s. grows silly, 2054. See Doted.


Adouted, pp. F. feared, dreaded, + 33, + 247, + 400.


A-fraied, pp. afraid, 2158.

A-frihtan, frightened, aghast.


Agast, pp. aghast, terrified, 1778.


A-gelt. See A-gult.


A-greued, pp. grieved, 641, 2116. [Miswritten a-greues, in l. 1076.]


A-hist, pt. s. was called, 586. See Hist.

Ai, n. S. an egg, + 1004, + 1007.

Aie, n. S. awe, fear, + 1243.

A-ioyned, pp. F. adjoining, near, 1753.

Ak. See Ac.

A-knowe, pp. S. Always joined with the verb ben, to be, as "was aknowe," 421; "ich un aknowe," 4391; "we be aknowe," 1783. To be aknowe = to be aware, to acknowledge, confess. "Beñ a-knowe wyfully. Confiteor. Be a-knowe a-gyne wylle. Futeor." Prompt. Parv. Cf. A.S. on-caduan.

Al, Alle, adj. S. all. "To write correctly al should be used for the sing. now. and alle for the pl. (as the S. eat and eale) but the rule is often violated, particularly in MSS. of the 14th and subsequent centuries. This observation might be extended to a large class of adjectives and substantives which have now lost their final syllables."—M. All alle. At al, in all things, 283, 597. Al bothe, both of them, where al is an expletive, 851. At a nyst, all one night, all night, 2215. And see Algate, Alway.

Alday, all day, 1682.

Alden, pp. holden, 1875. See Halde.

Alder, elder, + 22.

Alder-, gen. pl. of all. Used only with an adjective in the superl. degree. Alder-aldest, eldest of all, + 27. Alderfirst, Alder-formest, first of all, 3345, 4854.

Aldes, pr. s. holds, 441. See Halde.

A-legget, pp. F. alleviated, allayed, 1034. See Alay in Wedgwood.

A-leide, pt. s. S. abolished, put down, 5240.

Alegate, Al-gate, in all ways, by all means, always, 649, 948, 1064. Ch.

A-liue, alive, 4235, 5279. [A.S. on life (Mat. 27, 63), which are two separate words.]

A-list, pl. s. alighted, 399, 3923.
Almauns, Germans, 1165.
Alouten, v. to bow down to, 852; pt. s. a-louted, bowed down, made obeisance, 5721. A.S. hlâdan.
Als, 996, 3243, also. Alsoeswif, as quickly as may be, very quickly, 3158. [A.S. eall-swíð, whence O. E. al-so, also, and als, now contracted into as, the words as and also being etymologically identical.]
Alto-shied, broke in pieces, 3603. See note to l. 3854.
Al-way, adv. all the while, 345.
Alwes, n. pl. S. 371. Hal alwes = all hallows, all saints.
Amased, pp. distracted, confounded, 636. See Mase.
Amendis, n. pl. amends, 488, 493, 3919.
A-meruailed, pp. F. astonished, 3557.
Amiddes, amidst, 834. Ch.
Amonges, amongst, 59. Ch.
An, put for And, 445, 884, 1538.
An, put for On, in phrase wel an fiue myle = nearly five miles, 5110.
And, conj. if, 3803, 4168. [In l. 3503 it is written "&."]
Anger, n. anxiety, sorrow, 552. A.S. ange.
An-honged, pp. S. hung up, 4773. Ch.
A-niȝt, 2920, by night, by nights, A-niȝtes, 785, at night. Ch.
Anker, n. anchor, 568.
A-non, Anon, adv. immediately, 813, 913. Anon riȝt, Anon riȝtes, immediately, 273, 235.
Antresse (\~Aunteres), pr.s. adventures, ventures, 1025. See Aunter.
A-paraile, 5028, apparel.
A-parayl, 3224, apparel.
Aparalyde hem, appareled themselves, 1146.
A-paied, 1883, 5338, pp. pleased.
Apaied, 1871, 4007, contented. See Paide.
Aperily, A-perli, adv. evidently, plainly, 1, 4706. Ch.
Apes, 2299.
Arad, pp. divined, explained, 647. See Arede.
Araie, 3367, n. F. array.
Araie, 1597, 1601, order.
Araie, v. F. to array, dispose troops in order, 3561; pp. a-raied, 1926, 1942; a-raid, 1934; a-raijed, 3375, 3363; arayed, 1153.
Are, adv. S. ere, before, 226; superl. arst, q. v. See Er.
Are-blast, n. F. arblast, a kind of crossbow, 268. From Lat. arcos and balista.
Areche, v. S. to reach, 441.
Aredel, v. to divine, expound, 573; to read, 838; pp. arad, q.v. A.S. a-redian.
A-redili, adv. S. readily, easily, 5006, 5026, 5230.
A-reise, v. S. to raise, 4342.
Aren, are; 2 p. pl. 2665; 3 p. pl. 615. See Arn and Ben.
Arewe, n. S. an arrow, 885.
Arise. See A-ros.
Armed, pp. fortified, emboldened, courageous, 1095.
Armure, armour, 3769.
Arn, are; 2 p. pl. 106, 3123;
Glossarial Index.

A-spyes, n. pl. F. spies, 860.
Assone as, as soon as, 4345.
Astate, n. F. state, condition, 5376. O. F. estat. Ch.
A-stente, v. s. to stop, 1527. See Stint.
A-stoneyd, pp. F. astonished, 880.
Astow, hast thou, 4724.
A-strangeled, pp. strangled, 150. O. F. estrandre.
A-swiepe, as soon as might be, very soon, 3555, 3811. See Swipe.
A-tir, n. F. attire, dress, 1721, 3153; equipment for battle, 1147; — atyr, 1428.
A-tyrnyng, n. dress, apparel, 1941.
Atling, n. preparation, a getting ready, † 268.
Attele, i v. to go towards, approach.
Attely, i proach, 205; to conjecture, aim at, judge, 404; 1 p. pr. atteli (= attele i), I intend, I design, 3220; 3 p. pr. attles, goes towards, † 109; pt. s. atteled, guessed, conjectured, 813; attelede, 861, 941, 1015; attelede, went towards, 1760; pt. pl. ettelenden, went towards, 272. North E. and Sc. ettle, O. N. athla, to aim at, intend, design.
Atte, Att, at the; in the following. At best, Atte best, at the best, 1142, 1575, 4121 (cf. atte best in l. 4283 with at le best in the line following); atte cherche, at the church, 1961; atte depe, 1511; atte folle, 4916; atte last, at the last, 1389; atte roche, at the rock, 2907; in all which cases the article seems to be comprehended in the second syllable. But in atte hese, at ease, 3208, and atte ville, 1414, atte seems to

3 p. pl. 1694, 5131. See Aren and Ben.
Arnd, errand, 5287. See Erand.
A-ros, pt. s. arose, 810, 2744, 3270; arise, 2737; pp. arise, 1297.
The form arise = arose occurs in both texts of Laȝamon, l. 25988.
Artou, 5157, } art thou.
Artow, 1250, }
Arst, superl. adv. first, before, 2737, 3046, 4154, 4583, 5103; at arst = at first, i. e. for the first time, 1028.
As = has, 2029.
A-saie, v. F. to essay, try, 3754; pp. a-saide, 637, 4984.
A-saute, Asaute, n. F. an assault, † 95, † 145, † 262; pl. a-sautes, 2705; a-sawtes, 4321.
A-schamed, pp. ashamed, 1035.
A-schape. See A-chape.
Aschis, n. pl. S. ashes, 4368.
Aschried, pt. s. 3895.
A-schriized, pt. s. 3827, } cried.
Ascred, pt. pl. 3814, } out to, called out to. O. Fr. escrier. Cf. ascry in Ch.
A-seged, pp. F. besieged, 4224.
A-sele, v. F. to seal, † 829.
A-sent, n. F. absent, 1300.
A-sent, v. F. to absent, 482, 2692; pp. a-sented, 538.
Asise, n. F. site, situation, 4451.
A-spie, v. F. to spy after, watch after, 774; pp. a-spied, 2577.
be no more than the preposition at. And it is certain that atte = at and no more, in the following: atte here herte, at her heart, 539; atte ye day, 1599; atte ye best, 1486; atte alle, in all things, wholly, 283.
The spelling atte being adopted to signify at te or at ye, it was erroneously used instead of at in other cases.

Attese, at ease, 1295.
Atwinne, adv. S. in two, asunder, 5450. Ch.
Auenantlii, 3784,
Auenantlili, 4885, 5040,

A-wed, v. to lose the senses, become mad, 45, 1750; 1 p. pr. s. a-wede, 3185. A.S. a-wedan.
A-worde, v. to observe sedulously, esp., 2415; pt. s. a-wayed, 1711, 1890; a-wicd, 791. Cf. Waite.
A-wiwardes, away, 2188.
A-went, pp. gone away, 1672.
A-wondered, 872, 2389, pp. aston-
A-wondered, 310, 392, A.S. a-wondrian.
A-wrek, 2111, v. S. to
A-wroke, 1128, 3422, v. avenge;
pt. s. awrak, wreaked, 934.
Ax, v. S. to ask, require, 141. Ch.
Aye, adv. S. ever, always, 615, 2239, 2549.
A-zyayne, adv. S. again, 5235; a-ze, 4256, 5172; a-zen, 1837; a-
zen, 270; a-zeine, 1508; a-zyen, 1921; a-gen lepes = runs back, re-
turns quickly, 1783.
A-zyynes, prep. S. against, towards, 1264, 1341; a-zenis, 3553; a-
zen, 2371; a-zen, 12; a-ze, 333.
Azen-turn, n. retreat, way of
cescape, 4182. See \( \text{\texttrademark} \) in torn; and cf. \text{\textregistered} enturned in Wycl. Gloss.

Bacheler, n. F. a bachelor, i.e. a novice in arms, 840, 1136; pl. bachilers, 1477. See Bacheler in Roq.

Baden. See Bidde.

Baie. See Abaie.

Baill, a. F. a steward, 5587. See Baillent in Roq.

Baite, 1723, i v. to set on a dog, Batye, 11, \( \equiv \) to bait (a bear). O. N. beita. See Abet in Wedgwood.

Bakkes, n. pl. 2096, outer clothes (? A word of doubtful meaning. Sir F. Madden conjectured it to mean "checks, from the Teutonic bache, Celt. bocch, which the Romans formed into bucca." Tide Waechter and Haltaus, in v. and Meusel's Wurzel-Wörter, p. 216." Stratmann suggests that it is another form of bagges, used for clothes. The context favours such a rendering; "rent all his clothes" is more likely than "rent all his checks;" but whether we are to connect the word with bag or with back is hard to tell, yet it may mean no more than a covering for the back, as in Chaucer, Chan. Yem. ProL 1. 328, where another reading for bak is bratt. Cf. —dowell it batte
To breke heggers bred \& bakken hem with clopis.


Indeed, the phrase "oure bakkes that moth-eten be," as used in P. Pl. Pass. X. of Text B (p. 195 of Wright's edition), convinces me that this last explanation is right. Curiously enough, as if to remove all doubt, the word bakkes, as there used, is, in MS. Laud 581, actually glossed by the Latin pauni.

Bale, n. S. sorrow, misfortune, evil, 107, 134, 460, 741, \( \uparrow 56 \); harm, i.e. a pity, \( \uparrow 1170 \); — bal, 1819; pl. bales, 476, 1055.

Baleful, adj. S. harmful, unfortunate, 1515; — balefull = harmful, \( \uparrow 272 \).

Balfulli, adv. miserably, 3959, 4261; — balfully = harmfully, hurtfully, 84, 1202.

Bane, n. S. a ban, proclamation, edict, 2252.

Banne, v. S. to ban, to curse, 476, 1644; pl. s. banned, 2100.


Barge, n. a ship, 2767, 2807. See Glossary to Romans of Partenay.

Barm, n. S. the lap, \( \uparrow 1004 \). Ch.

Barn, Barne, n. S. a child, 9, 16, 18, \( \uparrow 1020 \); a man, 812, 1491; gen. sing. barnes, 100, 2230; pl. barnes, 187. See Burn.

Barnage, n. F. baronage, nobles, 4797.

Bataile, n. F. a battalion, squadron, 3783; pl. bataules, 3561, 3562; batayles, 1152.

Bauynes, n. pl. badgers, 2299.

"The term occurs in Juliana Berners, spelt Bausyn, and in the Prompt. Parv. is 'Bawstone, or bawson, or a gray' [see Mr Way's note]. It is not uncommon in writers of the 16th or 17th century, and is still retained in Cheshire. See Todd's Johnson, Nares, and Wilbraham. The root is evidently the Celtic bal or baical (see Bullet, in v.), whence the F. balsan, Ital. balzane, applied to an animal with a white streak or spot in the face or foot. Hence also is derived the Se. bawson, brindled. See Jamieson."—M. Cf. pie-bald, and Bawson in Wedgwood.

Bayte on, v. to set on a dog at anything, 11. See Baite.

Be, Bi, prep. S. by, passim. When
compounded with verbs, the orthography is perpetually interchanged.

Be = been, 4103. See Ben.

Beaute, n. F. beauty, 4534; — beuaunte, 4074.

Bed, Bede. See Bede.

Bedes, pr. s. offers, † 947. Cf. † 360. A.S. beódan. Ch.

Bedes, n. pl. S. prayers, beads, 3024. See Bead in Wedgwood.

Be-dolue, pp. buried, 5232. See Doluen.

Begonne, pp. gone about, i. e. surrounded, † 698. Cf. Bi-go. See Begone in Wedgwood.

Be-hilde, beheld, 2783.

Be-kenned. See Bihote.

Be-honged, pp. S. hung about, 5015.

Be-hous, 2349, behoves, is suit.

Be-houis, 1815, able for.

Be-kenned. See Bikenne.

Be-knowe, pp. S. aware, 2172.

Belaunce, n. F. balance, 948.

Beleue, v. S. to remain, † 69. A.S. be-lifan.


Be-maked, pp. made, 5060.

Bemes, n. pl. S. trumpets, 1154. Ch.

Ben, Bene, v. S. to be, 464, 1930; 2 p. s. pr. (with a future signification), bestow, shalt thou be, 344; 3 p. s. pr. beþ, 547; 2 p. pl. pr. ben, 3148; bene, 1672; 3 p. pl. pr. bene, 4217, ben, 946; buþ, 4447; imp. pl. beth, 3797; pp. be, 1913, 3957. See Bi, Arn, Aren.

Be-nom, pp. taken away, 2450. A.S. be-niman.

Berafen, pt. pl. bereft of, † 81.

Bere, n. a violent noise; here applied to the barking of a hound, 43. See Wycliflite Glossary, s. v. bire; Layamon (glossary), s. v. ibere; Stratmann, s. v. bere. Jamieson refers it to Su-G. boer, the wind. Sir F. Maddan and Stratmann refer it to A.S. ge-bære, which, however, generally means a gesture. It may be an imitative word, like birr, buzz.

Bere-felles, n. pl. S. bear-skins, 2430, 2560. See Fel.

Berem-chaunce, n. chance of progeny, conception, † 971. For the spelling, cf. Berem-tem in Genesis 3 Exodus, ed. Morris, l. 3903.

Bern, n. S. a man, † 212, † 219. See Barn, Burn.

Be-sene, 2 p. pl. pr. seem, appear (to be), 1742; 3 p. pl. pr. be-semen, 2529.

Be-sewed. See Bi-sowe.

Bestow. See Ben.

Bet, pt. s. he beat, 1073, † 300.

Bet, adv. S. better, 172, 344, 1012; — bett, † 504; cf. the phrase more beter, 4279.

Bete, v. S. to make better, to better, repair, 3167; pl. s. bet, 3960. A.S. bêtan.

Beþ, it shall be, 547. See Ben.

Be-pont, Be-pouxt. See Bi-ponke.

Beurde. See Burde.

Beurne. See Burn.

Be-wrapped, pt. s. wrapped up, 1735.

Be-wrie, v. S. to bewray, 2435.

Bi, Be, prep. S. by, passim.

Bi, be thou, 322; bi zieue, be given, 2254. [As bi, be (= by) are often
interchanged, in both places we should rather read be.] Bi-cast, pp. beset, 2287. For all bi-cast an equivalent phrase is um-becast. See 1. 4693.

Bi-cheche, 1 p. s. pr. I beseech, 1258.

Bi-com, pt. s. became, 881; pp. bi-come, in phrase were bi-come = had gone to, 222; it bi-comes = it goes to, 911.

Bidde, 1 p. pr. s. I ask or pray for, 475; pr. s. biddes, 5539, † 947; 1 p. pt. s. bed, I asked for, borrowed, † 457 (where the MS. gloss "had" is wrong); pt. s. bede, 5490; pt. pl. baden, 4797; imp. pl. biddip, 5534; part. pres. biddande, 3024; pp. bede, 2410. A.S. bidden.

Bi-falle, v. S. to befal, 547; pp. bi-falle, 2475, 4169.

Bi-forn, adv. S. before, 428.

Bi-gat him, procured for himself, 177.

Biggen, v. S. to buy, † 1215.

Bi-go, pp. S. beset, † 490, † 994. See Begonne, and Biggo in Ch.

Bi-gunne, pt. pl. began, 2555.

Bi-hest, 600; n. S. promise.

By-hest, 57; n. S. promise.

Bi-het. See Bi-hote.

Bi-hilde, pt. s. S. looked, beheld, 2783; bi-huld, 2426; pp. bi-hold, 683.

Bi-hote (spelt by-hote), v. S. to promise, 3688; 2 p. s. imp. bi-hote, 2183; pt. s. bi-het, 4376, 4647; bihijt, 576; pt. pl. bi-hijt, 4649; pp. bi-hijt, 606.

Bi-huld. See Bi-hilde.

Bi-houses, it behoves, 729 (cf. 1. 723); pt. s. bi-housed, 2720.

Bi-kenne, v. S. to commit to the charge or protection of another; 1 p. s. pr. bi-kenne, 5434; pt. s. bi-kenned, 350; be-kenned, 371; pl. bi-kenned, 5454. Cf. Bi-teche, and Kene.


Bikoring, n. conflict, attack, † 390.

Bi-komseid, pt. pl. commenced, 2523. See Comse.

Bileue, v. transitive, S. to leave behind, 2577; pt. s. (intrans.) bi-laf, stayed behind, remained, 2385; pt. pl. bi-laf, 2890.

Bilfoder, 81, † n. provisions.

Bilfodur, 1858, † n. provisions.

"Perhaps from the S. bylyg, the belly, and fodder, food."—M. Cf. belly-timber, food, in Halliwell.

Bi-line. See Bline.

Bi-reft, 1 p. s. pt. bereaved, deprived of, 4628; pp. biraft, † 394.

Bi-schet, pp. S. shut up, immured, 2014. Ch.

Bi-seget, pt. s. besieged, 2650; bi-seged, 2843.

Bi-seme, 2 p. pl. pr. seem, appear (to be), 1733. See Be-seme.

Bi-set, pt. pl. beset, 2281; bi-sett, 2927; bi-sette, 1214; bi-setten, set forth, employed, † 437.

Bi-side, adv. S. 3, 1889.

Bi-sowe, v. S. to sew up, 1689; pp. be-sewed, 3117.

Bi-stint, pt. s. made calm, † 1183. "Slynyn" or make a thynge to seyyn' of his werke or mevynge. Obst. Prom. Parv.

Bi-stode, pt. s. S. stood near, approached, 175.


Bi-tenke, v. S. to think attentively, consider; 2 p. s. imp. bi-tenke, 3057; pt. s. bi-tout, 2748; be-tout,
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

290, 2370; be-pouzt him, 2773; be-pouzt hire, 630, 650; pt. pl. be-pouzt hem, 4776; be-pouzt, 2410.

Bi-tide, v. S. to befal, 730; pt. s. bitid, 4057; bitide, 7; bi-tidde, 1211; by-tide, 32.

Bitraide, pp. betrayed, † 223.

Bitterly, adv. S. painfully, 2083.

Bi-weped, pp. covered with tears, 661.

Bi-zete, n. S. progeny, 2303.

Blake-beries, n. pl. S. blackberries, 1809.

Ble, n. S. complexion, 3083; — blee, † 202, † 578.


Blessed, pt. s. 1192. Sir F. Maddenden explains it by "wounded, inflicted wounds," from the F. blesser. Or it may mean that he waxed or brandished his sword, as in Spenser. F. Q. I. v. 6, and Fairfax's Tasso, ix. 67.

Blesseden, pt. pl. blessed, 196.

Bleple. See Blipele.che.

Bleynte, pl. pl. looked, 3111.


Blimne, v. S. to pause, cause, leave off, 55, † 398; pt. s. blynd, † 110; 2 p. s. imp. blime, 322; 1 p. pl. imp. blyrne, † 1202.

Blisful, adj. S. happy, 1055; blessed, 1669.

Blipele, adv. S. merrily, with good will, 819; blepleli, 1144, 1994; in the latter place it means in sport.

Blime, 1705, † 239, } adv. S. quickly; — as blime, as quickly as might be, 379; as bilime, 351.

Blonk, n. a horse, 3326, 3362; pl. blonkes, 5041, † 435. "In old

Tentonic, planchaz means a white horse, and the root is to be found in the Su. G. and Franc. blank, still preserved in the F. blanc. See Ihre and Jamieson." — M.

Blowand, pres. part. blowing, 3358.


Bod, n. S. abiding, delay, 149.

Bole, n. S. a message, tidings, an order, 2143, 2154, 3767.

Bodiesse, n. pl. bodies, 3767. [Should be spelt bodys; but cf. Antresse, Hayresse.]

Bogeysliche, adv. S. in a boasting, boisterous, or bold manner, 1707. "In the Prompt. Parv. is 'Bog-gyschely, Tumide,' and in Ray's S. and E. Country Words, 'Bogge, bold, forward, sawcy.'" — M. See also Bagge in Prompt. Parv. and Bulge in Wedgwood.

Boizes, gen. sing. boy's, 1705.

Bolacles, n. pl. bullaces, a sort of plum or sloe, 1809. Used by Chaucer, Rom. Rose, 1377. See Bolleche in Roq.

Boles, n. pl. S. bulls, 2299.

Bolstraught, pp. prostrate, stretched on the belly, 1852. From A.S. belg, the belly, and streccan, to stretch.

Bonde, pl. adj. S. (put for bonde men), bondsmen, villains, as opposed to the orders of barons and burgesses, 2128. Cf. "Barouns and burges and bonde men also." Piers Plowman; A. prot. 96.

Bonden, pp. S. bound, 2238; pl. pl. bounden, 1219.

Bone, n. S. boon, prayer, 1095, 4410; entreaty, † 612.

Bonke, n. S. bank, shore, 2718.

Bonure, adj. F. courteous, affable, 332. See Debonureli.
Bordes, n. pl. S. 5070.
Bore, pp. S. born, 240; spelt borne, 510.
Borwe, n. S. borough, town, 1889, 2221; — borowe, † 300; borwy, 2835; pl. borwes, 2123; borous, † 928. See Burw.
Borwy, n. (the same word as the above), a place of shelter, 9. A.S. bower. Cf. the term, “a rabbit’s burrow.”

Bot, n. S. a boat (l) 4632. Or else boute bot = boute bod, without delay, as in l. 149.
Bote, n. S. remedy, 627, 741, 959, &c.; do bote = provide a remedy, 1378.
Botles, adj. S. without remedy, 134, 1819; — botlesse, 540; botleles, 896; botelesse, 1539.
Bouf, n. F. beef, 1849, 1868.
Boun, adj. ready, 1088, 1138, 1144; — bounne, † 160; † 228.
Bounden. See Bonden.
Bour, n. S. bower, chamber, 657, 1971; — boure, 1760, † 772. See Burwy-maidenes.
Bourde, n. F. a jest, 1705. Ch.
Bourdes, n. sing. F. a tournament, jousting. See Behordeis in Roq. The word is probably (like many other war terms) of Teutonic origin.
Boute, prep. S. without, 149, 211, 567, 812.
Bouwes, pr. s. bows, inclines, 948.
Bowes, n. pl. S. boughs, 23.

Boxumly, adv. S. courteously, 332. See Buxumli.
Brag, adj. or adv. bold, boastful, or boastfully, 2352; sup. braggest, bravest, 3048. Cf. “Hy schulde nought been hem so brag.” P. Pl. Crede, l. 706. See Brauguer in Cot.
Braides, pr. s. moves quickly, hurried, † 1081; — braydes, 119; braides him, departs quickly, † 1004; pt. s. braid down, threw down or beat down; braide, awoke, started up, † 724, 686, cf. l. 2096; rushed, 3818; drew quickly, 1867. O. N. bragga. Cf. Abridge in Ch.
Braundise, v. F. to fling about (as a horse), † 1122; pt. s. braundised, 3294; pres. part. brando-disseude, waving (their weapons), 2322.
Brayn-wod, adj. S. brain-mad, i.e. mad, furious, 2096. See P. Pl. A. x. 61.
Brede, n. S. breadth, 3055; a penny brede, a penny’s breadth, † 1244.
Bren, Breme, adj. S. (of very common occurrence, and with many meanings) notable, bold, strong, fierce, &c.; (applied to men) 3641, (beasts) 1689, (beasts) 1699, (a child) 18, (a battle) 1157, (a host) 3767, (a duke) 1141, (deeds) 1387, (blood) 3861, (an oar) 4700, (a time) † 1020, (a god) † 533, (a tablet) † 615, &c.; sup. bremest, 1686, 2936. Ch.
Bremli, adv. S. fiercely, 3294; exceedingly, 2158; — bremely, loudly, 23; — bremly, fiercely, 4312; — bremlich, boldly, † 1001. Sup. bremliest, most decisively, 948.
Brenne, v. S. to burn, 1133, 2123, 4261; pt. s. brent, 1071,
GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

1109; pp. brenn, 3634, 4367; brenn, 2646, †729.
Breres, n. pl. briars, 1809.
Bretages, n. pl. F. parapets of a wall, ramparts. O. F. "breteche  
(see Roq.), Low Lat. "brestochia.
Breóper, n. pl. S. brothers, 2641.  
[The nom. pl. in A.S. is "brosra,  
brošru, brošor, or brošur.]
Brid, n. S. a bird, †814; pl. briddes, 29, 179, 819.
Bridhal, n. S. bridal, 4947.
Brit, bright, 3572.
Brode, adj. S. broad, 754, 1674; —brod, 1732.
Brode, adv. S. in phr. to brode=  
too wide apart, too far, 11.
Brodes, pr. s. publishes abroad,  
proclaims, †122.
Brond, 1244, n. S. a brand,  
Bront, 1192, s. sword.
Broder, n. S. brother, †56. [Probably miswritten for "broxe; cf.  
4938.]
Brout, brought, 3959; brouzt of  
ilie=brought out of life, killed,  
1159.
Brug, 1674, n. S. a bridge.
Brugge, 2140, n. S. a bridge.
Brusten, v. to injure severely,  
destroy, 154. Cf. Dan. brøst, hurt,  
damage.
Brusure, n. F. a bruise, wound,  
2461.
Bruten, n. S. to destroy, 3760;  
bruttene, 1133; pl. s. brutted,  
1073, 1902, †888; pl.pl. bruttened,  
"bryla; Dan. "bryde; A.S. "brytan,  
brutan.
Bugles, n. pl. F. 1154.
Burd, n. S. a lady, maiden,  
damsel, †715;—burde, 653, 765,  
812, 830, †670; beurde, †202,  
†205; pl. burdes, 3669, 5017;  
beurdes, †228. Burde no burn,  
neither man nor maid, 1971.
Burges, n. F. a burgess, 1889;  
pl. burgeys, 2128, 5017.
Burn, n. S. a man, 332, 510, 511,  
637, &c.; —burne, 444, 477; burn,  
†9, †110; pl. burnes, 617, 1129;  
burnes, †2.
Burpnes, n. pl. S. burdens, 2555.
Burw, n. S. a town, 5335; pl.  
burwes, 1073, 1109; the same as  
Borwe, q. v.
Burwymaidenes, n. pl. S. bower-  
maidens, attendants, 3071. See  
Bour.
Buschen, v. to move about brisk-  
ly, 173. See Buske.
Busily, adv. S. industriously,  
eagerly, carefully, 650, 2181, 2210;  
—busili, 2577.
Busk, n. F. a bush, 3062, 3069;  
bush, 3101, 3111.
Buske, v. to brush about, hurry  
about, hurry, 2210; busk to or  
buske to, to hurry towards, 1968,  
2264; busk of or buske of, to  
hurry from, 1653, 1997; pr. pl.  
busken, †436, †433; l p. s. pt.  
busked, †612; pt. s. busked, 1085;  
(prepared), 3196; busked to, 1707,  
2055; busked he or busked him  
(went), 21, 1863; pt.pl. busked (pre- 
pared), 1152; buskained (hurried),  
2519; busked him (went quickly),  
1530, 2477, 2770. See Buschen.  
Iceland. at "bust. See Busk in Wedg- 
wood.
But, conj. S. except, unless, 476,  
627, 937, 972, †368, &c. But if,  
unless, 758, 939 1276. See Bot.
Bup, pr. pl. are, 4447. See Ben.
Buxum, adj. S. tractable, obedient,  
2943; meek (applied to beasts),  
2720, 2854, 3055, 4062. A.S.  
"bocan.
Buxumli, 3717, 4972, adv. S.  
Buxumly, 2, 510, s. meek;  
buxumly, 332; comp. buxumlier,  
723.
By, prep. S. near; by pat barn  
= near that child, 220.
By-hote. See Bi-hote.
By-pan, by the time that, 220. Cf. A.S. *be pám pe*.

Cacche, v. to catch, take, obtain, get, 806, 2266, 2940; — kacche, 2217; pr. s. caccheth, 3750; pt. s. cauṣt, 4302; pt. pl. cauṣt, 1053, 1495, 2867; kauṣt, 1053, 3371; pp. cauṣt, 4211; kauj, 2531.
Caire, v. S. to return, travel, go, 5154; 2 p. s. pr. cairested, 5190; pr. s. cayres, 2971; pt. s. kayred, 373; pt. pl. caired, 2714, 5324; cayred, 2201; kayred, 3734; imp. pl. kairus, ṭ 623; pres. part. cairende, 1922. A.S. *cearan*.
Calles, pr. pl. call, 239; pt. s. cald, 857; calde, 1460. (Can) can, know, acknowledge; in the past tense, could, knew, inf. kenne, ṭ 623; — 1 p. s. pr. kau, 321, 633; con, 297; 1 p. pl. pr. kunne, 4184; pr. pl. kunne, 3334; pt. s. coupę, 2, 174, 655; koupę, 5055; coupę, 952; coude, 4373; coupę, 120; coupę, 118; kende, ṭ 193; pt. pl. coupę, 577; kowden, 4810; coufęn, 1053; copen, 1576; kende, ṭ 367; pp. coup, known, famous, 5053.
Care, n. S. care, grief, sorrow, regret, 496; — care, 258, 424, 726, 743.
Carefull, adj. S. full of care or anxiety, anxious, sorrowful, ṭ 75; ṭ 241; causing care, woful, ṭ 295; — carful, 2201, 2860, 3181; — karful, 373, 3774.
Carestow, carest thou, art thou sad, 3182. See Kares.
Carfti, adj. crafty, skilful, 3221. [It should rather be crafti, but this form is sometimes found. See Romans of Partenay, l. 5708.]
Carfulli, adv. S. sorrowfully, 4347; — carfuli, 152; — karfulli, 3734.
Carpen, v. to speak, tell, talk, ṭ 748; carpe, 4581; carp, 832; ṭ 11; karpe, 2523; 1 p. s. pr. carp, ṭ 200; ṭ 244; karp, ṭ 172; pr. s. carpes, ṭ 693; karpes, ṭ 585; 1 p. s. pt. karped, 5233; carped, 217; pt. s. carped, ṭ 72, 990; 1 p. pl. imp. carpe, 2855; karpe, 4054. Phrase—to karpe (karpe, carpp) ṭe sope, to tell the truth, 503, 2804, 655, ṭ 653, “Carpyn or talkyn. Fabulor.” Prompt. Parv.
Carping, n. talking, speech, 4660; — karping, 3100.
Cas, n. F. chance, hap, fortune, event, 326, 915, 2919; — case, ṭ 24; bi cas, 595; for cas, 1037. Ch.
Cast, pt. s. cast away, i.e. lost, 881; — caste, contrived, 1981. See Kest.
Castel-werk, castellated work, 2220.
Castis, n. pl. events, 654.
Caytif, n. F. a wretch, person of low extraction, 710. Ch.
Cayreden, pt. pl. carried, 2520.
Ceput. See Kepe.
Certes, adv. certainly, verily, indeed, 732, 1380, 1500, &c. Ch.
Chambur, n. F. chamber, 685. [MS. chambur.]
Charge, n. F. load, 388.
Chase, chose, ṭ 36. See Chese.
Chasos, 2 p. pl. imp. chase ye, 1207.
Chast, v. to chasten, chastise, 729; 2 p. s. imp. chaste, 5157. P. Pl.
Chaunche, n. F. chance, 137.
Chaunded, *pt. s. enchanted (?)*  
[But see should perhaps read chaunued.]

Chauntemens, *n. pl.* F. enchantments, 634.

Che, *pron.* she, 462, 641, 2317.  
Cf. Sche, *and* Huc.

Chef, *adj.* F. chief, 3841;—cheefe, †1210.

Cheffare, *v.* to chaff, bargain, buy and sell, †1210.

Chepinge, *n.* S. market, 1822;—fro chepinge ward, from towards market, on the return from market, 1844.

Chere, *n.* F. countenance, look, appearance, demeanour, 647, 4882, 5263.  
Ch.

Cherl, *n.* S. churl, countryman, 54, 60, 62, &c.;—cherle, 1675; *pl.* cherls, 513.  
Ch.

Cherli, *adv.* F. cheerily, kindly, 62.

Chese, *v.* to choose, †770; *pt. s.* ches, †4165; chees, †321; chused, †140; *imp. s.* ches, †4161; *pp.* chase of= chosen by, beloved by, †19.  
Ch.

Cheued forth, *pt. s.* hastened forth, †78.  
Cf. O.F. escheuer, and see *esquire* in Cotgrave.

Cheuesed, *pt. s.* obtained, procured, †966.  
See *Chevir* and *Chevissance* in Roq. and *Chevis* in Ch. *Mars and Venus,* st. 37.

Chuueteyn, *n.* F. chieftain, 3379.

"It is here used for a person of gentle birth, in opposition to cherl."
—M.  
In l. 541 it is used of a person of mean birth, but grown up to manhood.

Chipmen, *n.* *pl.* S. shipmen, sailors, 2811, 2818.

Choisli, *adv.* F. aptly, 1753;—choicelich, choicely, †49.

Chold, *pt. s.* should. 2014.

Choliers. See Kolieres.

Chortly, *adv.* S. shortly, 2035.

Choys, *adj.* F. choice, fair, 400.

Chul, *(ye)* shall, 3339.

Chused. See *Chese.*

Chyldyr, *n.* *pl.* S. children, †36.  
[The A.S. *pl.* is cildra, cildrum.]

Clatered. See To-clatered.

Clene, *adj.* S. fair, noble, 1083, 1124, 1434; *sup.* clennest, 1609.

Clenli, *adv.* S. cleanly, fairly, clearly, 3847;—clenliche, 3477;—clai, 3288.

Cleppende. See *Clipped.*

Clere, *adj.* F. fair, fine (colour), 579;—eler (strength), 2037.

Clerli, *adv.* F. finely, 4422.

Cleued, *pt.* s. cleaved, stuck, 734.

Cleymeprés, *pr. s.* calls out, calls, 4481.  
Lat. *clamare.*

Clipped, *pt. s.* S. embraced, 63, 1570; clipte, 672, 1265; clipt, 3285; cleft, 675; clipte, 1587; *pt. pl.* clipt, 1833, 3100; *pres.* clipt, 2808; clepended, 2804; clipping, 1396; *pp.* clipped, 859.

Clipping, *n.* S. embracing, 1053, 3474.

The verb is preserved in Belgic *klutsen,* *klutzen,* to cobble or repair."—M.  
Cf. Du. *klotsen,* to strike on; and see *Clouted* in Ch.

Colli, *adv.* S. quickly, boldly, †1009;—coily, †693, †745;—cosilich, †207, †297, †581, †662.  
A.S. *öflice.*

Coies, *pr.* s. soothes, coaxes, †1175.
Cf. Acoyed. F. coi, from Lat. coeptus.

Col, n. coal, 2520; pl. coles, 4367.


Com, pt. s. came, 39, 47, 61;— kom, 507; pt. pl. come, 151, 3363; pp. come, 80, 816;— kome, 501;— komen, 513. Com bi = acquire, 1688.

Comande, Komande, commanded, 347, 1110. See note to 1. 347.

Come, n. S. arrival, 4192, 4953, 5322;— kome, 507;— coome, + 73;— cumme, + 147.

Comen, adj. Lat. common, 6. See Komwne.


Comly, adj. comely, 294;— comliche, 963, 2704;— comelich, + 205;— comeliche, 987;— komli, 873, 2855;— cunlich, + 18;— cumly, 783.

Comliche, adv. in a comely manner, 660;— comeliche, 2220;— komly;— komliche, 423.

Compacement, n. F. contrivance, stratagem, 1981.

Compers, n. pl. F. companions, 370. Ch.

Comse, v. F. to commence, begin, 2244;— pr. s. komses, 616; pt. s. comsed, 37, 194, 288, 579, &c.; comsede, 532; komased, 1430; cusmed, 424, 764. P. Pl.

Comsing, n. F. commencement;— fram comsing to ſende, from beginning to end, 4869, 5092.

Con. See Can.

Confort, n. F. comfort, 1408.


Coninge, n. F. cunning, skill, 120;— kunning, + 643.

Conseyl, n. counsel, advice, 114;— cunsail, 595;— cunsail, 969;— cunseyl, 2126;— cunseyl, 2105;— cunsayle, 1118.

Contenaunce, n. F. countenance, demeanour, 1401, 3076, 4900;— countenaunce, + 961;— cuntenaunce, 1397;— kuntenaunce, 942, 3323.

Conyng, adj. S. cunning, skilful, 653;— cunning, + 463;— konyng, 2917; comp. cunninggere, 406; sup. konyngest, 4810.

Conyng, n. pl. conies, rabbits, 182. [The sing. is conyng (Wycl. Gloss.), and we should expect to find conynges here, as in P. Pl. ed. Wright, p. 12. See Conyng in Halliwell, who calls it Anglo-Norman. It is Teutonic; cf. Du. konijn, G. kanichen.]

Coraious, adj. F. courageous, 3318;— koraious, 3352.

Corteyys, adj. F. courteous, 194, 2704;— curteyse, 406, 601;— curteise, 1397;— kurtes, 4405;— curteys, 231;— curtais, + 207.

Cortynes, n. pl. curtains, 2056. Ch.

Corne, pp. carved, cut, 3233.

Cosynes, n. F. female cousin, 625. See the note.

Coude. See Can.

Couenabul, adj. F. meet, agreeable, suitable, 4089; sup. couenablest, 3219. Ch.

Coupyng, n. F. violent encounter, 3602. See Acoupyng.

Couren, pr. pl. F. cower, crouch, 3336; pt. s. koured, 47. See Koure.

Cournales, n. pl. F. battlements, + 295. See Kerneles.

Coupe, adj. S. kind, affable, 3659.

Coupe, Conde, Cou3pe, &c. See Can.

Couwardli, adv. cowardly, 3336.
Couyne, n. F. contrivance, plan, 3147; — kouyne, 952. O. Fr. concirne. See Roq. and Coyne in Ch.

Coynt, adj. F. crafty, artful, skilful, 653, 1981; — coynte, 2824; — koynt, 4090; — coynte crag (as we say a sly corner), 2850.

Coynted him, pt. s. made himself acquainted, 4644.

Coyntise, n. F. stratagem, art, 448, 1688, 1972; — coyntice, 1665; — coyntyse, 1670, 1825.

Cracche, n. F. manger, 3233.

"Cracche, cratche, stall, crib, Job vi. 5; Lk. ii. 7, 12, &c." Wycl. Gloss.

Craft, n. 635; — craft, 559.

Crafti, adv. S. skilful, clever, 1681; comp. craftier, 1650. See Carfti.

Craftli, adv. S. prudently, 3828.

Crep, pt. s. crept, † 1009; pt. pl. crepten, 2235. See Krepe.

Cri, n. F. proclamation, 2249; — kri, 2174; — kry, 5405.

Criande, pres. part. crying, 4347.

Crie mercy, to beg for mercy, 1276.

Croice, n. F. cross, 350, 3127; — croyce, 1343, 3493.


Cumly, Cumme, Cumsed. See Comly, Come, Comsed.

Cunstabul, gen. sing., constable’s, 4212.

Cunter, n. F. an encounter, 1344.

Cuntre, n. F. country, 6; — kontrey, 241; — kuntey, 1673; — koutre, 722; pl. cuntreis, 1922; kunteys, 5474.

Curtais, Curteise. See Corteyes.


Cuuerede. See Keuer.

Dalt. See Dele.


Dar, 1 p. pres. s. I dare, 564, 933; der, 2169; 1 p. s. pt. dorst, 2040; pt. s. dorst, 305.

Dar, pr. s. in the phrase “dar no mon hem withe,” no one need blame them, 2434. “It is equivalent here to thurf; from S. pearfan, Teut. darfen, to need.” — M. See Thurt.


Darked, pt. s. lay hid, lurked, 17, 44, 2543; pl. darkened, 1834; darked, 2551.

Dawe, n. S. day, in phr. brouxt of dawe = bereft of life, 3818 (cf. † 56); pl. dawes, 77, 3704, 4719; daywes, 570; daies, 5490. [When the pt. takes the form dawes (daywes) it is preceded by if.]

Dawe, r. S. to dawne, 3261; pt. s. it dawed, 1791, 2218, 2480.

Debate, n. F. strife, 2779; — debat, 4350.


Ded, dead; in phr. “dæd as dore-nail,” 628, 3396. [In P. Pl. ed. Wright, p. 26, we have “as dead as a dore-tree,” where the earlier text has “dæd as a dore-nayl.” See P. Pl. A. i. 161.]

Dedain, n. F. disdain, † 313. O.F. desdaing.

Dedaine, adj. F. disdainful, † 584.

Dede, n. S. deed, 1197; an action, i.e. a battle, 1137, 1187; pl. dede, 3807; dedes, 1368; dedus, 1096, 3406, 4115.
Dede, n. S. death, 2072; usually deeth, as in 151.

Dede, did. See Do.

Dedut, n. F. pleasure, 4998.

Deerne. See Dern.

Defaute, n. F. default, 1185.

Defoyled, pp. painted, poured, 3573;—depeyned, 3217. Ch.

Der. See Dar.

Deraied him, pt. s. F. acted madly (like a man disordered in mind), 2061;—deraied him, 3741;—drayed (read derayed?) him, 1210;—deraide [hym ?], † 883. O. F. desrojer, derojer, dessarroyer.

Deraine, v. F. to make good, to sustain a refusal (a law term), † 124;—dereine, † 356. "Descreuer, to dereine; to justifie, or make good, the denyall of an act, or fact." Cotgrave.

Dere, v. S. to harm, injure, 953;—drie, † 1240. Ch.


Derk, n. darkness, 1285; † 714.

Derly, adv. S. dearly, sumptuously, 1421;—derli, 4312, 4374.

Derling, n. S. a darling, 1538; pt. derlinges, 2568.

Dern, adj. S. secret, 1792;—dernie, † 478;—deerne, † 826; pt. derne, † 860. Ch.

Dernly, adv. S. secretly, 17, 131, 1311, 1799;—dernli, 1050, 2208.

Derworp, adj. S. precious, dear, 585, 2585;—derworpe, 1745, 2633, 4140, 5311;—derivorth, † 613;—dereworth, † 431, † 692; † 1240; sup. de[r]worpest, 3209. P. Pl.

Des, n. F. The dois, or seat of honour, 4312, 4335;—dese, 4011.

Descriue, v. F. to describe, 5005, 5025; 1 p. s. pt. descriued, 3012.

Deschuer, v. F. to discover, reveal, 3192.
Descuuering, n. discovery, 1043 ; discuuerung, 1024.

Descuy, v. F. to deceive, 3306.

Desgeli. See Disgisi, and the note on l. 5014.

Desmaye 3ou, imp. be dismayed, 3040.

Desparaged, pp. disparaged, 485.

Despit, n. F. mischief, injury, 555, 4227 ; despyt, 3335.

Despitously, adv. mischievously, maliciously, 1137 ; despitusly, 1210.

Dessece, n. F. decease, 4101.

Destene, n. F. destiny, 315.

Destruye, v. F to destroy, 2930 ; destre, 4147 ; destrey, 4262 ; pp. destroyt, 2547 ; destroyed, 2616 ; destroyed, 2124.


Deuer, n. F. duty, 474, 2546 ; deuere, 520. Ch.

Deuis, n. F. device, 3222.

Deuise, v. F. to describe, talk about, tell of, 2955 ; deuised, 2316, 2635 ; deuise, 1603 ; pt. pl. deuised, 3302.

Deuoteliche, adv. devoutly, earnestly, 2976 ; deuoteliche, 1245.

Deuoyde, v. F. to quit, leave, 2044.

Digised. See Disgised.

Digne, adj. F. worthy, 583, 4583 ; ding, † 313. Ch.

Dignely, adv. worthily, 520 ; dingnely, 4567.

Diked, pp. dug out, 2233.

Dint, n. a stroke, blow, 1234, 2784, † 343 ; dent, 2757, 3750 ; pl. dintes, 1222, † 124, † 130 ; dentes, 1215, 3440 ; dyntes, † 295.

Disgised, pp. disguised, 1677 ; digised, 3888 ; digised, 2530.

Disgisi, adj. F. in disguise, masked, mummerwise, 1620 ; disgesyc, secret, 2715.

Disgisili, adv. strangely, extraordinarily, 485 ; desgeli, 5014, on which line see the Note.

Diting, an error for Tiding, 1478.

Diniuse. See Deuise.


Done, v. S. to do, to cause, 3220, 860 ; also to fight (metaphorically), 3252 ; 1 p. pr. s. do, 3219 ; 3 p. pr. s. dop, 925 ; dos, 4202 ; 2 p. pr. pl. dop, 1452 ; 3 p. pr. pl. don, 3244 ; 1 p. pl. s. dode, 555 ; 3 p. pl. s. dode, 362, 1025 ; dude, 3427 ; pt. pl. dode, 2092 ; dude, 1145 ; imp. s. doe, 2127 ; imp. pl. dop, 3507 ; pp. don, 2928 ; do, 936, 1024. Phr. dude to dethe = did to death, killed, 3427 ; dude hem forp = went forth, 1145 ; dude hem on gate = went on their way, 2692 ; cf. 1119 ; dude him out, went out, 2061 ; done (pp.) = dead, 937. "When followed by another verb, the latter is always in the infinitive mood (as in the case after all the other auxiliaries) and [often] receives a passive significance."—M. E. g. dede calle, caused to be called, 1522 ; dede clepe, 1299 ; do crié, cause to be proclaimed, 2127, 4049 ; do kepe, cause to be kept, 413, dede freche, 1303 ; do quelle, cause to be killed, 1246 ; dede translate, caused to be translated, 167. The exception to this is when the verb following is neunter. E. g. dede astente, made to stop, 1526 ; dede to nete, caused to be known, 362 ; dede venne, caused to be known, 3390 ; do vanisch, 639.
Another exception is when do is followed by him (used reflexively), as in do him lope me love, cause himself to loathe my love, 546. Another phrase is do to vite (651, 1331, 1459) = to cause to know, which is still in use, and in which to vite takes the place of the A.S. Gerard.

Doel, Dol, Dool. See Del.

Dof, imp. s. doff thou, do thou off, 2342.

Doluen, pp. (from delve), buried, 4210; dohuen quic, buried alive, 1564; ded and doluen, dead and buried, 2630, 5280; +1026. Ch.

Dom, n. S. judgment, doom, 1220. Ch.

Dornayl, Dorenail. See Ded.

Dorst. See Dar.

Doted, pp. F. foolish, idiotic, 4055. See A-dotep. Ch.

Dounes, n. pl. S. downs, 2903.

Doun rizes. See Rizes.

Douten, pr. pl. fear, are afraid of, +185. O. F. douter. Cf. Adouted.

Dou3ter, gen. sing. daughter's, 3152.

Doutsli, adv. doubtfully, 4338. Cf. Douteous in Ch.

Dou3ti, adj. S. doughty, brave, 1101, 1215, 1332;—dou3thi, 1302, 2709;—dou3ty, 1318; comp. dou3tiere, 1161; sup. dou3tiest, 1197.

Dou3tilli, adv. bravely, 1222.

Draiht. See Dreche.

Drawe. See Drou3.

Drayed. See Deraied.


Drede, n. S. dread, fear, 1909; miswritten dredre, 1592.

Drew. See Drou3.

Drem, n. S. a droneing noise, +781, +982. See note to l. +781.

Dreme, n. S. a dream, 752.

Dressed him, pt. s. addressed himself, 1237.


Drift, n. S. driving-power, +998; chasing, onset, +897.

Driuen, pr. pl. "driuen forp hat day," drive forth (i.e. pass) the day, 3065; pt. s. drof (drove), +891; pp. drieue (driven), 979.

Dronked, pp. drenched, i. e. drowned, 3516.

Dronken, pt. pl. drank, 1906.


Drou3, pt. s. drew, drew near, approached, 2205; drew, +714; drow, 1068, 1235, 1321, 1526, 1914; draw him, 4358; pt. pl. drou3, 781, 3065; drowe, 1089; drawn, 1220; draw hem, 1792; drawn them, +795; was drawe him = had drawn himself, 44.

Duel, Dul. See Del.

Dulfull, adj. doeful, causing dole, +143;—duelful, 3440.

Dupe, adj. S. deep, +1132, +1156.

Duress, n. F. hardship, constraint, cruelty, 1074, 1114, 1125, 1546, &c. Ch.


Dwerp, n. S. a dwarf, 362 (see Note). A.S. dwerçg, Dan. and Sw. dverg.
Dwined, pt. s. pined, dwindled, 578. A.S. diriun. Ch.

Eche, each, 517. "It is usual to find a (for an, one) used after this word, as eche a baen, 188; eche a ryuk, 1472; eche a strete, 1617; eche a kundre, 1673; eche a gowm, 3165; [eche a seg, 3932]: eche a buili, 5387; eche a lord, 5399; and when combined with it, is written both in Old English and Scotch, ilka."—M.

Eft, adv. afterwards, again, 882, 1049, †552;—eft as fele, as many again, 3372.

Egge-tol, n. edged tool, sharp instrument, 3755. [It seems to be a compound noun; cf. A.S. ecg-bana, ecg-hete, &c.]


Egre, adj. F. eager, courageous, 3636.

Eiles, pr. s. ails, afflicts, 634, 1533;—eyles, 944; pt. s. eilede, 951;—eyled, 831. 888.

Eir, n. F. heir, 709, 1474, 4102; —eyr, 4641; —eyer, 77; —eyre, 128.

Eiper ... other, each ... the other, i.e. one another, 1010, 1032, 1613, 2505, 3032, 4589, 5200. Eiper (each), 1054; spelt ejer, 833; cf. eijper, 1240; gen. sing. eijpers (each other's), 1014.


Ek, but, 715. See Ak.

Eke, adv. also, 473.

Eld, adj. S. old, 3498.

Elde, n. S. old age, 5227.

Elles, else, otherwise, 1132, 1571, 2671; — eles, †55, †209. A.S. elles.

Em, n. S. uncle, 3421, 3435; gen. sing. emes, 3426. Ch.

Emperice, n. F. empress, 5343, 5400. Ch.

Enchaumens, n. pl. enchantments, 137.

Encheoun, n. F. occasion, cause, †1070, 3697, 4173;—enchesoun, 1172, †110.

Ender day, by-gone day, day past, 3042. See P. Pl. Crede, l. 239, and hendre in Jamieson.

Enforced, pp. strengthened, forcibly occupied, †908.

Engines, n. pl. warlike engines, †294;—engynes, 3000.

Enpoysoun, v. F. to poison, 4650.

Ensaumples, 7.7. Examples, 3426.

Enteches, n. pl. F. spots, stains (metaphorically used), 555.

Entent, n. F. intention, 1544.

Entres, n. pl. F. entries, passes, †908.

Eny, any, 2223;—eni, 1077.

Enys, adv. once, 1093. A.S. ãnes, gen. of ãn, one. [But it is a mere expletive in this place.]

Er, conj. S. before, ere, 1612, 2026;—her, 1515;—or, †310, †791. See Ere.


Erber, n. arbour, 1752.

Erden, v. S. to dwell, 5260; pt. s. erded, 1417.


Eritage, n. F. heritage, 4097, †464.

Erliche, adv. S. early, 1296, 2519.

Ern, n. S. an eagle, 3105. Ch.

Err = ërne, †1091. See ërne.

Ert, art thou, †592. Ch.
Eschel, n. F. troop, company, battalion, 3379, 3564, 3785. O.F. eschelle.

E sed, pp. made at ease, accommodated, 1632, 5338.


E ten, pt. pl. ate, 1906, 2515.


Eper, either, each, 833. See Eiper.

Etteleden, pt. pl. hurried, 272. See Attele.

Euele, n. S. evil, mischief, 558, 1065.

Euen, adv. straight, exactly, hard by, 755, 1093;—euene, 747, 762, 811.

Euenly, adv. straightway, 1747.

Euen-while, n. even-time, eventide, 1747.

Euerich, every, 622, 1474;—euerche on, every one, 5412.

Facioun. See Fasoun.

Fade, pp. faded, 891.


Faileden, pt. pl. failed, 2660.

Fain. See Fayn.

Fairre, comp. adj. fairer, 4437.

Falle, v. S. to befall, happen, 324, 806, 1700; pr. s. falles me (happens to me), 439; falles (suits, appertain, belongs), 14, 339, 1685, 2789; pt. s. fel (befell), 903; fel for (suited), 1766; him fel (behaved him), 4440.

Fantasie, n. F. fancy, apprehension (of evil), †384. Ch.

Fanteme, n. F. a phantom, a fancy, 703, 2315, 4109.

Fare, v. S. to go, 5079, 5142; pr. s. fares, 1315; pt. s. ferd or ferde, 30, 1479, 2649, (behaved) 884, 2073, (fared, did) 1497, 1499, (befell) 1922; pt. pl. ferned, 2745, 2809; ferde, 1913; ferd, 1915; farde, † 305; pp. faren, 1514, 5468; fare, 2485, † 224; faren forf = proceeded, advanced, 3260; cf. 2730, 4450.

Fare, n. S. journey; hence, business, "goings-on," affair (esp. a troublesome business), 1091, 2079, 2502, 2943, 4580, &c.

Farre, comp. adv. farther, †244.

Farly. See Ferli.

Fasoun, n. F. fashion, shape, make, 402, 934, 4440;—fason, 2836;—facioun, 500.

FauS3, pt. s. fought, 3426; pt. pl. fousiten, 3414.

Fax, n. S. hair, 2097.

Fayn, adj. S. glad, 2817;—fain, 1783; sup. faynest, 3933; (adv.) fayn (gladly), 858.

Fayre, adv. fairly, kindly, 347.

Feele, Feole. See Fele.

Feffe, v. F. to enfeoff, provide for, give presents to, 1061; pp. feffed, 193. Ch.

Feintise, n. F. faintness, 436;—feistyee (cowardice), 1188;—feintise (flinching), 763; phrase, "fei^pli boute feintyse," verily, without flinching (or hesitation), 1543, 3169. Ch.

Feip, n. S. faith, 858;—feip, 275.

Feipli, adv. in faith, truly, 777, 828, 912, 1317;—feiplely, 201;—feipliche, 2732;—feipli, 4793;—feipliely, 230;—fei^pli, 132;—feiply, 209;—feipliche [²feipliche], 261;—failly, † 804;—feiply, 703.

Feigful, adj. faithful, 337; comp. feigfullere, 5434.
Fel. See Falle.

Fel, n. S. skin, 1720, 2361; pl. bere-felles (bear-skins), 2414, 2430, 2560.

Felachipe, n. S. fellowship, 777, 1317, 4510; — felachip, 1419.

Felawe, n. S. fellow, companion, 275, 339; pl. felawes, 186, 193, 360, &c.

Feld, pr. s. felt, 1; feld foue = perceived the scent, 33; pp. felled, 638.

Feldfares, n. pl. fieldfares, 183.

Ch.

Fele, adj. S. many, 5, 186, 388, 801, &c.;— fel, 14;— feele, 1580; — feole, 12.

Fell, adj. S. fierce, cruel, 1364; 946. Comp. feller (of a fever), 597; (of a sickness), 609; (of a battle), 3614; (of a man), 142. Ch.

Felled, pt. s. felled, killed, 198; pt. pl. 357, 3415; feld, 1432; pp. felle, 3638.

Felli, adv. fiercely, 3274; — felly, 3451.

Felpe, n. S. filth; hence (by metaphor) a low fellow, a wretch, 2412, 2515.

Fend, n. S. a fiend, 3130.

Fende, v. to defend, 3650; fende mee = defend myself, 1120.

Fenkes, pr. s. vanquishes, conquers, 325; pp. fenked, 111, 305, 900; ifenked, 117.

Probably a modification of F. vaincre, as the spelling venkud occurs in The Seven Sages, 2024. Cf. “For haddest thou fenked the fox (foes),” &c. Alexander, ed. Stevenson, p. 208, l. 339.

Fer, adv. far, 2546, 2781; comp. ferre, 2613, 5167, 5397; sup. ferrest, 2433, 5079.

Fere. See Fers.

Ferd, pp. afraid, 3366.


Ferdem. See Fare.

Fere, n. S. a companion, 364, 1639, 2566; (a spouse), 960. Cf. I-fere.

Fere, adj. entire, sound, 1583. Cf. lecl. iere, Su.-Go force. Dan. and Sw. Ær.

Fere, † 413. I can only suggest that to fere may mean for fear (which seems a forced construction), or that we should read to-fere beforehand. Cf. To-fere. Line † 415 also seems to be corrupt, and for bei we might read fere.

Ferefull, adj. S. terrible, † 291, † 111.

Ferforp, adv. far away, 209.

Ferke, v. to drive, drive onwards by beating, to press hard upon, 3630; pt. s. ferked, † 85, † 1221; pt. pl. firked, † 67. “Firk, to whip, to beat.” Halliwell.


Ferli, sb. a wonder, 3280, 4531; — ferlieh, 1015; — farly, 1050. See preceding word.

Ferliche, adv. terribly, wonderfully, 3285.

Fers, adj. F. fierce, severe, 436, 3351, 3641; — ferse, † 70; † 276; — fereche, 3796.

Fersche, adj. fresh, 3633. A.S. ferse. See Fresch.

Fersely, adj. fiercely, 1766; — ferseli, 3345; — ferslichen, † 115; — ferselich, † 255; — ferschel, 3426. Also spelt fresly, 1190.

Ferst, adv. first, 418; adj. 1163.

Fesans, n. pl. pheasants, 183.

Ch.

Festened, pt. s. fastened, 1720; fastned, 1239; pp. fastened, 447, 3437, 3593; fast, 1650.

Fet, n. pl. S. feet, 1766.

Fetis, adj. F. well made, lovely, pretty, genteel, 126, 1447, 4095;
— fetys, 225, 4435; fetyse, 393; — fetyse, † 188. O.F. \fetis. \nm\ Latin, \textit{facilites}. Ch.

Fetisliehe, \textit{adv.} fairly, neatly, properly, 98.

Fettes, \textit{pr. s.} fetches, † 628.

Fetuses, \textit{n. pl.} features, 857, 2886.

Feuer, \textit{n. F.} fever, 897. \textit{In l. 1239, for of feuer (as in MS.) read on feuter. See Feuter.}

Feute, \textit{n.} scent, trace, 90, 2189; — foute, 33. \textit{"Feote. Vestigium." Prompt. Parv.} "Feet, trace of a fox or beast of chase by the ouder."

— Morris.

Feuter, \textit{n. F.} the rest for the spear, 3437, 3593. \textit{From Lat. \textit{fulcrum}. Cf. \textit{fiaude} in Roq., and see \textit{Morte Arthur}. I. 1366. Sir F. Maddon points out that this is obviously the meaning in Wallace, iii. 165 (where Jamieson renders \textit{festir} by rage, from the \textit{scel. fedia, efflagro})

Feye, \textit{adj.} fated to die, unlucky, † 397. A.S. \textit{feiege}. Cf. \textit{Morte Arth.} 121, 4253.

Feyntyce (1239), Feyntise, Feyntyce. \textit{See Feyntise.}

Feyre, \textit{n. F.} a fair, 1822.


Fejtyly, \textit{Fepli. See Feipli.}

Fifte, fifth, 1322.

Fin, \textit{adj.} fine, great (applied to \textit{force}, 1117, † 128; — fyn, 1217.

Finched, \textit{pp.} finished, 3934.

Findestow = findest thou, 1332.

Finliche, \textit{adv.} finely, 768, † 1201.

Firked. \textit{See Ferke.}

Flagetes, \textit{n. pl.} F. flags, 1893; — flaketes, 1888.

Flebled, \textit{pt. pl.} became feeble, 2660. \textit{[But we should rather read feebled. Cf. \textit{fobal} in l. 5227.]}

Flechinge, \textit{n. F.} flinching, turning aside. See \textit{flechir} in Cotgrave.

Fleeté, \textit{v. S.} to float, † 532. Ch.

Flen, \textit{v. S.} to flay, 1682; \textit{pp.} flayne, 2607.

Flen, \textit{v. S.} to flee, to fly, 3872; — flene, 1856, 3879, 3892; \textit{pt. s.} flei, 1896; \textit{imp. pl. flep}, 3366.

Flet, \textit{n. S.} floor of a cottage; hence, on mi flet = in my cottage, 5368. A.S. \textit{flet}. \textit{See Myrke's Instructions for Parish Priests}, ed. Peacock; l. 273, \textit{note.}

Flitte, \textit{v. S.} to chide, debate, 2545.

Flitte, \textit{v. S.} to drive away, banish, 623.

Flon, \textit{n. pl.} S. arrows, † 269.

Floriched, \textit{pp.} flourished, clothed with verdure, 2435.

Floungen, \textit{pt. pl.} flew as if flung, were thrown, † 269.


Fodest, 2 \textit{p. pr. s.} thou feestest, i.e. supplyeth, 1646; \textit{pt. s.} foded, 57; \textit{imp. pl. fodes}, 2050. Cf. Meso-Goth. \textit{fodjan.}

Fold, \textit{n. S.} earth, ground, 5382.

Fold, \textit{pp.} folded, 858.

Fohli, \textit{adv.} foolishly, 4596; — folliche, 1557.

Folwe, \textit{v. S.} to follow, 189; \textit{pr. s.} folwes, 436; fulwes, 33; \textit{pt. pl.} folwed, 3351, 3631; \textit{imp. pl. folwep}, 3344.

Fomen, \textit{n. pl.} S. foemen, foes, 3274, 3372, † 98.

Fon, \textit{n. pl.} S. foes, 3269, 3338; — fone, † 271, † 332, † 866.

Fonden, \textit{v. S.} to try, seek, attempt, † 108; — fonde, 1019, 3387, † 246, † 355; fond, 777, 3599; 1 \textit{p. pr. s.} fonde (I seek, ask), † 1054; 3 \textit{p. pr. s. foundes (goes)}, † 121, \textit{pr. pl.} fonden (are busy), 1652; \textit{pt. s.} fondered, † 710; \textit{pl. pl. fondedce} (busied themselves),

Fond, pt. s. fond, 293, 422, 2730, 4547; pt. fond him = found for him, 73.

Foos. See Fos.

For, prep. on account of, 1691; as suited for, 294, 506; in spite of (?), 1226. [But we should, in the last place, read fro.]

For, conj. in order that, 746, 2751; because, 1319, 1668.

For —, an intensive prefix. A.S. for —. Meso-Goth. in See Fore.

For-barre, v. to bar up, enclose forcibly, 3333; pt. pl. for-barred (parried), 1217.

For-brenne, v. S. to burn up, 1188; pp. for-brent, 2621, 2831, 3001.

Forcer, n. F. a casket, coffer, 4432, + 628. See Way’s note on Forcere in Prompt. Parv.

For-dede, pt. s. killed, destroyed (= should kill), 2972; pp. fordon, 1563.

Forgedes, n. pl. previous deeds, 325; — fordeled, 5182. See note to l. 325, and cf. l. 2076.

Fore, adv. beforehand, 2076, 4142. Cf. To-fore.

For, prep. for, 2941.

Forfare, v. S. to kill, 2762.

For-fouten, pp. exhausted with fighting, 3656. See Jamieson.

For-frete, pp. eaten up, 2376. See Fret.

For-gaf, pt. s. gave up, 4418.

For-gete, pp. forgotten, 5156.

For-go, v. to forego, lose, 5187.

For-hungred, pp. exhausted with hunger, 2515.

For-left, pp. left, 2497.


For-lore, pp. wholly lost, 2955, 4571.

Formest, adj. first, foremost, 1191, 5079, + 40; — formast, 2324; adv. (at first, first of all), 939, 1362, 2324.

For-oute, prep. without, 2681.


Forshop, 1 p. pt. s. I transformed, misshaped, 4394; pp. for-sheaped, 2639. Ch.

For-sake, v. to deny, 1358. A.S. for-sacaw.

Fort, put for Forto, 788. See note.

Forpere, pr. s. proceeds, 5397.

Forp-fare, pp. departed, 5266.

Forpi, For-pi, conj. S. on that account, therefore, 723, 1051, 1624, &c.

Forpjectives, pr. s. impers. it mislikes me, grieves me, 5422; pt. pl. refl. forthoughten hem, repented, + 446. Ch.

Forpward, adv. S. forward, 3630.

For-waked, pp. exhausted with waking, worn out for want of sleep, 755, 793, 1797; — al for-waked, 790; — al for-walked, 2236. "Chaucer uses it, Cant. Ta. 5016, and Wyntoun, viii. 16. 141." — M.

Forwoordep, pr. s. wanders long, 739. "In Chaucer is the pp. forwoodred, Rom. Rose, 3336." — M. See also P. Pl. A. prol. 7.

Forward, n. S. a compact, 1451; pt. forwards, 1557, 1568, 1650.


Glossarial Index.

For-wounded, pp. much wounded, 3656. "In Chaucer, Rom. Rose, 1830."—M.


Fos, n. pl. foes, 1190; —foes, 2699. See Fon.

Fostredes, 2 p. pt. s. didst foster, 5376.

Fote, n. S. a foot (used as a measure), 4033.

Fouche, in phrase, "sauf wol I fouche," I will vouch-safe or guarantee, 4572.

Foule, adv. fully, 1646.

Foules, n. pl. S. birds, 822; gen. foulen, 805.

Foundes, Founding. See Fondin.

Fourtenijt, n. S. a fortnight, 2681; —fourtenenijt, 1337; —fortenijt, 2423; gen. fourtenenijtes, 2683.

Foute. See Feute.

Fouçten. See Faulzt.

Fowlye, n. folly, †1103.

Frakes. See Freke.

Fram. See Fro.

Fraut, pp. freighted, 2732.

Frayne, v. S. to ask, inquire, 250; 1 p. pl. s. freynd, 2034; pt. s. freynde, 1303, 3587; pl. pl. freynd, 394. "Sommer says that in his time this word still prevailed in Lancashire."—M.

Fre, adj. S. liberal, generous, noble, 337, 386, 1061, 3277; used as sb. 505; opposed to pewe, 5514. See Sir F. Madden’s Reply to Mr. Singer’s Remarks on Havelok, p. 15.

Fredom, n. S. liberal disposition, 189.

Freke, n. S. a man, 402, 1117, †193, &c.; —freck, 264, 897, 934, &c.; gen. frekes, 3886; pl. frekes, 442, 2286; —frakes, 3504. Applied to a young boy in l. 4078. The A.S. fre is chiefly used "in a bad sense, but the root exists in the Su.-G. freck, Isl. frék, strenuus, ferox."—M. Cf. Sw. fräck, Dan. fräk.

Frelle, adv. S. nobly, genteel, 428, 822, 3876; —frel, 5329; —frelly, 124, 366, 500; —frellich, 360; —frellech, †209, †1003, †1245.


Fres. See Fersly.

Fresch, adj. fresh, 3640. See Fersche.


Frip, n. a thicket, wood, forest, 822; pl. fripes, 2216, †15. W. fridd. Cf. O. Fr. frâcis in Roq.

Fro, prep. from, 13, &c.; —fromme, 425; —fram, 5373.

Frobroder, n. younger brother (apparently contr. from from-brother), †23. [I cannot find the word elsewhere.]

Frond, n. F. front, 3584.

Frotus, pr.s. rubs, strokes, †1174.

Ful, adv. very, 983.

Fulfillen, v. to fulfil, 1451; pp. fulfullen, 4319.

Fulsumli, adv. S. plenteously, 4325.

Fulwes. See Folwe.

Fundeling, n. foundling, 481, 502, 2077.

Fur, n. S. fire, 1188, 4773; —fure, 907, 3759.

Furpe del, fourth part, 1284.

Fy, interj. fie! 481.
Gabbe, pr. pl. S. talk idly, 1994.; Ch.
Gadere, v. S. to gather, 30; — gader, 1022.
Gaf. See Gif.
Gailiche, adv. gaily, 2591; — gayli, 1625, 2597; — gayly, 2731.
Gainli. See Gaynli.
Gainelich, adv. † 506. It is doubtless an error for gamelich: the parallel passage in MS. Ashm. 44 is, "A lowde lathe he loye." See Gamely.
Gainus, n. pl. javelins, † 292. Cf. "Ganye, Gainye, Genye, Gaynke, an arrow, javelin." Jamieson. Cf. Ir. gan, an arrow; W. gaging, a chisel or wedge. [In MS. miswritten games.]
Gamely, adv. playfully, joyfully, laughingly, 427; — gamelich, † 506; — gamli, 3583; — gameliche, 2591.
Gamsun, adj. S. joyful, 4193.
Gan, Ganne. See Gin.
Gan, pr. pl. they go, 811.
Gapand, pres. part. gapiing, 2372; — gapande, 2875; — gapind, 3503.
Gart, pt. s. caused, made, 1248, 2082, 2168, &c.; — garte, 1365; — "gart pis do make," caused this to be done, 5529. See also 2900.
Gat. See Gete.
Gate, n. S. road, way; on gate, on their way, on their 1119, 2092, 4014; on his gate, 372; on here gate, 1912; on oure gate, 2800; on hur gate, † 379; pt. gatis, gates; here gates, high-roads, 1691; gaynest gatis, nearest ways, 4159; ober-gate, otherwise, 3761.
Gayne, v. impers. to avail, help, profit, 598; pr. s. gayne, 3109; gayn, 2591; — gayned, 3899; pt. s. geyned, 3891; pr. s. subj. geyne, 3107. Dan. gære. Sw. gagna.
Gaynest, adj. sup. nearest, readiest, 3465; — gynest, 4189. Cf. Gayne; and Gane in Jamieson.
Gaynli, adv. readily, well, thoroughly, 636, 2665, 2706, 3135; — gaynliche, 309; — geinli, 3448; — geinliche, 744; — gynliche, 1030; — gynli, 3553, &c. Cf. Gaynest.
Gelt, n. S. guilt, 2339, 4403.
Genge, n. S. gang, assemblage, 1600, 1625.
Gerd him, pt. s. girt himself, 3291.
Gerdep, pr. s. strikes, 1240. See Girde in Ch. "But perhaps we should read gretēp." — M.
Gere, n. S. gear, clothing, 1716, 2588; stelger, steel armour, † 416. Ch.
Gergeis, Greeks, 2200.
Gerles, girls, 816.
Gest, n. F. geste, romance, 5033; pl. deeds, adventures, 2780. Cf. Spenser, F. Q. ii. 2, 16.
Gestes, n. pl. S. guests, 4904.
Gete, n. S. to get, obtain, 644; 1 p. pl. s. gat (begat), 4191; pt. s. gat, 2895; 1 p. pl. pl. gete, 4077; pt. pl. gaten, 1592; pp. geten, 1030; gete, 799.
Gie. See Gye.
Gif, v. S. to give, 5539; — giff, 1169; 1 p. pr. s. gie, 531, gif, 536, 1000; pt. s. gaf, 395, 992, 1559; pt. pl. goue, 4781; pp. gue, 5075. God giff (God grant), 2157; God gouve, 1648; God gaf, 2348. See also under 3eue.
Ginne, 1 p. pr. s. begin, 1920; pr. pl. ginne, 1153, 2080; pt. s. gan, 691, 736; pt. pl. gonne, 4009; 1 p. imp. pl. ginne, 5104. Also, as an auxiliary verb; pr. s. ginnes ride (doth ride), 1159; pt. s. gan, 71, 647, 831, &c.; pt. s. subj. gnn, 290; pt. pl. gonne, 1961, 2200, † 299; gan, 1151, 3274; gonne, 1164, 1272, 1530, 1600; gon, 3825.

Ginnes. See Gynne.

Gist, adv. (f) justly (placed), exactly (set), † 294. The gloss just seems correct.

Glade, v. S. to gladden, 824, 827; intr. to rejoice, 351; pp. gladed, 600, 870, 1593. Ch.

Gle, n. S. melody, 824.

Glede, n. S. a burning coal, † 729. Ch.

Gleeming, pres. part. looking a-skance, † 506. See Gline in Jamieson.

Glimerand, pres. pt. shining, 1427.

Glisiande, pres. pt. glistening, shining, † 180, † 534, † 1196;—glistening, † 698.

Glod, pt. s. glided, † 279.

Closed, pt. s. spoke coaxingly, persuaded, 60.


God, n. S. goods, riches, possessions, 1731, 3523, 5071.

God, Gode, adj. S. good, 1765, &c. "Used substantially, 504, 1334, 3777. In the first and last instances parentage or birth is understood, and lady in the second."—M.

Godli, adv. S. goodly, well, fairly, 1305, 1450, 1461;—godliche, 1270, 2444, 5051;—godly, 169, 2916;—goddei, 306.

Godelyche, adj. S. goodly, fair, 355.

Godmen, n. pl. good men, strong men, 1069.

Gof. See Gif.

Gome, n. S. a man, 670, 824, 851, † 221, † 252, &c.;—gome, 747, 1007, 1092, &c.;—gum, 4441; gen. sing. gomes, 346, 1657; pl. gomes, 1169, 1939.

Gon, v. S. to go, 4902;—gone, 2600; pr. s. gop, 271, 747, &c.; pr. pl. gon, 1657; gan, 811; imp. pl. go, 263.

Gon, Gonne. See Gynne.

Gost, n. S. spirit, breath of life, 992, 1559, 2120; a phantom, 1730.

Goue. See Gif.

Gradden, pt. pl. cried out; graden hur gref, cried out for peace, made a treaty, † 151. P. Pl. A. ii. 59.

Grailth, adv. straight, at once, † 863. Cf. Greip.

Graiped. See Greipe.

Graithlich. See Greipli.

Grame, n. S. anger, wrath, 2200. Ch.

Gras, n. S. grass, herb, 644, 799, 1030; pl. grases, 27.

Grathly. See Greipli.

Greate, v. to greet, † 705.

Greece, n. S. grass, 636. See Gras.

Greece, n. F. a flight of steps, stairs, 811. See Way's note in Prompt. Parv.

Gref, n. F. grief, 2473; vexation, anger, 4418;—greefe, † 264; pl. greues, 778, 868, 956, &c.

Greefly, adv. grievously; greefly bigo, grievously beset, † 490, † 994.

Gregoyse, n. pl. Greeks, 5104.

Greip, adj. ready, 5296;—greyt, 2731. [These seem to be adjectives rather than from Greipe.]

Greipe, v. to dress, prepare, make ready, array, 1719, 3558, 4274;
Glossarial Index.

Greip, adj. great; used (in pl.) substantively (as at present) for persons of rank, 1107, 1595, 1936; comp. gretter, 1859; sup. grettost, 928; miswritten grettis, 1196.

Grete, v. S. to greet, accost, 1430; pr. s. gretes, 233; pl. s. gret, 1393, 1986; grett, 873, 4532; grette, 369; pl. pl. grettan, 1334; grette, † 920; imp. pl. gretes, 355; greteth, 359; pres. part. gretand, 3816.

Greteli, adv. greatly, 1292; — gretliche, 975, 2444; — gretly, 600; — grettli, 2665; — grettelli, 4572.

Gretynge, n. S. salutation, 234.

Grene, n. S. a grove, 3634.

Greue, v. F. to vex, injure, 689, 2575, 4028; pr. s. greues, 530, 608, 889, 899; pr. pl. greuen (sub. wounds), 1378; imp. s. greue, 2793.

Greues. See Gref.

Grewes, Greeks, 2080.

Grim, n. S. anger, fury, † 904. A.S. grim, fury.

Grint, pt. s. S. ground, pierced through, 1242, 3443.

Gript, pt. s. S. gripped, seized, 744.

Grislis, adj. S. formidable, frightful, 1730; — grisiliche, 4343; — grissiliche, 4935; — grislicly, † 434; — gresli, 1687.

Grip, n. S. peace, security, 3891, 3899; gradden hur grip, sued for peace, † 151; granted him grip, granted him peace, 3927.

Groching. See Gruching.

Grom, n. S. groom, man, 1767. "Evidently the representative of gome and formed from it, as bridegroom is from brid-guma."—M.

Grot, n. great, 4257. "It may also mean a thing of no value, from S. greot, pulvis."—M.

Growen, pr. pl. grow, 1812.

Gruche, n. F. to murmur, be unwilling; 2 p. pr. subj. grutche, 4257; imp. s. gruche, 1450; pt. s. gruchoed, 3927; pres. part. groching, 271. Ch.

Gruching, n. S. murmuring, 1461, 2687.

Grunt, pt. pl. groaned, † 388.


Gult, 1 p. pt. s. injured, 1172. See A-gult.

Gum. See Gome.

Gun, Gunne. See Ginne.

Gye, v. F. to guide, lead, govern, 1103, 2664, † 316, † 328; — gie, † 287. Ch.

Gye, n. F. guide, 2727, 2849.

Gyled, pp. beguiled, cheated, 689. Ch.

Gynne, n. a contrivance, art, † 1135; pl. gynes, † 548, † 644. Ch.

Hacches, n. pl. hatches (of a ship), 2770, 2776. Ch.
Hadden, Hadestow. See Haue.
Hakernes, n. pl. S. acorns, 1811.
Hal, adj. all, 323, 371.
Halde, v. S. to hold, 1304; pr. s. haldes, 905, 932; pr. pl. holden, 2711; pt. pl. helden, 946; pp. holde (bound, beholden), 317; hold, 4722; holde (considered as, esteemed), 2533, 3773, 4158; hold, 1355; imp. s. hald, 343; imp. pl. haldes, 106.
Half, n. side, 3971; on goddes halve, on God’s side, in God’s name, 2803.
Halp. See Helps.
Hampiris, pr. s. hampers, impedes, troubles, 668; pp. hampered, 441; hampered, 4694; imp. pl. hampres, 1115. Cf. Su.-Goth. hemnaa, Dan. hemme, to hem in.
Han. See Haue.
Hap, n. chance, fortune, 414, 440, 1794, 1795; — hap, 806; — happe, 32; pl. happes, 1815, 1840, 1855, &c.; — vp happe (perhaps), 2722. Icel. happ. W. hap. Ch.
Happe, v. F. to get, receive, light on, 3340. Cf. F. happen, to seize.
Happili, adv. haply, by chance, 2774, 4130; — happiliche (luckily), 2495.
Hard, adj. used substantively to denote danger or hardship, 435; — harde, 472, 2339; — as harde as (as fast as), 1052, 1857; cf. 1256.
Hardien, vb. to make hard, embolden, 1156.
Hardnesse, n. hardship, 1816. Ch.
Harmes, n. pl. sores, 453.
Harmles, adj. unharmed, 1671.
Harneis, n. harness, body-armour, horse-trappings, 1582; — harneys, 2349, 4187, 4281. Ch.
Has, for As, 1857.
Has, for Hast, 606.
Haselnotes, n. pl. hazel-nuts, 1811.
Hastely, adv. quickly, soon, 58, 233, 1566; — hasteli, 597, 1051; — hastilyche, 2571; comp. hastlere (sooner), 4160.
Hastou, Hastow, hast thou. See Haue.
Haue, v. to have, 72; 1 p. pr. s. haue, 519; 2 p. pr. s. hastou (hast thou), 1545; hastow, 1005, 1556; has, 606; 3 p. pr. s. hap, 477, &c.; has, 475; 2 p. pr. pl. han, 4093; haue, 1030; pr. pl. han, 361; 2 p. pt. s. hadestow (hadst thou), 1816; pt. s. had, 369; pt. pl. hadden, 1014; hadde, 1289; imp. s. a, 1177; imp. pl. hauep, 3339; 2 p. pr. s. subj. haue, 4255.
Hautene, adj. F. haughty, proud, 3982; — hauteyn, 472, 529, 707, 729; (loud), 2187.
Hawes, n. pl. haws, berries, 1811.
Heili, adv. highly, greatly, often joined to the vb. heric, as, herie-don heili, 3461;—heriend heiliche, 1584; — herieode hileiche, 1798; — to herien heizli, 1875; — hilich herie, t 703; — heizli (earnestly), 5495; — heigliche, 2336; — heijeli, 4720.
Heiz vs, vb. refl. See Heize.
Heizing, n. hurrying, fast traveling, 2440.
Heizresse, n. pl. S. hairs, i. e. hair-
cloths (by way of penance), 4778. Cf. P. Pl. A. v. 48. The spelling heizesse for heizes is like that of bodiess for bodies, 3767, and lordeasse for lordees, 4539. A.S. hæra, a hair-cloth.

Hel, n. S. a hill, 2233, 2318; pl. helles, 2432.

Helen. See Halde.

Hele, v. S. to hide, conceal, 960, 4206; 2 p. s. pr. subj. hele þou, 945. Ch.


Hele, n. S. health, 597, 1375. Ch.

Helpes, imp. pl. S. help ye, 2378; helpëþ, 4409; pt. s. halp, 2206; pp. holpen, 3611; holpe, 4012, 4149; holp, 4494.

Helplich, adj. helpful, † 187.

Hem, pron. dat. to them, 169; acc. them, passim. Hemself (themselves), 812, &c.

Hende, v. to end, 540.

Hende, n. end, 2333, 4178.

Hende, adj. courteous, gentle, 106, 184, 348, 363, † 665, &c.; — hend, 165, 1103. O.N. hentî, adapted; Dan. and Sw. händig.

Hende, adv. at hand, near, 278, 2513.

Hendeli, adv. courteously, gently, 1917, 4311; — hendely, 269, 523, † 187, † 248; — hendli, 2469, 3032; — hendly, 2783.

Heng, pt. s. hung, 734.

Henne, adv. hence, 1746, 2553; hennes, 329. Ch.

Hennes-forp, henceforth, 1050.

Hent, v. S. to take, catch, got, 2394; 1 p. pr. s. hent, 414; 2 p. pr. s. hentst, 2787; pr. s. hentes, † 527; hentis, 907; 1 p. pl. s. hent, 615; pt. s. hent, 150, 1010, 2754, &c.; pl. pl. henten, 4023; hent, 2420. Hentes vp (catches up), 1896; hent vp (caught up), 3948. Hepus, n. pl. hips, berries, 1811.

Her, conj. ere, 1516. See Er.

Herdende, Herend. See Erand.

Herberwed, pp. harboured, lodged, 1636. Ch.

Herberes, n. pl. garden-plots, 1768. See P. Pl. Crede, 166.

Herde, n. S. host, army, 1120.

Herden, pt. pl. heard, 1298.

Here, pers. pron. her, 1716, &c.; — hire, 150, &c.; — hir, 673, &c.; — hure, 2915. The spelling hire is the commonest; hure occurs but once; here is used of the sun, 3073.

Here, Hire, poss. pron. her. See page 95.

Here, poss. pron. their, 14, 73, &c.

Here-bi-fore, heretofore, 3043, 3959.

Herende. See Erand.


Herien, v. S. to praise, 1875; herie, 5208, † 703; pt. pl. heriede, 1798; herizeden, 3461; pp. heried, 4454, 5372; heried, 4577, † 536; pres. part. heriend, 1584. Ch. See Heili.

Heried, pt. s. S. harried, harrowed, 3725. An allusion to “The Harrowing of Hell.”


Hert, n. S. a hart, 2569.

Herted, pp. encouraged, 3417.

Herre. See Heie.

Hertile, adv. heartily, 97, 102; — hertly, 3324.

Herto, adv. hitherto, 4656.

Hese, n. ease, 1638, 3208.

Hest, n. S. command, 468, 495, 217, 2146, &c.; — heste, † 160. A.S. hêste.
Hete, v. S. to bid, tell, 1021; 1 p. pr. s. hete, 572, 1002, 1626; pt. s. 1052, 2045, 2089; hett, † 543; imp. pl. hete, 4159. See also Hote, Hítt.


Heue vp, v. to heave up, 348.

Hewe, n. S. hue, 3502, 3572.

Hewen, pp. hewn, 3616.

Hi, they, † 231.

Hiden, v. S. to hide, 4697; —hude, 2743. And see Hed.

Hider, adv. hither, 2277.

Hider-to, hitherto, up to the present time, 3510.

Hidous, adj. hideous, 3177, 3201, 3218.

Hidus, n. pl. hides, 3201.

Hight. See Hítt.

Him, referring to day, 2993.

Hir, Hire. See Here.

Hirne, n. S. a corner, 3201;—hurne, 688. Ch.

Hirt, pt. s. hurt, 3607.

His, put for Is, 3836.

Hise, poss. pron. pl. his, 4115.

Hit, it, 198, 470, &c.

Híze, v. S. to hasten, haste, 1082, 1286, 2146, 3454, 4162, 5258; hejus, 1746; híze, 1969; híze, 5196; used as transit. eb. to make to haste, 1182; pt. s. hízed, 1261, 2177; pt. pl. hízed, 1123; hízed hem, 1940; hízenden, 2250; hízeden, 2255; hízenden, 2878; hízeden. 4546; imp. pl. hízes, 4486; hízes you, 1187; híze you, 1051.

Hízt, 1 p. pr. s. am called, 70; pt. s. hízt (was called), 2838, 2918; hight, † 23, † 34; hyght, † 52, † 119, † 133; pt. pl. hítten, 4775; pp. hote, hoten. See Hote. Cf. A-hízt.

Hízt, promised. See Hote.

Ho, pron. who, 188, 4919; pl. ho, 2733. Ho-so (whoso), 1256, 4519; hoo-so, 2135.

Hok, n. S. oak, 1793. See Ok.

Hol, adj. S. whole, sound, 1056, 1566, 1655, 3522.

Holde, n. S. a fortress, place of strength, 2836, † 257; —hold (prison), 4573; pl. holdes, 5472, † 921.

Holde, Holden. See Halde.

Holde, adj. S. faithful, true, 2833, 3773.

Holle, adj. whole, complete, † 521.

Holli, adv. wholly, 1106; —hollich, † 117; —holliche, 945, 974; —holy, 493, 531, 534, † 327.

Holpe, Holpen. See Helpes.

Holw, adj. hollow, 1793.

Hom-kome, n. home-coming, 807.

Homward, homeward, 2477, 2487.

Hond-werk, n. handiwork, creatures, 929.

Honget, pp. hung, 2020;—honged, 2086.

Hony, n. S. honey (as a term of endearment), 1655.

Hope, 1 p. pr. s. I believe, think, 1344, 1780; pt. pl. hopeden, 4308.

Hordere, n. order, 4461.

Hors, n. pl. horses, 1940, 4187, 4281, 4820. Hors charge (horses' load), 388.

Hote, 1 p. pr. s. I tell, 1123, 1384, 4959; imp. s. hote, 4162; 1 p. pt. s. hízt (promised), 1030; pt. s. hízt (promised), 58; het (called), 521; pp. hoten (called), 405, † 13; hote, 3497, † 172, † 364. See also Hete, Hízt.

Hotend, pres. part. hooting, shouting, 2387. See Hoot in Wedgwood.

Houz, adv. how, 4265; —hov, 97, 98, 225.
Houses, 723. See the note.
Hue, she, † 34, † 36, † 39.
Hulde, v. to flay, take off the covering or hide, 1708; 1 p. pl. imp. hulde, 2587. "From the same root proceeds the modern verb to hul, to take off the hull or husk. It corresponds to the Goth. and-huljan, Lu. x. 22. Hence also A.S. hyldere, a butcher."—M.
Hules, pr. s. fondles, hulls, hushes, 97. See Hull in Wedgwood.
Hupes, n. pl. hips, † 190.
Hur, her, † 185; (their), † 4, † 65. See Here.
Hure, v. S. to hear, 3270.
Hurne. See Hirne.
Hurtel, v. F. to strike together, meet together with a shock, 5013. See the note. Ch.
I-, Y-, a prefix, used (in these poems) chiefly in past participles, where it represents the A.S. ge-; or as an abbreviation for in, as in i-fere, y-fere, i-live.
[The past participles are here collected for convenience.]
I-armed, armed, † 485.
Ibene, been, † 1023.
I-bent, bent, † 181.
I-bet, bettered, remedied, 4613.
Ibore, born, † 849.
Iborne, born, † 642.
Ichaped. See I-schamen.
Icharged, loaded, 2499.
I-cloped, clothed, 2416.
I-corue, carved, † 569.
I-di3t, prepared, 3918.
I-fed, fed, 768.
Ifenked, vanquished, † 117.
Igett, begotten (or, perhaps, born), † 633.
Igrae, graven, † 830.
Igrett, greeted, worshipped, † 731.
I-herd, heard, † 656.
I-holde, held, † 598.
I-horsed, mounted, 1950.
I-kid, known, renowned, † 453.
Ilaide, laid, † 203.
I-lengped, lengthened, 1040.
Imaked, made, † 630.
I-painted, painted, † 733.
I-pronged, proved, 4661.
I-putt, put, † 845.
I-quelled, killed, 1166.
I-schappen, shaped, 2634; — i-schape, † 191, † 628; — ischaped, † 186; — ishappe, † 732.
I-seie, seen, 1874.
I-sett, set, † 339, † 618, † 728.
I-slayne, slain, 3908.
I-told, told, 1493.
[See also under Y-.
Iced, pt. pl. issued, 1789. See Isch in Jamieson.
Ich, I, 548, 598, 624, &c.
Icham, (for Ich am), I am, 594, 1743, 3951.
Ich, each, 332, 510. See Eche.
I-fere, together, 2180, 2523, † 340. See Infere.
I-knowe, v. to know, † 607. [The only instance of an infinitive preceded by i-]
Ilk, pron. S. same; almost always preceded by pat. Hence, pat ilk = that same, that very, 281, 688, 2878; used absolutely (that very thing, that very time), 531, 629, 1041, &c. Also, pis ilk, 2633; pat ilk selue (that very same), 4106. Spelt pat ilke, 1041; pat ilche, † 448. Ch.
GLOSSARIAL INDEX. 281

I-lieu, in life, i. e. alive, 1690.
Imped, set, lit. engrafted, † 616.
Inele, v. to give an inkling of, to hint, † 616.
Inkest, sup. adj. darkest, blackest, † 1061. [The word is a little doubtful.]
Inne, n. an inn, lodging, 1485, 1524, 1574, &c.
I-now, adv. enough, 483, 1121; i-now, 100; i-nouz, 714; i-nouge, 1673; y-now, 836; y-nouz, 118.
Ioly, adj. F. jolly, i. e. pleasant, pretty, 3149.
Ioyned, pp. joined, adjoining, 751.
Is, put for His, 8, 69, 181, &c. Both spellings occur in l. 4369.
It-selue, itself, 3116.
Iuste, v. to joust, 1237. P. Pl.
Iustislich, adv. justly, exactly, closely, 1724; — iustili, 2596; — iustily, 751.
Iurnes, n. pl. journeys, 4286.
I-wisse, adv. verily, truly, 697, 739, 960, &c.; — i-wis, 3397. See Y-wisse. Ch.
[For some words beginning with ka, ko, ku, see under C.]
Kairius, go ye, † 623. See Caire.
Kares, imp. pl. be ye sad, be anxious, † 563. Cf. Carestow.
Karp, Karpes. See Carpen.
Kast, sb. design, † 146. Ch.
Kastyng, sb. casting, 942.
Kauʒt. See Cacche.
Kayzers, n. pl. Caesars, emperors, 483.
Kechene. See Kichen.
Ked, adj. renowned, famous, † 556. See Kid. [In P. Pl. A. xi. 56, MS. U has kedde where MS. T has kid.]
Ken, n. kindred. See Kin.
Ken, n. pl. kine. See Kin.
Kende. See Kenne, v. intr.
Kende, adj. natural. See Kinde.
Kendely. See Kindeli.
Kene, adj. keen, eager (said of thought), 616; (cold), 908; (kisses), 1011; (knights), 1205.
Keneli, adv. sharply, eagerly, shrilly, 4343; — kenely, 152, 859; — kenly, 37, 2174; — kenliche, 2532.
Kepen, v. S. to keep, take care of, 8; — kepe, 66, 123; 1 p. s. pr. kepe = I care. intend, wish, 993; kepe = I tend, 244; kepe = I regard, desire, 4738; pt. s. kepde, 171; pt. pl. kepde, 187; kepten, 3615; pp. kepud, 5; ceput, 4094.
Kesse, v. S. to kiss, 5045; pt. s. kest, 63, 1265, 1570, 3205; keste, 1587, 1613, 4015; kessed, 1835; kessede, 4239; kust, 675; pt. pl. keste, 3100; kest, 2424; pp. kest, 859; pres. part. kessing, 1390. Ch.
Kessing, n. kissing, 1053, 3076,
Kete, adj. bold, fierce (?) or quick, smart (?), 330, 3793. A rare word, of which the following are instances.
We find, "in a poem of the 13th century:—

Pisded both the shete,
And worms ther both kete
To don the soule tene.

Stace of Seint Bede, MS.
Digby 86, f. 127 b."—M.

We also find mention of "a king kete," Rel. Ant. ii. 9; and the beams of the sun are called "kete," in Wright's Popular Treatises on Science, p. 138, l. 262 of the English fragment. Cf. also "Clerkes and kete men," P. Pl. A. xi. 56, where kid and kedde are other readings. "In our text, the most obvious etymology seems to be the Teut. kut, Belg. knyt, audax, ferox."—M. Coleridge suggested O. N. katr, glad; and the Sw. katighed, boldness, may also be worth considering. Or again, as we find the forms smould and s'moulder, knob and snwp, we may connect it with the O. E. sket, O. N. skjöttr, sharp, quick, which is connected with to shoot and to skate. This would give the sense sharp, quick, or smart, which seems not inappropriate. See Ketli.

Ketli, adj. quickly, smartly (?), 3023; — ketly, 1986, 2103. See Kete.

Keppe. See Kipen.

Keuer, v. tr. F. to make to recover, to heal, 635; — keuere, 1521; — kuuere, to attain to, 128; — keueren him gate = to procure or make for himself a passage, 904; pt. s. euuerede (recovered), 2824; pt. pl. keuered hem = obtained for themselves, 235; also (2) keuer, v. intr. to recover, become whole, 1488; pt. s. keuered, made good his retreat, retreated, 3625; pt. pl. keuered, 3617; cf. vp-keuerede, 2759; pp. keuered, procured, made ready (unless it means covered), 4450. [Connected with F. recouvrer, Lat. recuperare.]

Keuered, pt. s. covered, 3034; pp. keuered (unless it is from the preceding), 4450. [Connected with F. couvrir, Lat. cooperire.] See Kuenere.

Kichen, n. kitchen, 2171; — kyehene, 1707; — keehene, 1651.

Kid, pt. t. and pp. of Kipen, q. v. Also, as adj. renowned, famous, far-known, 11, 172, 310, 597; — kud, 11, 111, 114, 501, 512, 713, &c. ; ked, 556; sup. kuddest, 631, 3047, 4231; in the first of which it simply means best. "It is very evident, that the adj. and pp. of kipe are one and the same word."—M.

Kin, n. S. kindred, 584; — ken, 513, 722; — kun, 110.

Kin, n. pl. kine, 480, 503; — ken, 6; — kyn, 244.

Kinde, adj. natural, related, spoken of that which is conferred by kindred or acquired by birth, 128, 3138, 3474, 4095; — kynde, 241; — kende, 513; — kyn, 364.

Kinde, n. S. nature, kindred, birth, 107, 109, 821, 3136; — kynde, 1445. 2506; bi kinde = by birth, 1425; bi kynde, 507.

Kindeli, adj. by nature, kindly, in an accustomed manner, 1265, 1570; — kindely, 111, 522; — kindeliche, 1097; — kindeliche, 1613; — kyndely, 14; — kyndeliche, 1396; — kendeli, 4867; — kendely, 1110.

Kinghod, n. S. kingly office, 4059.

King-riche, n. S. kingdom, 2127.

Kinhed, n. S. kindness, such as one relation shews to another, 4514.

Kinnesman, n. S. kinsman, 365. [Probably an error for Thomasin; see note.]

Kinrade, n. S. kindred, 522.

Kipen, v. S. to cause to know, to make known, shew, declare, ♢162; — kipe, 1184, 2126, 2956, 4086, ♣286; — kithe, ♣655; — kippe, 1680; — kappe, 4064; 2 p. s. pr. kipped, 603; kipes, 4515, ♣509; pr s. kipes, ♢298, ♢529; kithes, ♢716, ♢783; pt. s. kudde, 231; kid, ♢222, ♢542; pt. pl. kidden, 2301, 4526; kudden, 1223; kiped, 5387; kupped, 1011; imp. s. kipe, 626; pp. kid, ♢169; Kyd, 321, A.S. cyfSan. [In l. 2301, kidden = shewed how to rather than knew how to.]

Kleped. See Clepe.

Knaue, n. S. a boy, 2394. Ch.

Knightweede, n. S. knight’s clothing, armour, ♣544.

Knoulecheden, pt. & pl. acknowledged, 4782.


Kolieres, n. pl. colliers, 2523; — choliers, 2520.

Komaundment, n. commandment, 1084.

Kome. See Com.


Konyng. See Conyng.

Kontre, Kontrey. See Cuntre.

Koraious. See Coraious.

Kortesie, n. F. courtesy, 3926; — kurteysie, 501.

Kortesliche. See Curtesliche.

Kosses, n. pl. kisses, 1011.

Kouchid him, laid him down, 2240.

Koueyne. See Couyne.

Koure, v. to cower, crouch down, kneel, ♣558. See Couren.

Kowden. See Can.

Krepe of, creep out of, 3084. See Crep.

Kud. See Kid, Kipen.

Kun. See Kin.

Kunne. See Can.

Kuntenaunce. See Contenaunce.

Kuntyned, pt. s. demeaned himself, 3301. See Contenaunce.

Kurteyslyche. See Curtesliche.

Kust. ¹See Kesse.

Kupe, Ku)jested, Kupped. See Kipen.

Kuppes, n. pl. S. manners, habits, 331.

Kuuer, (1) v. F. to cover, 1037; pt. s. and pp. keuered, q. v.

Kuuer, (2) v. F. to attain to, succeed, 128. See Keuer.

Kyrke, n. church, 4086.

Lac, v. S. to lack, be without, 453. [Sir E. Madden suggests to read lat, dismiss: I think lac may stand.]

Laced, pt. s. laced up, 1736.

Lachen, v. S. to catch, receive, take, acquire, embrace, ♢4, ♢199; lache, ♢123, ♢214; pr. s. lachis, 4525; imp. s. lache, 666; pt. s. laucht, 1234, 2237, 4708; laucht loud (landed), 2761; laught leue (took leave), ♢250; lau∫t vp (caught up), 2308; lau∫t out (drew out), 1244; pt. pl. lauent leue, 5413; lau∫t leue, 5087, 5201; lachte (they embraced, greeted, i.e. the Phocians and their allies), ♢127; pp. lauent, 671; lau∫t, ♢161. A.S. leccan, geleccan, whence E. o-latch.

Ladde, pt. s. led, 1609, 2618; pt. pl. ladden, 1226, ♢20; ladde, 4292; lad, 459; ledden (governed), 5463.
Lafte. See Leue (2).
Laike. See Layk.
Lang, long, 4130.
Langes. See Long.
Langou, v. F. languishing, faintness, pain, 918, 986, † 245; — languor, 869; — langueur, 737; pl. langoures, 1034. Ch.
Langured, pp. F. pined, languished, 953.
Lappen, v. S. to lap, wrap, 1712; lappe, 2576; pl. s. lapped, 1908; pp. lapped, 740, 2153, 2246.
Laske, v. F. to relax, slacken; hence, to shorten, 570; lask it (= lask it, relax it, assuage it), 950. Cf. O. F. lascher; Sc. lasche (lazy); E. lax, slack; Sw. låsk;dryck (cooling-draught); Sw. sloka, to droop, &c. Cf. Lask, sb. in Halliwell.
Lasse, adj. comp. less, 1079, 1490, 2141, &c. Ch.
Last, conj. lest, 641, 953, 2971.
Last, pp. lasted, endured, 1281; pres. part. lastend (enduring, strong), 1736.
Late, v. S. to let, permit, 2680; 2 p. s. imp. late, 2336, 2355; 3 p. s. pr. subj. late, 2581; 2 p. pl. pr. subj. late, 985; — late me worth, 2355, 3597; cf. † 1186. See Lete.
Laugeden, pt. pl. laughed, 1784.
Laust. See Lachen.
Launced, pt. s. launched, i.e. leapt, 2755. Cf. F. se lancer, and see Lans in Jamieson.
Launde, n. a lawn, or open space in a wood, † 520, † 710. Ch.
Layk, sb. a "lark," a game, play, 678, 1784; — laike, 3110. Sw. lek.
Layke, v. to play, 1021; pt. s. layked, 1026; layked him, 31, 1411; pt. pl. laykededen, 3110; pres. part. layking, 699.
Layne, v. to conceal, act falsely, 906, 918, 1309. O. N. leyna.
Leame. See Leme.
Lebard, n. F. leopard, 2035; — lybard, 2896; pl. lebardes, 2874.
Leche, n. S. a physician, 576, 1032; pl. leches, 1325. Ch.
Ledden. See Ladde.
Ledes. See Lud.
Lederes, gen. sing. leader's, provost's, 2303.
Leef, Leefe, adj. See Leue.
Leef, leave we, 1836. See Leue.
Leese, Leeue. See Lese, Leue.
Lef, adj. lief, dear, 1879, 4372; (glad), 517; as sb. (dear one, the dear one), 2314, 1645; lef pines (seems dear, i.e. pleases), 354; cf. leefe thought (pleased), † 60; — leefe, † 774; — leef, 1839; — leue, 341, 666, 887, 1183, † 847; — leue, † 226; sup. leuest, 3213. Ch.
Lege, adj. F. liege, 1174, 2663, 3004.
Leie, pt. pl. See Lighe.
Lel, adj. F. loyal, leal, true, just, 5119; pl. lele, 1312, 4158; sup. leallest, 4509.
Lelen, v. to make leal, sanction, authorize, 5284.
Lelli, adv. F. loyally, leally, truly, 687, 1281, 1507; — lelly, 955, 989; — lelliche, 117, 999; — lellyche, 357; — lelich, † 64; sup. leliest, 592. [It occurs more than 30 times.]
Leme, n. a limb, 1736.
Leme, n. gleam, light, † 774; — leame, † 1078. Ch.
Lemman, n. S. (lief-man), love, sweetheart, 663, 666, 695, 717, &c. [Used of both sexes.] Ch.
Lene, 3 p. s. imp. grant, impart, give, bestow, afford, 327; 2 p. s. imp. 4398; pt. s. lente, 1233; lent, 885; pt. pl. lenti, 22; pp. lend, 4578. Ch.

Lengen, v. S. to tarry, stay, remain long, dwell, † 44; lenge, 5421, 5538; leng, † 455, † 758; pr. s. lenges, 5413, 5539; lengep, 2070; 2 p. pl. pr. lengen, † 1; pt. s. lenged, 2842; pt. pl. lenged, 2205, 5408, 5462; pp. (becp) lenged, 1457; (is) lengged, † 196. A.S. lengian, to prolong. [In l. 2650, the MS. can be read lenge or lenge; read lengye, another form of the infinitive.]

Lenger, longer, 633, 1113, &c. Ch.

Lenge, v. S. to lengthen, 957; miswritten lengep, 1944; imp. pl. lenghes, 4348; lengep, 4353; pp. lenghed, 1351, 1549; miswritten lenged & lengedyd, 2345.

Lep, pt. s leap't, 702, 2756.


Leren, v. S. to teach, 4770; 1 p. pr. lere, † 325; pt. s. lerde, 341; pp. lerde (taught, learned), † 603, † 1152. A.S. læran.

Lere, v. S. to learn, 119. Ch.

Les, n. S. a pasture, 175, 3138, 3141. See Lease, Leasow, in Halliwell; cf. A.S. lēsu. It is not the plural of lea.

Lesse, v. S. to lose, 1258, 1484, 1645, † 250; leese, † 378; pr. pl. lesen, † 126; imp. s. les, 985; imp. pl. lessen, 3369; pl. s. les, 887, 1234. Ch.

Lesed, pp. See Lissen.

Lesten, v. to listen to, 31; 1 p. imp. pl. lest'en, 3525; 2 p. imp. pl. lestennes, 1153, 3329; listenes, 170, 1929; lusteneb, 384; lesteneb, 4607; lesten, 1439. Ch.

Leستes. See Listes.

Lestep, pr. s. lasts, 5538.

Leten, v. to forego, let go, leave, forsake, 2184; 1 p. s. pr. lete, 382, 5465; pt. s. let (listere of, i. e. thought the less of), 2119; 1 p. pl. imp. let, 3525; imp. pl. lettes, 1186; 3 p. pr. subj. lette, 4144; pp. lete (left), † 563. As a simple auxiliary vb. it is spelt late, q. v. It is common with infinitives in the sense to cause; as, he let sende, 2145; lete write, 2171; let make, 5532. See Do. For the phrase, lete him worke, † 1186, see note to "Werwolf," 3597.

Leperly, adv. wickedly, evilly, 1231;— luperli, 2646, 3151;— lüperly, 2334, 2775. See Liper.

Letrure, n. F. letters, reading, † 1152. Ch.

Lette, n. S. stay, hindrance, 1340, 2655, 4751. Ch.

Lette, v. S. to prevent, hinder, 1253, 3552, 4258;— left, 2971, † 149. Cf. Late, Lete. [It is worth noting that this verb, in the sense to permit, is usually spelt late; in the sense to forego, it is lete; in the sense to prevent, it is lette.] Cf. A.S. leutan, lettian.

Lettered, pp. learned, instructed, 4058.

Letteres, n. pl. (in sing. signification), a letter, 4842, 4844.

Leue, v. S. to believe, 708, 4175; 1 p. s. pr. leue, 497, 1032, 4105; leue, † 639; 2 p. s. pr. leuestow (believest thou), 2358; imp. s. leue, 1553; imp. pl. leue, 1351, 2071; leueth, 5068. Ch.


Leue, adj. dear. See Lef.

Leued, pp. leaved, covered with leaves, 22, 757.

Leuer, comp. adv. liefer, rather, 453, 546, 855, 918, &c. Cf. Lef. Ch.
Leuere. See Liuere.

Leuis, pr. s. lives, dwells, 525; cf. left in l. 1588. See Liuen.

Lente, n. F. loyalty, fealty, 4838. Ch.

Leye, v. S. to lay; “leye mi lif,” 2169; pr. s. leyes on (lays on), 1208.

Liand, Ligand. See Ligge.

Libbing. See Liuen.

Liche, adj. like, 3678, 3698, †767.

Liche, n. S. body, †195.

Lidene, n. S. speech, †782; — ludene, †601. A.S. lyden. Ch.

Lift, adj. left (arm), 2961, 5499.

Ligge, v. to lie, dwell, 2194, 3062, †659; lygge, †1155; pr. s. ligges, 166; lis, 965; pr. pl. lyen, 2266; pt. pl. leie, 4307; part. pres. liand, 2180; ligand, 2246. Ch.

Liiff, n. life, 957, 961, 994.

Liken, v. like, 2 p. pl. pr. 5529; lyken, 162; as impers. vb. (= pleases), likes me wel, 450; likes pe, 957, 1727; likes you dere, 1050; pt. liked him, 28, 678; liked hire, 2032; pres. part. likand (pleasing), †192; pp. lyked, 1012. Ch.

Liking, n. S. pleasure, 452, 2023; —lykyng, 869, 1021. Ch.

Lime, n. S. limb, †1121. Ch.


List, v. impers. pt. s. it pleases, †655; pt. s. lust, 1907; list, 2600. A.S. lystan.

Listenes. See Lesten.

Listes, n. pl. lists (in the phrase, lists of love), 740, 1057; — lestes, 946.


Litel and litel, 950.

Lip, n. S. a joint, 1724. [It also means a limb. Ch.]

Liper, adj. S. wicked, evil, bad, 2119; — luiper, 5240. A.S. lyser. Ch.

Liuen, v. to live, 5394; pr. s. leuis, 525; pt. pl. liuenden, 4502, 5508; pres. part. liuande, 3678; liuand, 1690; libbing, †790.

Liuere, n. F. delivery (of blows), 3822; —leuere, 1233.

Lišt, v. S. to lighten, gladden, 10. Ch.

Lištère, comp. adv. lighter, less, 2119; — lišttere, adj. (nimbler, lighter), 154.


Lo, lo! 731; — loo, 1208.

Lof, n. S. love, 430.

Loged, pp. F. lodged, 1918.

Loke, v. S. to keep, guard, take care of, 1757, 3166, 4770; imp. s. loke, 430.

Lome, adv. frequently, often, †321; — ilome, †521. A.S. gelôme.

Londe, n. S. land, 2763; — lond, 2761; pt. londes, 1175, 3055. Ch.

Long, v. S. to belong, †547; pr. s. longep, 143; longes, 360;langes, 331; pt. s. longed, 73, 1147; lontet, 2719; pt. pl. longede, 2766; pres. part. longyng, †635.

Loos. See Los.

Lorchipe (read lordchipe), n. S. lordship, 3680; —lordschip, 3955. [Cf. Lord, Lordle (for Lord), 3404, 3405.] Lordship = lords, †335.
Lordinges, n. pl. lords, 1183, 1206, 3004.
Lore, n. S. lore, learning, teaching, advice, 328, 346, 2070, 2917. Ch.
Lore, pp. lost, 1360, 1556, 2584; —lorn, 668; —lorne, 4396. Ch.
Lorel, n. F. laurel, 2983.
Lorked, pt. s. lurked, slunk along, 25; pres. part. lorkinke, 2213.
Los, n. F. praise, 1386, 5132; —loos, 1448, 3973; —loose, † 4. Lat. lows. Ch.
Losengeres, n. F. flatterers, 5482.
Ch.
Lop, adj. S. loath; him lop bont (= it seemed loath to him), 1255; hem lop were, 5201. Ch.
Loped, pt. pl. loathed, † 335.
Lophi, adj. S. loathly, 50; —losoleike, † 99. Ch.
Loueliche, adj. S. lovely, 965; adv. in a lovely manner, excellently, 975, 1315.
Louen, 2 p. pl. pr. love, 162.
Lourand, pres. part. louring, 2119.
Du. leeren. P. Pl.
Louwe (hure), v. S. to lower herself, condescend, 708; pt. s. lowed, 695.
Lowed. See Louwe.
Lud, n. S. a man, 452, 535, 1001, † 231, &c.; —lude, † 588; —lued, † 44; pl. ludes, 390, 525, † 331; ledes, 195, 1233. Loundes and ledes, 4001; londes and leedes (where the MS. has leethes, with a d, or a s, above it), † 12. On this difficult phrase see Sir F. Madden's reply to Mr. Singer's remarks on Havelok. Cf. also Wedgewood on Lease, Lect. It seems to mean "lands and leases," or "lands and tenements," as Robert of Brunne uses it frequently to mean tenements, rents, or meals. The older form of the word is lethe or liithe, and it may, after all, not be connected in any way with ledes, the plural of lud. In l. † 12, we surely ought to read leedes or ledes.
Lufsum, adj. S. lovesome, lovely, † 176.
Lust. See List.
Lusteneth. See Lesten.
Luperli. See Leperly.
Lybard. See Lebard.
Lyked. See Liken.
Lyst, n. S. desire, inclination, † 794. Ch.
Lysted, pt. s. desired, † 776. Cf. List.
Lyte, adv. S. little, † 323.
Maat. See Mat.
Maister, n. F. master, 2735, † 682; pl. maistres, 2744.
Maistres, n. F. mistress, 1016.
Maistrie, n. F. mastery, victory, † 170; —maistry, 3341; —maistreye, 3137. Ch.
Make, n. S. mate, companion, 1898, 2498, † 249, † 843, &c.; pl. makes, 1757. Ch.
Makeles, adj. matchless, † 799.
Makes, imp. pl. make ye, 4933; pp. maked, 1951, 4131, 1933: mad, 4876; pres. part. makende, 2985.
Malencoli, n. F. anger, 4362.
Manchipe, n. S. manhood, courage, 3337; —manchip, 2676.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.
Maner, n. manner, kind (used without of following), 698, 1155, 3278.

Manerli, adv. in a mannerly way, 5008.

Manhede, n. S. manhood, 431; — man-hede, 4390; — manhed, 197. Ch.

Mankynne, n. S. mankind, 143.


Maugre, n. F. ill-will, spite, harm, †932; used as an adv. in spite of, †101, †650; — mawgrey, 3745. F. mal gr. Ch.


Mayne, n. S. a company, host of attendants, 416; — meyne, 184, 202, 1199, 1573. G. menge. Mæso-Goth. maneget.

Mayntene, v. F. to maintain, 2698; — meintene, 3002; — meyntene, 3942; imp. pl. meyntenes, 2676. [Miswritten meynte, 1098.]

Mechef. See Meschef.

Mede, n. S. reward, 2135, 4726, 5355; to mede (=} by way of return, by way of security), 2341; to medis (=} by way of requital on my part), 3253. P. Pl. Ch.


Medecd, pt. s. brieded, 4646.

Medle, v. F. to mingle (in fight), †93; pt. s. medled him (was busy), 2492, †170; medled, 2325; pp. medled (meddled), †964. Ch. [It occurs also in the shorter form mele (2) q. v.]

Meken, v. to humble oneself, to submit, 2118; — meke him, 2104, 3928; 1 p. s. pr. meke me, 665; pt. pl. meked him, 1276; imp. s. meke, 3919; imp. pl. mekes (quiet, silence), 4604.

Mekeli, adv. S. meekly, 642, 659, 1480; — mekkeli, 4456; —mekeliche, 408; —mekeliche, 808.

Mele (1), v. S. to talk, speak, discuss, 621, 4009; 2 p. pl. pr. mele, 1342; pt. s. meled, 4684, 5204; pt. pl. meleden (twittered), 831. A.S. méulan, to speak, converse. [Observe the distinction between this word and the next.]
Mele (2). v. F. to mingle in fight, to 
fight, 3325; pt. s. meled (assembled), 
1287; melled hire (busied herself), 
1709, 1719. O.F. mesler, to meddle, 
mingle, mell. [This verb is a shortened 
form of medle, q. v.]
Meling, n. S. conversation, 760. 
See Mele (1).
Meling, n. mingling, 5257; hence, 
primed, F. — mended, pl. mening, 
pt. mening, — pt. mening, — pt. mening, — imp. pl. mending, 647; 
imp. pl. mendes, 845.
Mene, v. S. to mean, intend, sign- 
ify, tell, 4808; 1 p. s. pt. mente, 
500; mennde, 1925; pt. s. ment, 
meat (intended, designed), 1819. 
A.S. menan. Ch.
Mene, v. S. to bemoan oneself, 
mourn, 493; pt. s. mened, 940; pp. 
mened, 561, 1140. A.S. menan.
Menge, v. S. to tell, speak, men- 
tion, 1422; — mengge, 449; — 
meng, 613; — minge, 1824, 1925, 
1937, 4327, 5032, &c.; — mung, 
831, 1441, 1635, 2616, 2785, 4767; 
— myng, 1404; pr. s. minges, 
1067, + 839; 2 p. pl. pr. mungpe, 
1856; 1 p. s. pl. munged, 4863; 
pt. s. munged, 533; pt. pl. munged, 
2999; munged, 3711; mynged, 
1335; pp. munged, 4547; munged, 
2844; 1 p. pl. imp. munge, 3097; 
menge, 794; myng, + 45. A.S. 
myngian.

Mennes, gen. pl. men's, 6; 
— menus, 480.
Mensk, n. S. honour, worship 
(lit. humanity), 1257, 2028, 3900, 
5527; — menske, 313, 2050. Cf. 
P. Pl. Crede, 81. O.S. menomi.
Mensk, v. to honour, 4815; 
— menske, 4834; pp. menskmed, 5132.
Menskful, adj. honourable, wor- 
shipful, 202, 242, 405, 431, 508, 
&c.; — menskfull, + 555; sup. 
menskfulles[1], 1435.
Menskfully, adv. honourably, wor-
Much), 4095; to mochel (too much), 1747. See Mo.

Middle, prep. with, 5009;— mide, 2133;— myd, 3113. A.S. mid.

Midesomer, n. midsummer, 1464.

Middel-erfe, n. S. the earth, world, 1004.

Mildeliche, adv. S. mildly, 1898.

Mile-wei, n. a mile-way, used to denote a very short space of time, 1578. Cf. Ch. Shipm. Ta. 276.

Minge, Minges, Minged. See Menge.

Mires, n. pl. miry places, 3507; cf. 2619.

Mirie. See Merie.

Misdone, v. tr. S. to wrong, harm, 2551; pt. pl. misdide, 2548; intr. 2 p. pl. pr. misdon (do amiss), 3949.

Misdrede 30w, imp. pl. fear, 1567.

Misterde, pt. pl. fared amiss, 2999; pp. misferen, 1359; misfire, 995.

Mis-gilt, n. S. offence, fault, 2118, 3919, 4792;— mis-gelt, 3996, 4397;— mis-gelt, 1541;— misse-gilt, 2104.

Mislliced me, pt. s. impers. misliked me, 2030.

Misprooda, adj. S. pl. haughty, ♦ 312;— misprooud, 2944.

Missade, 1 p. pt. s. reproved, 2040.

Misse, n. S. a fault, error, offence, 532; hence mysse, adj. amiss, wrongly, 141, 1450. Perhaps in l. 1450 myssetrowed is one word; cf. Mistrowe.

Misse, v. S. to miss, 1016; pt. pl. misseden, 1827.

Misseliche, adv. S. wrongly, 711;— missely (mistakenly), 207.

Misseproude. See Misproud.

Missespeche, n. S. evil report, defamation, 1523. "In the same manner is formed the Isl. mismæli, from mis and mæli, loquela."—M.

Mister, n. F. need, want, 1919. O.F. mester; Roq.

Mistrowe, n. S. mistrust, 3314.

Miswerche, v. S. to act amiss, 5148.

Mite; in phrase a mite worp (the worth of a mite), 4543.

Mix, n. S. a vile wretch, 125. Cf. Felpe, which is similarly used. A.S. moxe. O.E. mire, filth. Hence the pp. mixed = filthy.

"That false traitour, that mixed cherl." Havelok, 2533.

Miȝt. See Mow.

Miȝth, n. S. might, 3508.

Miȝthi, adj. S. mighty, 2859.

Miȝtow, thou mightest, 3041. See Mow.

Mo, comp. adj. S. more, 1162, 1189, 1454, 2780, 5241;— more (greater), 3464.

Mo, adv. more, 1271, 3457. More better, 2134.

Moch, Mochel. See Miche, Michel.


Moder, n. S. mother, 242; gen. sing. moder, 1177.

Molde, n. S. mould, i. e. earth, 85;— mold, 377, 528, 618. Men upon molde is a common phrase, both here and in P. Pl.

Mornes, imp. pl. mourn ye, 633; pt. s. morned, 1761; pres. part. morning, 1640.

Morning, n. S. mourning, sorrow, 742;— mourning, 746.

Morwe, n. S. morning, 763, 776. A morwe (on the morrow), 1296.

Most, Moste. See Mot.

Mot, 1 p. s. pr. I am obliged, I must, I ought, 548; pr. s. mot, 4141, 4171; 1 p. pl. pr. mot, 3988;
2 p. pl.-pr. mote, 1043; pt. s. most, 5188; pt. pl. moste, 1052; pr. s. subj. mot (expressing a wish), 602, 1433, 1547, 4509; 1 p. pt. subj. most (= might, would), 3252; pt. s. subj. most, 3547, 3978, 4226, 4817; must, ° 68; pt. pl. subj. most, 4798. Mot nede, pr. s. 4111; most nedes, pt. s. 5188. A.S. ic mót, pt. t. ic móste.

Mountance, n. F. amount, 2391.

Mow, 1 p. s. pr. I may, I can, I am able, 636, 3802; pr. s. 730, 2055, 3998; 1 p. pl. pr. mow, 2794, 3903; 2 p. pl. pr. mow, 1458, 4092; pr. pl. mow, 4162; 1 p. s. pt. miót (could), 2351; pt. s. miót, 3623; miót, 3621; pt. pl. miót, 3539; miót, 3632. Miótow (= mightest thou), 3041. A.S. mægan, pr. t. ic mæg, pt. t. ic wæhta. Moeso-Goth. mægan, pr. t. ic mag, pt. t. ic wæhta.

Muche. See Miche.

Muchel. See Michel.

Munde, n. S. mind, 4123.

Munge, Munged. See Menge.

Muntaynes, n. pl. F. mountains, 2619, 3507.


Murdred (to deôce), pp. 2859; — murpled (to deôce), 1774.

Muri, Murie. See Merie.

Mut, n. F. cry of hounds, 2192. O. F. esmeute; Cotgrave.

Mys, adj. false, 716. [But mys is generally a substantive, or a prefix, and I should prefer to read mys-neath;] See Misse.

Myslych, adj. S. various, of all kinds, ° 1160. Moeso-Goth. missalekks.

N. "This letter, by a species of prosthesis, is often taken from the end of an article or pronoun, and prefixed to the substantive which follows. Examples of this occur in no neiz, for non ei3, 83; a nayme-ment, for an naynement, 136; my nother, for myn other, 468; thi varmes, for thin armes, 666; sister wen, for sistern eye, 2160, &c. See Tyrwhitt's Gloss. in v. nale. The practice existed in familiar writing so late as the reign of Q. Elizabeth, and, perhaps, later still."—M. Cf. note on Nones.

Na, adv. not, 1172. See Ne. Namore, no more, 2812, 2924, 4907; written na more, 2556; namo, 1271.

Nad (contr. from ne had), pt. s. had not, 154; — nade, 1538; — nadde, 119, 1350, 2465; pt. pl. nad, 460.

Nam. See Nym.

Namliche, adv. S. namely, especially, 1203; — namliche, 2604; — namli, 2508.

Namned. See Nempne.

Narmes. See under N.

Nas (contr. from ne was), was not, 278, 2784, ° 460, &c.

Nap (contr. from ne hap), hath not, 4934.

Nápeles, adv. nevertheless, 1751, 4506, 5265. Ch.

Nauye, n. navy, collection of ships, 2719. Ch.

Nay, adv. no, 251, 482, 543, 547, 1559, 1814, 1826, 2003, 2314, &c.; — nai, 916, 965. There is a clear distinction between no and nay. No signifies assent to the previous speaker; nay implies strong denial, and is generally followed by an oath. See No, and Nickes.

Ne, adv. not, nor, 315, 450, 457, &c. Hence, nad for ne had; nis for ne is; nas for ne was; nath for ne hath; net for ne wet; mere for ne were; nodle for ne wolde; not for ne wot; mist for ne wist.

Ned, n. S. need, 3210; — nede, 119; pl. nedes, 1436, 4164, 4251.
Neded, pt. s. needed, 1919.

Nedes, adv. of necessity, necessarily, 1042, 1679, 5185, 5188; — nede, 3922, 4141. A.S. neádes, neáde.

Nedelich, adv. S. urgently, + 747; — ncedelich (necessarily), + 817. Ch.

Nei3.  See Nest.

Nei3h, adv. nigh, nearly, 434, 664, 686; — nei3, 151; — nei3e, 1511; — nei33, 3183; — nei3h, 970; — ney, 2074. Comp. nearer, 1911; þene, 758. Nei3honde (lit. nigh hand), nearly, 1494; — nei3h, 884; — nei3hondes, 438.

Nei3he, v. S. to approach, draw nigh, 3230, 3241; — neih, 278; — nye, + 493, + 700, + 764; pt. s. nei3ed, 770; nei3et, 2599; nei3ed, 1606; nei3ed, + 739; nyed, + 136, + 505; pt. pl. nei3ed, 4899; nei3ed, 2179. [In l. + 493 it may mean, to annoy; cf. Nei3ed.]

Nei3ede, pt. s. S. neighed, 3238.

Nel (for ne wil), 1 p. s. pr. I will not, 484, 718, 1093, 4907; pr. s. nel, 986, 4260; pr. pl. nelle, 4937.

Nempne, v. S. to name, tell, 4213; — nymphe, 2179; pt. s. nemmed, 365; pp. namned, + 534. Ch.

Nende; here, a nende = an ends, 3946.

Nere (contr. from ne were), pr. s. subj. were not, 714, 2409. Cf. Nas.

Nere, Nerre.  See Nei3h.

Nere, never, + 316; the usual form is ruer, 733, &c.

Nesche, adj. S. soft. In hard and in nesche, 495; to harde and to nesche, 534. Ch.

Nest, n. 83. "Nest and no neii (= nest and non ej, i.e. nest and no egg), evidently a proverbial phrase." — M.

Neuen, v. S. to name, tell, 2453, 2517. Ch.

Neuw, n. F. nephew, 1198, 3537; 4211; — newe, 1023, 3118, 4983; — newen, 5095, 5098 (in which last line it seems to mean great-nephew).

Newe, adv. S. newly, lately, 1354; (anew), 2999.

Newene, v. S. to renew, 779.


Nigramauny, necromancy, 119; — nigremaunye, + 460, + 981.

Nigremaunicians, necromancers, + 837.

Nis (contr. from ne is), is not, 377, 1357, 3210; — nys, 712.

Nist.  See Not.

No, adv. no, 2701, 3115; — ne, 1556. See note on Nay.

No, put for Ne, not, 67, 85, &c. Conversely, we find ne for no; see the preceding.

Nobul, adj. noble, 1109, 1198.

Noiper.  See Noper.

Nold (for ne wold), would not, 1 p. s. pt. 1731, 1877; pt. s. 561, 2692; nold, 2184; pt. pl. nold, + 236.

Nome, Nomen.  See Nym.

Non, pron. no one, 396, 443, 2461; (neither of them) 2423; adj. (= no) 509; — no, 275, 1282; — none, 74; adv. no, 2455.

Nones, for þe, 1157, 2015. In the note to l. 7160 of Dr White's Ormulum, vol. ii. p. 642, we find— "For þe vaness, for the purpose. This phrase is so written in the MS., but its grammatical structure, as admitted on the authority of the late Mr Price and of Sir F. Madden,
requires the form forr pen anes, being a slight variation of the A.S. for pan anes, literally for the once. In Layamon we have to pan anes, to pan ane, for that only." For further information, see the rest of the note, and cf. the remark under N.

Nory, n. F. nurse, 1511.

Not (for ne wot), know not, 1 p. s. pr. 320, 541, 903, 4155; pt. s. mist (for ne wist), 741.

Nofer, conj. neither, 1675; — noifer, 722, 2385. "This broad pronunciation is not peculiar to the English provinces, but has also been remarked in France, in such words as chanfoil for chandelle, &c. A writer on the subject says, "En general, quand, dans le Français, se trouve un e ouvert, le rustique y substitue oi." Mélanges sur les langues, p. 71. Svo. Paris, 1831."—M.

Nofer; we find my nofer (= myn ojer), my other, 465; no nofer (= non ojer), no other thing, nothing else, 1679; spell no nooper, † 489, † 756.

Nov, adv. now, 78, 79; — nou, 454; — noufe, 1543; — nowpe, 354, 356, 603; — nope, 1005, 5032; — nouy, 620.

Nouft, adv. not, 13, 299, 358, 450, &c.; n. nothing, naught, 72, 83; miswritten nou, 720.

Noyce, n. noise, 823.

Noynement, 136. A noynement = an oynement, an ointment, unguent.

Noyzed, pp. annoyed, grieved, 770. See note to Neîhe.

Nyce, adj. foolish, 491. Ch.

Nym, v. to take (take prisoner), 1364; pt. s. nam, 1203, 2450, † 465; nam hede (took hede), 365; pt. pl. nomen (the nom. case being soudes), 1309; pp. nome, 2330. Mæso-Goth. niman, pt. t. ik nam, pl. weis nemæm, pp. numans.

Nymph. See Nemphe.

O, art. and adj. one, a, 1112, 1350, 1628, 2461, 3017, 4033, 4321, 4733; — on, 192, 403, 1315; fat on (the one), 1198.

O, miswritten for Or, 1455.

O, prep. on, † 258.

Of, prep. of, passim; (out of), 1039, 3054, 3141; (off), 1218; (for), 442, 500. Brouût of line, brouût of dawe (brought out of life, brought out of day), killed, 1159, 3817; as opposed to on line. As a verbal prefix, it is the A.S. of- or a-. Mæso-Goth., Du., Dan., Swed., Isl. af-. It occurs in Of-reche, Of-se, Of-sende, Of-sette, Of-souȝt, Of-take; see below.


Of-sende, v. S. to send after, send for, 5293; pt. s. of-sent, 1081. See of-sended in Layamon.


Of-souȝte, pt. s. searched out, hence approached, † 1217; pp. of-souȝt (sought after), 1676; of-sought (attacked), † 25. A.S. a-secean.


Of-turned, pt. pl. turned off, stripped off, 2590. [Perhaps the words of and turned should be separated.]

Ofte, adv. S. oft, often, 1570; comp. ofter, 610.
Oiper, conj. or, 3130. See Oper.
Ok, n. S. an oak, 295.

Omage, n. F. homage, 1306, 5403, 5474.


On, adj. one. See O.

One, adj. S. alone, 211, 511, 3150. At him-self one, 3316; him-self one, 651; bi here-self one, 3101. Him one, 17, 4112; hym one, 1792. Pei bre one, 1415. Al-one, 659, 864; al lone but, 1532. God one, 4002. On be one (by thee alone), 4575. Cf. Alone in Jamieson.

Ones, adv. S. once, 195, 611, 637. At ones (at once), 5412; at onis (to-geth er), 5180; (once for all), 3253.

On-honged, pp. S. hanged, 1564.

Onliche, adv. S. only, 3155, 3799.

Onwhar, adv. anywhere, somewhere, 1820; — ourwar, 2251.

Or, adv. S. before, 147, 1747, 2351, 730, 4142, 7310.

Or-trowed, pl. s. supposed, imagined, 738. See or-troweden in Wycl. Gloss., and cf. Ouer-trowe.

Ost, n. F. host, 1127, 1197, 3767. Ch.

Oeter, conj. or, 696, 966, 1498, 1823; (or else), 4067. Oeter—or (either—or), 1212, 1822. Ch.

Oeter, adj. other; hence, pat oeter = the second, the next, 1199; pl.

Oeter (others), 5218. Oeter-gate (otherwise), 3761; and hence, elliptically, oeter = otherwise, 2071, 2122.

Ouer-borde, overboard, 2823; — ouer-bord, 2778.

Ouer-gret, adj. over-great, very great, 1069. The MS. has ouergart greot ost, probably by mistake. "Ouer-gret is used by Chaucer, Cant. T. 16116 (Chan. Yem. Pro/.)."—M.

Ouer-macched, pp. over-matched, 1216.

Ouer-pase, v. to pass by, pass unnoticed, 4113.

Ouer-ride, v. to ride over, harry, 4147, 4262. Ch.

Ouer-slide, v. to pass away without effort to retain it, to slip away, 3519.


Our, adv. over. But our on titly tumhe, except one (of us) soon tumble over, 3388.

Our, poss. pron. our, 4223; pl. oure, 3355.

Out, prep. out of, 1640; — ouxt (out), 3065; — ouxt of (out of), 1204, 1691.

Out-wende, v. S. to go out, 4853.

Ouxt, n. S. anything, aught, 952; — out, 1823, 2090, 2971; ade. ouxt (at all), 2305, 3244, 5219.

Out, pl. s. possessed, 2627; ouxt, 3229; aught, 14, 173, 237; pl. pl. ouxten (owed), 1080. As auxil. vb. out, pl. s. ought, 520, 874, 1323; aught, 547; 1 p. pl. pr. ouxt, 3589; 2 p. pl. pr. ouxt, 4129; pr. pl. ouxt, 5221.

Ow, you, 106. See Jou.

Paide, pt. s. pleased, 4988; pp. payed, 1313, 1038. From Lat. pacare. Ch.

Paie, n. F. pleasure, 193, 5427, 701; — paye, 5492, 5524, 159.
Paleis, n. F. palace, 2838; paleys, 2845.

Pane, n. F. cloth, or fur, 5356. "See Sir Tristrem, p. 37."—M. See also Pane in Wedgwood and Halliwell.

Paradys, Paradise, 443.

Paramours, n. F. mistress, lover, 1534; gen. pl. paramours, lovers', 2987; for paramours, for love, 1758; of paramours, of love, 1412.


Partened, pt. pl. belonged, 1419.

Party, n. F. to hold party to, to maintain the battle against, 3643; pl. parties, sides, 1146; parties, 1150.

Pas, n. F. course, 3915; a "passus," cantio, 161;—pase, pace, 4337.

Passed, pt. s. passed, went, 4112; passad, 3068; pt. pl. passeden, 2166, 3938.

Patriarkes, n. pl. patriarchs, 5047.

Pavilons, n. pl. pavilions, tents, 1630;—paulounns, 1627.

Payenes, gen. sing. pagan's, 365.

Pappe, or Pappe, n. path, 1674.


Peple, n. F. people, 1122;—puple, 499, 4139, 5061.

Peraunenture, peradventure, 254.

Pere, n. F. peer, equal, 443, 709; pl. pers, 3076. Ch.

Perceloustes, sup. adj. F. most perilous, 1191.

Perles, adj. F. peerless, 499, 516, 710, 933, &c.


Pert, adj. F. true, lit. evident, 4930. Lat. apertus.


Pes, n. F. peace, 2951.

Peter, by saint Peter! 681. The line means—"But, by saint Peter! it was only his pillow," &c. Cf. P. Pl. A. vi. 28; Ch. House of Fame, ii. 526; Morte Arth. (ed. Perry), 2884.

Peyne, v. S. to punish, 2898, 3662; pt. pl. pinte, † 238; pp. peyned, in phr. to be punished, that was put to a painful death on the cross, 350, 3127, 4151.

Piled, pp. F. robbed, plundered, 5123. Ch.

Pilns, n. pl. feathers, down, † 814. "Poil folet, the first down or soft feathers of a young bird." Cotgrave.

Pitous, adj. F. piteous, 643;—pytous, 1180;—pitivews, 5488. Ch.

Pitousli, adv. F. piteously, 1168;—pitiuosli, 1756.

Pit, pp. S. pitched, 1627. Ch.

Plece, v. F. to please, 4729;—plese, 5435.

Pleie, v. to play, 678, 1020, 2736; pt. s. pleide, 216, 1195; pt. pl. pleide, 1477; pleyed, 1058.

Plent, n. F. complaint, 1180. Ch.

Plenerli, adv. F. fully, 5435.


Pleyn, adv. F. full, 3158. Ch.
mean crept, from the F. quaïr, explained by Roquefort to mean se tapir, i.e. to squat. But it is rather from the W. cheid, to move nimbly, and is familiar to us in Lowland Scotch in the forms quhid and whild. See quhid in Jamieson.

Quintyse, n. F. cunning, skill, 4220.

Quelle, v. S. to kill, 1246, 2123, 2773, 2811, &c.; pr. s. quelles, 179; pt. s. quelled, 1109. Cf. kylien in l. † 924.

Queme, v. S. to please, delight, satisfy, 3104, † 227, † 652, † 1181; 2 p. s. pr. que mest, † 593; pp. quemed, † 788. Ch.

Quemfull, adv. S. pleasing, giving delight, † 552.

Queynt, adj. F. quaint; i.e. cunning, skilful, 4136, 4254;—quinte, 1401. Ch.

Queyntli, adv. F. quaintly, i.e. cunningly, 4644; — quenytliche, 3233. Ch.

Quie, adj. S. alive, 1564; — quik, 1212. Ch.

Quicliche, adv. S. quickly, soon, 903; — quikliche, 2127.

Quiete. See Quenyt.

Quite, v. F. to repay, requite, 325, 4726; pr. s. subj. quite, 4713. Ch.

Quity, adv. freely, entirely, 2341. "Used by Ch. Cant. T. 1794 (Knightes T. 934)."—M.

Quod. See Quaf.

Radde. See Rede, v.

Raddely, Radely, Rapli. See Redelii.

Rauzt, pt. s. S. reached, 1193, 4424; raught, † 1174; pp. rauzt, 4583.

Railed, pp. striped, decked, 1618. See Rail in Wedgwood, Riolè in Cotgrave, and cf. Norman Railer, to score, draw lines, streak.


Real, adv. F. royal, splendid, 866, 1310, 1405, 1597, 1601;— riall, † 178, † 267; sup. realist, 3944. Ch.

Realy, adv. F. royally, 352, 1260, 1391, 1426, 1618;— real, 5460; — rialie, 4859; comp. realiere, 4852. Ch.


Reching, n. explanation, † 599. A.S. recan, to say, explain.

Recuner, n. F. to recover, i.e. to gain, 2501; pt. s. intr. recuened (recovered), 3574.

Recunerere, n. F. recovery, revival, 439.

Reddour, n. F. violence, injury, 2953. [The words reddour = violence (O.F. roideur), and reddour = fear (Suio-Goth. redde), are often mistaken for each other.]


Rede, n. S. advice, counsel, 803, 1458, 1692, 5115, † 356. What is me to rede, what is advisable for me, 903; shortened into what to rede, 3883; take hire to rede, considered as advisable for herself, 133. Cf. A.S. to ræde, s.v. reæd in Bosworth.

Rede, v. S. to advise, counsel, 1356; 1 p. pr. pt. rede, 1112; pt. s. radde, 1301; (= read), 4453; pr. s. subj. rede, 2262. Too rede, to read, to explain, † 856. Ch.

Redeles, adj. S. without counsel, at a loss what to do, † 394;— redles, 2915.

Redelii, adv. S. readily, quickly, soon, 461, 1824, 1828, 2516;— redelie, 439, 5467;— redii, 3563;— redilie, 1226;— redli,
 Glossarial Index.

2143, 2488; — redly, 866, 1153; — reddly, 1367; — radely, 41; — raddly, 810. [It occurs nearly 30 times. In l. 3179 Sir F. Madden explains rapli by quickly, but we should read rapli, as in the MS.]

Regal, n. F. regality, 282.


Remued, pt. s. intr. removed, went, 1325; renewed, 5106, 5317; pt. pl. renewed, 1297. Ch.

Renkes. See Rink.

Remne, v. S. to run, 219, 2268, 3179. Ch.

Reproyne, n. F. reproof, 652.


Resset, n. F. a place of shelter or refuge, 2501. See Recet in Coleridge’s Gloss. Index.

Restored, pp. stored, 2846.


Reue, v. S. to rob, bereave, 1824, 4392; reued, 2755. Ch.

Reneles, n. pl. F. revels, 1953.

Reuested, pp. dressed, 1959, 5047.

Reuliche, adv. ruefully, pitiable, 86.

Renowres, n. pl. S. robbers, 5478.

Reuße, n. S. ruth, pity, 2115, 3270.

Reward, n. F. regard, 3339.

Rewes me, pr. s. grieves me, 562; pt. s. rewed him, grieved him, 4987. Ch.

Rialiche. See Reali.

Rialute. See Realte.

Riche, v. F. to enrich, or more probably, to be rich, 3014.

Riche, n. S. a kingdom, \( \uparrow \) 58.

Richesse, n. F. riches, 1935, 3014, 5057. [It is in the sing. number.] Ch.

Richlier, adv. more richly, 1934.

Ridende, pres. part. 1954.

Rif, Rifliche. See Rinedli.

Rigge, n. S. back, \( \dagger \) 1174. Ch.

Rink, n. S. a man, hero, warrior, 1193, 1935, 3563, \( \dagger \) 105, \( \dagger \) 480; — rynk, 1472; — ring, 5213; — ryng, \( \dagger \) 1145; pt. pl. rinkes, 1213, 1226, \( \dagger \) 341, \( \dagger \) 354; renkes, 1155.

Rise, n. Reggio, in Calabria, 2717. “See Panizzi’s Life of Bojardo, vol. ii. p. lxxxii. n. The same change seems to have taken place in regard to Riez in Provence, as remarked by Mr Nicol, to whom I am indebted for a reference to Martiniere’s Dictionary, sub. v. Riez.”—M.

Rist, n. S. rising; some rist = rising of the sun, \( \dagger \) 791; hence, the East, \( \dagger \) 535.

Rit, adv. right, 4268; — rist, 273.

Riue, adj. S. rife, abundant, full, 4145, 5414, \( \dagger \) 726; — ryfe, \( \dagger \) 268.

Rinedli, adv. abundantly, widely, 2953, 3540; — riedliche, 2115; — rifiche, 1472; — rif, 1953.

Rist, adv. See Rit.

Ristes, n. pl. rights, 3218. At here riætes, exactly, rightly, suitably, 4906; — at ale riætes, 4255; — to pe riætes, 5006, 5026; — to pe riætes, 53; — to riætes, 1957; — to riætes, 1605, 1632; — too rightes, \( \dagger \) 660, \( \dagger \) 846, \( \dagger \) 950; to righthus, \( \dagger \) 1222. Anon riætes, straitlyway, immediately, 1306; — anon riætes, 235. Vp-riættes (upright), 1789; doun-riætes, 1165. Riætes gates, by the right way, 5322. [In At
all *rîles*, to *rîlès*, &c., I suppose *rîles* to be the pl. of *rîl*, sb.; in anom *rîles*, *ep*-rîlès, *douin*-rîlès, is the gen. case sing. used adverbially; cf. *rîlès*, adv. in Lazamon. In *rîlès* gates, I think *rîlès* is the gen. sing. of *rîl*, adj. agreeing with *gates*, gen. of *gate*; the whole expression being used adverbially.

Rîlîlæche, v. S. to govern, 282, 1310. A.S. *rîlthlæcan*.

Rîlîly, adv. directly, straightforward, 232. Cf. Rit.

Roche, n. F. rock, 2367. Ch.

Rode, n. S. rood, cross, 1669, 1802, 2083, 2360. Ch.


Romend, pt. s. roamed, 1608; pt. pl. rønden, 810. Ch.

Rote, n. S. root, 638. Ch.

Roted, pp. rotted, 4124.

Route, v. F. to trouble, harass, 5478.

Route, n. F. a rout, company, troop, 1213, 1616, 1944, 3354; — routée, 4276; — rowte, 397. Ch.

Roum, n. a room, i.e. a space, while, 1030.

Rouût hem, it recked them, i.e. they eared, 3353; pl. rought (recked), 3388.

Rowe, adj. S. rough, 4778. Ch.

Rudli, adv. rudely, 3270.

Sad, adj. firm, steadfast, *in various senses*; as, discreet, steady, sober, 228; firm, massive, 1072; firm, sure, 1463; severe, grievous, 2775; — sadde, firm, sure, 1371; sup. saddest, chiefest, 677; *in which last instance it is very nearly equivalent to most joyous*; cf. l. 3675. "In the sense of heavy, hard, or solid, it is used in the Wycliffite Bible, in the Prompt. Parv. (A.D. 1440), and in Stanbridge's Vocab. (A.D. 1513). In the North, this signification is not yet obsolete; see Brockett, and Hunter." — M. Cf. Welsh, *sad*, firm, steady, discreet. Ch.

Sadly, adv. firmly, 1014; seriously, 488, 557; steadfastly, 469, 524; earnestly, 418, 1165, 2358; — sadli, fixedly, 762; discreetly, 969; earnestly, 2524; seriously, 4146, 4170; purposely, 2750; heavily, 539; — sadlie, closely, 2281, 2592; — sadly, quietly, in a low tone, 311; sup. saddest, most earnestly, 3675; cf. l. 677. Ch.

Saf. See Sauf.

Sai, Saie. See Se.

Saile, v. to sail, 2673; — sayle, 2721; pt. pl. saileden, 2763.

Sake, n. S. cause; *hence*, for pat sake = on that account, 2019. A.S. *sæcu*, a dispute, suit at law, cause.

Saluède, pt. s. saluted, 4017.

Samen, adv. S. together, 433, 909, 1288, 1907, 2267, 2445, &c.; — same, 4318, 4899; — samne, 342. It occurs 19 times. The expressions *samen to-geder* (909), and *samen y-fere* (2267) are pleonastic. It is found in Spenser.

Samli, adv. together, 1835; cf. ll. 433, 909. A.S. *samadlæice*.

Sarre, comp. adv. more sorely, 2025, 3441.


Sauftly, adv. safely, 3051; — saufli, 2658; — safliche, 256; — saufliche, 255. Ch.

Saules, n. pl. souls, 3705.

Saundbruel; the name of a horse, 3585. "So named from its colour." — M.

Sauor, n. F. scent, perfume, 638, 818; — sawour, 849.

Saunt, n. F. assault, 2651; —
saute, † 301; pl. sauttes, 2682; sautes, 2857. Ch.

Sawe, n. S. saying, word, 1112, 1305, 1483, † 757; pl. sawes, 1439.

Say. See Se.

Sayle. See Saile.

Schal, pr. s. shall, 2938, 2945, &c.; 1 p. pl. pr. schul, 5422; 2 p. pl. pr. schul, 5162; schulle, 3690; chul, 3339; pr. pl. schul, 964, 2943, 2952; schulle (ought), 3507; 2 p. s. pt. schuldest, 5194; pt. s. schold, 2969, 2971; chold, 2014; 2 p. pl. pt. schuld, 3655; pt. pl. schuld, 3810. See next word.

Schaltow, shalt thou, 340, 5132; — schalstow, 325.

Schamful, adj. S. harmful, 1855.

Schamly, adj. S. shameful, 556.

Schap, n. S. shape, 2885.

Schape, v. F. to escape, 2749; pt. pl. schaped, 2752; pp. schaped, 460, 731, 1282; schapat, 2151.

Schapen, pp. shapen, shaped, 126, 225, 1447; — schape, 3214.

Scharplyche, adv. S. sharply, 178.

Schape, n. S. scathe, harm, disgrace, 3008, 3054, 4051.

Schapeles, adv. S. scatheless, without injury, 1855; — scapeles, 2749.

Schapli, adv. harmfully, hardly, 2794. [But it may be a mistake for schepelesli.]

Schawes, n. pl. groves, 178. Ch.

Schawes, n. pl. men, † 484. The sing. shawe, † 766, should rather be spelt scheewe. A.S. seeke, a servant, man.

Seche, pron. she, 836, 837, &c.; — hue, † 34, † 35, † 36; — che, 462, 641. A.S. heo.

Scheche, v. S. to seek, 2068.

Scheld, n. S. shield, 3214; — schel, 3216.

Schenchip, n. S. shame, dishonour, 556, 1803. Ch.

Schende, v. S. to shame, dishonour, disgrace, 556, † 995; — schend, † 566; pp. schent (destroyed, dead), 2795, † 1028. Ch.

Schene, adj. S. fair, beautiful, bright, 3214, 3296; — scheene, † 202. Used as sh, lady being understood, 733, 3299. Ch.

Scheenely, adv. S. brightly, † 631.

Schepen, n. S. ship, 5088; — schipe, 5212; — schip, 2729; pt. pl. schippes, 2728.

Schete, v. S. to shoot, 2399; — schote, 178; pt. s. shet (read schet), † 277.


Scheuered, pp. shivered, 3411.

Schilde, 3 p. s. imp. shield, 1803.

Schille, adj. shrill, 213; adv. (shrilly), 37, 3831. Du. schel.

Schinnes, n. pl. skins, 2420.

Schipmen, n. pl. sailors, 2768; — chipmen, 2511, 2518.

Schire, adj. clean, † 1008. See Sheer in Wedgwood.


Schon, n. pl. shoon, shoes, 14.

Schonde, n. S. shame, dishonour, 555.

Schore, n. S. a score; fourre shor, 1102, 2540; ten shor, 3909.

Schorned, pp. scorned, 554.

Schortely, adv. shortly, 1132; — shortly, 2035.

Schortet, pp. shortened, 1549.

Schote. See Schete.

Schour, n. S. shower; scharp
scurax  =  shower  of  darts  or  blows,  4514;  cf.  l.  2756.  Cf.  flava  scurax,  showers  of  arrows,  in  the  A.S.  fragment  of  Judith.

Schoute[s],  n.  pl.  flat-bottomed  boats  of  light  draught,  † 454.  See  ShoUte  in  Halliwell.  Du.  schuit.

Schrew,  n.  a  wicked  person,  4613;  pl.  shrews,  † 80.  See  Shrew  in  Wedgwood.  Ch.

Schrewedest,  sup.  adj.  most  wicked,  4643.  See  Wyel.  Gloss.

Schuift,  pt.  s.  either  shifted,  from  A.S.  sceftan  or  shoved,  from  A.S.  sculpan,  3290.  See  Shifl  in  Wedgwood.


Schul.  See  Schal.

Schlauder,  n.  F.  slander,  4045.  Ch.

Se,  n.  S.  to  see,  765;  —  sen,  1283,  3203;  sene,  759,  3834,  4457;  1  p.  s.  pt.  sai,  2160;  2  p.  s.  pt.  seí,  276;  pt.  s.  seí,  2117;  seý,  4901;  seî,  34,  590,  871,  &c.;  say,  228,  1585;  seie,  1505;  seic,  102,  2133;  seye,  26;  1  p.  pl.  pt.  seïen,  3501;  pt.  pl.  seïen,  1063;  seïen,  4503;  seïen,  2760;  seie,  2232;  pp.  seie,  276,  2344,  2586;  seien,  5003;  seïen,  1792;  seyn,  5058;  imp.  pl.  seï,  1715.


Seche,  v.  s.  to  seek,  223,  2203;  pr.  s.  sechept,  4121,  5520;  pres.  pt.  sechande,  2603.  See  Souzt.

Sechyng,  n.  S.  a  seeking,  searching,  2190.

Sede,  Seide,  &c.  See  Seie.

Seemeli,  Seenlich.  See  Semli.

Seg,  n.  S.  a  man,  226,  518,  772,  839,  &c.;  —  segre,  † 232;  pl.  segges,  1341,  2223,  † 286;  seges,  1063.  P.  Pl.

Seged,  pp.  F.  besieged,  3805.

Segging,  n.  S.  a  saying,  a  repetition  of  words  of  incantation,  † 531.

Seie,  v.  S.  to  say,  1279;  —  seîz,  60;  seye,  1281;  sege,  † 584,  † 1033;  sigge,  † 8;  2  p.  s.  pr.  seistow,  2256;  pt.  s.  seide,  70,  3119;  seyde,  954;  seide,  913;  seyde,  2274;  2  p.  s.  pt.  seidestow  (=  scidest  pow),  267;  imp.  pl.  seie,  4173;  seib,  4170;  seisih,  593.

Seile,  n.  S.  2731;  where  þe  seile  =  sailing,  voyage;  see  find  sayle  =  a  sail,  568.

Seišt,  of  his  =  out  of  his  sight,  420.  [Probably  miswritten  for  siêt.]  See  Sijt.

Sek,  adj.  S.  sick,  557,  590,  1489.

Sekly,  adj.  S.  sick,  1505.  [We  still  use  sickly  as  an  adj.]

Seknes,  n.  S.  sickness,  842;  —  sekenes,  841;  —  sekenesse,  593.

Selcoup,  adj.  S.  strange,  wonderful,  admirable,  1621,  2708;  —  selcoupé,  658,  700,  2329;  —  selcope,  2569,  2989;  —  selkouthe,  † 130.  Used  as  sb.,  thing  being  understood,  selcoup,  2291,  2579;  selcoupé,  700,  3458.

Selcoup’dly,  adv.  S.  strangely,  wonderfully,  2650,  4924,  5064;  —  selcoup’dly,  3263;  —  selkouply,  3330.

Sell,  n.  F.  a  seal,  † 834,  † 853.

Sell,  n.  F.  a  cell,  † 525.  Ch.

Selue,  S.  self,  same,  very,  1149,  1300,  &c.;  —  self,  1839;  pt.  selue,  727,  889,  &c.  Selue  wise,  very  way,  same  way,  462,  490,  1438.  Dat  selue,  the  very  same,  3502.  þe  selue  duk,  the  duke  himself,  1368.  What  I  suppose  þe  selue,  what  if  I  suppose  that  very  thing,  549.

Seluer,  n.  S.  silver,  2554.

Semblant,  n.  F.  outward  semblance,  appearance,  show,  228,  841,  3502,  4512.

Sembul,  v.  F.  to  assemble,  gather,
3555 ; pp. 2147, 3319. In l. 3811, we have pt. pl. sembled, which probably means encountered; cf. l. 3815. Sembyng = encountering occurs in Lancelot of the Laik, 2951.

Semes, me = it seems to me, 620 ; pt. me semen, seem to me, 1686 ; pt. pl. semde, 2880.

Semes, n. pl. S. horse-loads, 2554. "A sack of eight bushels is now called a seam, which was a horse-load—hence generally a load, a burden." Bosworth, in v. seam. Cf. G. saum, a burden. F. somnier, a sumpter or pack-horse, &c. [Sir F. Madden suggests that the word (which is somewhat indistinct) may, however, be selwes.]

Semli, adj. S. seemly, comely, fair, 829, 1882 ; — semly, 298, 765, 537, 549 ; — semliche, 49, 1454, 2232 ; — semlyche, 568 ; — seemlich, † 322 ; — semell, † 232. Pat semly = that seemly person or lady, 752, 533, 871, &c. Sup. semlyest, 518, 551.

Semly, adv. in a seemly manner, courteously, 1432 ; — semlich, becomingly, † 159.

Sendeth, imp. pl. send ye, 2068.

Sene, 3035. This can hardly mean seen, and I have no doubt that it is simply miswritten for some = soon, which ends l. 3037 below. It is an instance of the common confusion between e and o, like sweeto for swete in l. 818.

Sent, n. assent, agreement; in the phr. at o sent = with one assent, 3017, 5253 ; at sent = in agreement, well aware, 1983. Halliwell quotes "Many armies were tynt, That were never at the sent To come to that turnament."
MS. Lincoln, A. i. 17. f. 134.

Sere, put for Sire, sir, 3570. See Sire.

Serliche, 2149, » adv. explained Serreli, 3316, » by Sir F. Mad-
Setled, pp. S. settled, sunk, 2452; — setteled, settled, composed, 4502.

Seue-ništ, n. seven-night, a week, 766; — seueništ, 573.

Seurte, n. F. surety, 1463. Ch.
Seute, n. F. suit, case, 1080, 1250.

Seute, n. F. pursuit, chase, 2392, 2615.

Sewe, v. F. to follow, pursue, 2821; — sew, 2751; — seewe, 581; pr. s. sewes, 1376; sewep, 4897; pt. s. sewede, 3354; sewed, 418; sued, ↑957; pt. pl. seweden, 2193, 2766; sewede, 2014; sewed, 2190, 2388, 3506; pp. sewed, 1773; imp. pl. sewes, 1116. Ch.

Sexti, num. sixty, 1087.

Sigge, v. to say, ↑8. See Seie.

Signifiuncce, n. F. significance, 2958. Ch.

Sikamour, n. a sycamore, 829.

Siken, v. S. to sigh, ↑395; — sike, 691, 750; 1 p. s. pr. sike, 433; sijh, 909; pt. s. siked, 1487, 1641, 4069; sijt, 2971; pres. pt. sikande, 5448; sikand, 539, 662; sikende, 891; sikitinde, 190; siking, 5189, 5209. Ch.

Siker, adj. S. secure, sure, 2361, 4366, 4657; sup. sikercost, surest, strongest, ↑334. Ch.

Sikered, pp. secured, assured, 1463.

Siking, n. S. a sighing, lament, 5451; — sikyng, 601; pl. sikingges, 566.

Simple, adj. F. of low degree, 714.

Sin, conj. since, ↑103.

Signifieth, pr. s. signifieth, ↑853. Cf. Signifiancence.

Sire, n. F. sir, 326, 1250; — sir, 1095; — sere, 3570; pl. sires, 2248.

Sipe, n. S. only in pl. 780, 1755; (pousand) 1696, 5154; (six) 2098; also in form sipes, 103, 1038, 1265, 2470, 3620. Ch. [The form sipes = A.S. sīpas; sīpe = A.S. sīfan or sībum, forms which often follow numerals.]

Sittus, pr. s. sits, 446; — sittes, 620; 1 p. s. pt. sete, 1622.

Sijt, n. S. sight, 933, 1687, &c.

Siôtes, n. pl. S. 924. "Sights, used for the singular." — M. But may it not mean sighs, which suits the context better, and requires no forcing? Cf. Du. zucht, a sigh; A.S. sicect. See sihen in Stratmann.

Skil, n. S. reason, 1680, 4098; — skille, 336. Ch.

Skoumifti, pp. F. discomfited, defeated, ↑371; — skoumifte (miss-written skoumikty), ↑86.

Slake, v. (1) trans. to slacken, relax, assuage, abate, 728, 778, 788, 1521; pt. s. slaked on = fell relaxingly upon, ↑779; pp. slaked, 1507, 4796; (2) intr. pr. s. slakes, becomes less, 924; pt. s. slaked, died out, faded away, ↑714. Icel. stóken, to extinguish, O.N. skóka, to die out. Suio-Goth. släcka (v. Ihre) ; Sw. släkna, to become slack, A.S. slæcken. Ch.

Sle, v. S. to slay, 2797; pt. s. slow, 1196; slôz, 3890; pt. pl. slowen, 1275; pl. slowen, 1165, 3459; pp. shawe, 1779, 3421, 3435; sleie, 379. Ch.

Sleijjpe, n. S. sleight, 2151.

Slepend, pres. pt. sleeping, 2291; pl. s. slept, 656; pl. pl. slepten, 2292.

Sliîgi, adv. slily, secretly, insensibly, 792; — sliichte, 1065; — sliçliche, 1413; — sleichliche, 637. Ch.

Slod, pt. s. S. slid, slipped, 792.

Smyland, pres. part. smiling, 991.

So, adv. S. so; hence, wat so = whatsoever, 607; what so = whatsoever, 621; who-so = whosoever, ↑87. See Ho. So as = in like manner as, 338.
Soberliche, adv. soberly, i.e. seriously, prudently, 237; — soberly, 991. Ch.

Socoures, imp. pl. succour ye, 4319.

Sode, pp. S. sodden, 1849.

Softili, adv. softly, gently, 632, 677.

Soget, n. F. subject, 473; pl. sogetes, 463. Ch.

Solas, n. F. solace, comfort, enjoyment, 677, 1550. Ch.

Solas, v. F. to solace, delight, 1621.

Solempne, adj. F. lit. solemn; suitable to a great occasion, 1599; grand, famous, 1454. See Solempne in Roq.

Solempthe, n. F. solemnity, solemnization of marriage, 1462.

Son. See Sowne.

Sond, n. S. lit. that which is sent, just as a find is that which is found; hence (1) a messenger, 1872; pl. sondes, 1078, 1308, 1594, 5271, + 291; (2) a message, 5195, 5199; (3) a God's-send, a gift, that which is sent us by God's grace, 4561; — sonde, 64, +973; and hence we may explain the difficult phrase “seemly to sonde” in + 175 as meaning “a comely creature for a man to acquire;” cf. l. 64 of the Werewolf.

Sonken, pp. sunk, 4111; — sound, +1092.

Soothelich. See Sopli.

Sor, n. S. sorrow, 894; — sore, 891; pl. sores, 598; soris, 639. Cf. soree in l. 3543.

Sore, adv. S. sorely, 593; comp. sorer, 634.

Sorful, adj. S. sorrowful, 3541.

Sori, adj. worthless, 3509; painfully, 3696.

Sorly, adv. 463. “Surely (l); see Serliche.” — M. Probably mis-written for serly, as Sir F. Madden suggests, in which case I would explain it by straightly, strictly, closely; see note on Serliche. The French has, “sont il a lui oil por voir, et font da lot a son voilor.”

Sowrfuliche, adv. sorrowfully, 2971.


Sop, adj. S. true, 2799; soply soply, verily true, true indeed, 700.

Sopli, adv. truly, verily, 949, 1194; — sopli, 76, 379, 473; — sopliche, 1452; — soothelich, +973.

Sotiliche, sup. adj. most subtle, most secret, 2603.

Sotiliche, adv. subtly, 3117, 4783. Ch.


Soudiour, n. Low Lat. soldier, 3954; — sowdiour, 3951. Ch.

Souerayn, n. F. chief, leader, 4938; gen. sing. souerayne, provost’s, 4695. “The title is still retained in some towns in Ireland.” — M.

Soueraynest, sup. adj. most sovereign, chiefest, above all others, 524, 4932; cf. most souereyn, 518.

Soueraynli, adv. above all, chiefly, supremely, 1062.

Souked, pt. s. sucked, 2702. Ch.

Soupe, v. F. to sup, 3524. Ch.

Souzt, pl. s. of to seche, but used in a peculiar manner; thus, souzt for = found out his way onward, 4677; souzt out = ventured out, went out, 4681; sought to = made for, reached. + 95; pl. souzt to = reached, 2717; soute on-sunder = parted, 5455; sousten on gate = went on their way, 5214. Cf. Seeche.

Sowdiour. See Soudiour.

Sowne, n. F. sound, 210; — son, 39. [It is vulgar to say gound for
gown, but custom has sanctioned sound for sohn. Ch. has sown, but sownde is the form in the Prompt. Parv. a. d. 1440.]

Spakly, adv. wisely, knowingly, excellently, well, 19; but more generally it is an expletive, meaning quickly, soon, as in 966; — spakh, 3357, 3631: — spacy, 3399; — spaeli, 3389, 3392, 3529, 4499, 4887, 5212. “The root is, apparently, to be sought in the Su-Goth. spak, Icel. spekr, sapiens. See Hire.” — M. The same root probably is that of Sc. spae, and of O. H. Ger. spahi, prudent; Dan. space, to predict; and probably also of Ger. spähen, Eng. spy, &c. The word occurs in the form spakely in Morte Arthur, ed. Perry, i. 2063.

Spaynols, n. pl. Spaniards, 3631, 3730, 3770, 5168, 5212; — spaynolus, 3631, 3770, quickly, excellently, soivnde generally.

Spede, v. (in out-spede or out spedde) to succeed, 548; pp. spedde, 1293, 1715; (2) trans. to help, succour, in pt. s. spedde, 4922.

Spedeliche, adv. speedily, 19; — speedly, 5488, 1516.


Spekledes, n. pl. S. splinters, 3392, 3603, 3855. Cf. E. spell or spill, originally a chip of wood for lighting a candle. See Spatt, Spelk, Spell in Wedgwood. “In the Prompt. Parv. we have Spalle, or chyppe. Quisquisla, assula. The latter term is still used in the North; v. Brockett.” — M. See also Spawl, Spawl, Speel, Spelder, Spell, Spelt, in Halliwell, all meaning a chip; and cf. G. spallen, to split.

Spenen, v. S. to spend, † 362; pp. spented, distributed, 4321.

Spille, v. trans. to destroy, confound, overthrow, 966, 1891, 3009, 3437, 4100, 4395; pp. spilt, 3764; (2) intrans. to die, 1 p. s. pr. spille, 1535. Ch.


Spors, n. pl. spurs, 1482. Ch.

Spret, n. S. a boatman’s pole, 2754; — sprite, a pole, † 1097. See Spret in Halliwell. “It is still preserved in the term bow-sprit.” — M. A sprit-sail has its name from the pole that traverses it diagonally.

Stabled, pp. established, † 514.

Stalkeden, pt. pl. S. walked cautiously, one step at a time, 2728. “Dan. stalkke, to go with high uplifted feet, with long steps”; Wedgwood. Ch.

Stalwort, adj. S. strong, stout, 1950.

Standes, imp. pl. stand ye, 2263; pt. pl. stoden, 2728.

Stede, n. S. place, stead, 3521, † 303, † 769. Ch.

Stef, adj. S. stiff, strong, 2894, 3600, 3604; — styf = deep, profound, 4056; — stiff, 3535.

Stelen, adj. of steel, 3535, 3859; — stel, † 416.

Stepchilderen, n. pl. 131.

Stepmoder, n. stepmother, 2640; pl. stepmoderes, 130, 4099.

Sterne, adj. S. stern, fierce, brave, 159, 2981, 3243; — sturne, 3409, 3750; sup. sturnest, 3226.

Sternely, adv. S. sternly, fiercely, bravely, boldly, 1158; — sternl, 2894, 3240; — sturnl, 3907. Ch.

Stert, v. S. to start off, gallop, 3600; 1 p. s. pt. sterte, I started off, I ran, 2277; pt. s. stert vp, started up, 4355; stirse vp, 3275. Ch.

Sterue, v. S. to die, † 445; pp. storue, died, 1515. Ch.

Stif. See Stef.

Stifly, adv. S. earnestly, eagerly,
profundely, 736, 880; — stili, 1657; — stiffly, 219.

Stiked, pp. pierced, 3818.

Stint, n. S. stop, delay, 2350, 5379.

Stint, v. S. to stop, dwell, cease, pause, leave off, 159, 1612, 1661, 5232; — stinte, 1042; — styn, 2781; in transitive sense, to make to leave off, 4056; pl. s. stint, 61, ↑ 951; stinte, 1574; pl. pl. stinten, ↑ 445; stint, ↑ 386; imp. s. stint, 1652; imp. pl. stintes, 1206; stintep, 1113. "It is inserted in the Prompt. Parv. ‘Styntyn’. Pauso, desisto, subsisto.” — M. Ch.

Stirte vp. See Stert.

Stip, adj. S. strong, ↑ 91.


Stiward, n. S. a steward, 3378, 4211; gen. sing. stiwardes, 3446. Ch.

Stiit, pp. S. set, fixed, 4425.

Stiitli, v. S. to dispose, arrange, manage, 3841, 5379; stiitli to-gadere = arrange matters between them, 3281; pl. s. stiitled, 1199; (disposed of), 2899. Cf. P. Pl. Crede, 315.

Stiglithlich, adv. disposedly, in right order, in their proper place, ↑ 293.


Stonen, adj. of stone, 1072.

Store, n. F. story, 4806.

Storne. See Sterne.

Stoteye, n. cunning, stratagem, 4985. Lat. astutia, O.F. astuce.

Stounde, n. S. a space of time, a while, 159, 1360, 1574, 1657, 2263, ↑ 630; bi a stounde, for a short while, 1832; a stounde while, a moment, ↑ 951. Ger. stunde. Ch.


Stour, n. F. battle, conflict, 3536, 3907; — stoure, 4214; — stoure, 3530. O.F. estour; cf. icl. styrr, a battle. Ch.

Stoutliche, adv. stoutly, 1950.

Strane, pr. pl. strain, ↑ 349. See the note.

Strawed, pp. strewn, 1617.

Streeche, v. S. to stretch, 219; pl. s. streyt, 2957; streit him = went, 3279; pp. straiæd, 3617; imp. pl. streeches, 1113.

Streit, adv. straight, 3328; — streit (probably miswritten for streigte), 3592. Ch.

Strek into a studie = fell into deep thought, 2981, 4038. A.S. striccau, to pass on. Cf. G. streichen, to strike, to fly, &c. It is even applied to the flowing onward of a stream—"As strem that striketh stille:” Lyric Poetry; ed. T. Wright. Percy Soc. 1842, p. 44.

Striked, pp. streaked, strewn, 1617.

Striued, pt. s. strove, 4099.

Sturne, Sturnli. See Sterne, Sternely.

Studie, n. F. deep thought, 4038, 4056. Cf. l. 130.

Sty, n. S. a path, 212.

Sued, pt. s. followed, ↑ 957. See Sewe.

Sufreded, pt. s. suffered (miswritten for Sufred), 783; pp. suffered, 1014; imp. pl. suffreþ, permit ye, 3337.

Sunder, v. intr. to part, 1052.

Sunner, comp. adv. sooner, 962, 3366.

Surgens of salerne = surgeons of Salerno, 964, 1576; spell surgyns, 1033. Cf. "A surgyne of Salerne
enserches his wondes.” Morte Arthure; ed. Perry, l. 4312.

Suster, n. S. sister, 2643, 5093, † 175; gen. sing. susteres, † 236. Ch.

Swapped, pp. struck off with a sweeping blow, 3609. Cf. A.S. *swapan*, to sweep; *swipe*, a whip. Ch.

Swelt, pt. s. S. fainted, 4268.

“Swalteryne for hete, or feyhlynese, or other cawsys. Exalo, sincopezo.” Prompt. Parv. A.S. *swelatan*, to die, perish.

Swenged. See Swinge.

Sweteliche, adv. sweetly, 1329.

Sweting, n. S. sweetheart, a term of endearment, 916, 1537, 2799, 3058.

Sweuen, n. S. a dream, 2312, 2569, 2916, &c.; — sweune, 658, 915, 2294; pl. sweuenes, † 599. Ch.

Swiche, such, 414, 544, 710, 766, 781, &c.; — swich, 869. A.S. *swicde*. Ch.

Swiftliest, sup. adv. swiftliest, 3454.

Swinge, pr. pl. they strike, 3439; pt. s. swenged, 3444; pt.pl. swollen, 3556. A.S. *swingen*, to beat.

Swipe, adv. S. quickly, 41, 266, 1078, 1129, 1256, 1303, 1824, 4843, 5214; before an adj. *swipe = very*, as in 1628, † 107; and as in † 546, † 567, † 833, where it is spelled *swith*. As *swipe* = as quickly as may be, 108, 352, 837; also *swipe*, 3155. *Swipe* upon hast, very fast, very soon, 5195. [It was by his criticisms upon this word as occurring in Havelok that Mr Singer demonstrated his singular ignorance. He interprets *swipe* to mean a sword! At this rate “a swith faire sword!” in Alisaundar, l. 883, would be tautological indeed.]

Swowe, n. S. swoon, 87. Ch.

Tabours, n. pl. 3813.

Tach, n. F. spot, blemish, disgrace, † 282. Ch.

Takes, pr. s. bestows, gives, 866; pt. s. took, delivered, gave, 4683; pp. take, 1271, 1289; put for unto, 1280.

Tale. See Telle.

Taliage, n. F. a tax, impost, 5124. O.F. *taillage*.

Talke, v. to tell, 1018, 1322, &c.

Talliche, adv. in a seemly manner, 1706. “This obsolete and unusual word, from the S. tela, bene, is preserved in the Prompt. Parv. Tally, or semely and in semely wyse. Decenter, eleganter.”—M. Cf. Welsh *telaid*, graceful. The Fr. *talle* sometimes means well proportioned.

Tamid, pt. pl. tamed, subdued, † 84.

Targe, v. to tarry, † 211, † 410; pt. s. targed, † 94. O. F. *targer*, whence *large*, which occurs at p. 210, l. 8 of this volume.

Te, put for To, 1222. Cf. forte = for to, note to l. 788.

Teied, pp. S. tied, 3226;—teied, 3232.

Telle, v. to tell, 34;—tele, 4993;—tale, 160; pr. pl. tellus, 198; pt. s. teld, 1475; told, 2009; pt. pl. telden, 1662; tolde, 1469; pp. teld, 2009; told, 1475; itold, 1493; imp. pl. telles, 1346; tellep, 4621.

Tended, pt. pl. attended, regarded, 1781; pp. tended of all, heard by all with attention, † 997; imp. pl. tend, † 7.

Tene, n. S. (1) sorrow, trouble, grief, 607, 1107, 2369, 2476, 3013, 3735, 5192;—teene, † 142, † 241, † 255; pt. tenes, 1013; also (2) teene = anger, wrath, † 94, † 806; treie and tene, vexation and anger, 2073. Ch.
Tene, v. S. to vex, 2812;—teene, †380; pt. s. tene, 2025; pp. tene, 1992, 2201; teened, †71; teenced, †345. Ch.

Tenful, adj. S. vexatious, grievous, painful, 2666, 4712;—teene-full, †282.

Tenefully, adv. grievously, 437;—teenufully, harmfully, †353.

Tent, n. intent, purpose, 1662. See Tent in Halliwell.

Tentily, adv. attentively, diligently, 2258;—tentyfli, 5124. Cf. tentyf in Ch.


Pā, pron. that, the, 765, 2458, 3059, 3122; rel. pron. who, which, 343, 2536, 4115; pl. 5274;—pe (rel. pron.) 1657, 4422; conj. that, 544, 571, 903, 1953.

Pa, put for po, then, 571. See Po. [Or else miswritten for Pān.]

Pai, they, 11, &c.;—pei, 24, &c.; pt. paim, them, 5407. See Hem.

Pan, the, acc. sing. of def. art., 91.

Pan, then, 83, 92, &c.;—panne, 100, &c.;—pen, †730.

Pan, than, 589;—pen, †319.

Parto, thereto, 808.

Pat, “when prefixed to a verb in the present tense, [sometimes] gives it a subjunctive or optative signification, as in 319, 2795, &c.”—M. Pat, those who, 3459.

Patou, that thou, 3128, 5159;—patow, 283, 914, 2787;—pawtow, 4060.

Pe, rel. pron. which, 4422; pl. pe, 1687. A.S. pe, which is often a relative pronoun, and is indeclinable.

Pede, n. S. land, country, 1658.

Peder, adv. thither, 2235;—pider, 33.

Pederward, adv. thitherward, 835.

Pæi, they. See Pæi.

Pæia, conj. S. though, 451, 689, 3342;—pæia, 919, 1017;—pæi, 1563;—pouæa, 349;—pouæh, 2847;—ææiæ, †677. Pæi ææiæ= though they, †511. Ch.

Pemperour, put for pe emperour, 212, 218, &c.; but written pe emperour, 205. The pl. pemperoures also occurs, 1612.

Pen, than, †319. See Pan.

Penchesoun = pe encheshoun, the occasion, the cause, 2624. Ch. See Encheson.

Pende = pe ende, the end, 4869, 5092. Ch.

Penke, v. S. to think, 4908; 1 p. s. pr. penke, 711; penk, 1624; 2 p. pl. pr. thinken, †2; pr. s. subj. penk, 3370; imp. pl. pinkes, 3701. Impersonal, seems, as in me pinkes, 430, 446, 622; me pinke, 839; you dure pinkes, 4727; you lef pinkes, 384. Ch.

Pennes, adv. thence, 2191;—ennes, †67. Ch

Per, adv. S. where, 1627, 3319, &c.;—bere, 216, 279, &c.

Per as, there where, 1232, 1708;—bere as, 3480.

Per a-boute, about it, 972.

Per-a-gayn, against it, 1450.

Per-mide, therewith, 5358.

Per-out, thence, 2820.

Per-tille, thereto, thereof, 2337.

Per-to-fore, before that time, until then, 3435, 2611.

Per-vnder, under it, 3034.

Per-wist, therewith, 138.

Perpe, put for pe erpe, the earth, the ground, 3895, 5014. Ch.

Perwe, through, 107. See Prou.


Pëwes, n. pl. S. manners, customs,
He was the withest man at nede,
That thurte riden on aui stede.

A few more instances may not be out of place. In Robert of Brunne's translation of the *Manuel des Pechés*, completed in 1303, we have:

He wax so mylde and so meke,
A mylde man thurt no man seke.  

MS. Harl. 1701, fol. 39.

So also, in the Romance of the Seven Sages:

He toke a chamber nere that stede,
Him thurt noight care than for his brede.


In Barbour's Bruce, according to Jamieson [p. 407] is written:

For scho wes syne the best lady,
And the fayrest, that men thurst se.
But we evidently ought to read thurt se."—M. The verb occurs even in Meso-Gothic, as, "land bauhta jah tharf" galeitan jah saihwan thata"—"I have bought land, and I need to go and see it," Luke xiv. 18; and in the past tense, "hya gatawida Daweid, than thauflia jah gredags was"—"how David did, when he needed and was hungry," Mark ii. 25.

There, through, 4219. See *brou*.  

*Poutest*, 2 p. s. pt. thoughtest, 1249;—poutes, 4066; *pt. s. pout*, 462; *pout*, 855; impersonal, me *pout*, 2295; him *pout*, 673; *pouht* him lop, 1255; hire *pouht*, 857; hire *pout*, 2908; him del *pouht*, 349.

*Pous*, pers. pron. thou, 312, 692.  

*Pouh*, *pouh*. See *beigh*.  

*Poust*, n. S. thought, 4054;—pout, 4116;— *pout* (read *pout*?), 447; *pt. pouh*es, 861, 941, 4064.  

*Pridic*, adj. S. third, 2866, 4941.  

*Pristliche*, adj. S. lit. boldly; hence, beautifully (much as our poets use bravely), *pout*, 191.

*bro*, adj. vehement, eager, 3264,
3564. Shortened from the word following.


bropes, n. pl. S. thorpes, small villages, 2141. See Halliwell.

broz, prep. S. through, 459; — purth, 216, 254, 522, 635, &c.; — *purth,* 1320, 1643; — purth, 2149; — *purth,* 655; — thorou, + 612, + 897. [In L 3799 we find *yurh,* probably miswritten for *furch,* (cf. 4219), owing to confusion with the word *your* following soon after.]

brove, n. S. time, while, a trice, 462, 622, 649, 679, &c. Ch.

brusch, n. a thrush, 820. There seems to be a distinction here. Palsgrave gives *gruue* (grive) as the French for *thrusch,* and *maulveis* (*mavis* = Sc. *mavis*) as the French for *throstle.*

burlen, Thurlnde. See *birles.*

burth, *burh, burzh,* *purth.* See *broz.*

burth-out, throughout, 1472; — burth-out, 5028; — porou-out, + 191.

Tid. See Tit.

Tide, v. S. (often *impers.*) to befall, betide, 3017;— *tyde,* 326; pr. s. subj. *tide,* 137, 607; *tyde,* 1560; pt. s. *tidle,* 198, 797, 1067, 1416, 2496, 3962; tid, 787, 4178; (followed by an acc. case) pr. s. him tides, + 651; pt. s. hem tidde, 1659, 1763, 2829; sou tidde, 1346; pp. tidde, 4918. See also Bi-tide.

Tide, n. S. time, season, 859, 4952.

Tidi, adj. timely, seasonable; hence, also, fair, brave (time), 1710; (host), 3556; (men), 4166; (earldom), 5384; — tidy (child), 160; (todings), 1339; (words), 3077; — tide (werwolf), 2496; sup. tidiest, 3909; tideget, 3556. A.S. *tidlic.* Du. *tidiig.* G. *zeitig.*

Tidili, adv. seasonably, suitably, fitly, 4454;—tidily, 5142;—tidily, + 194.

Tiding, n. tidings, news, 1478; pl. tiding, 1493, 4877; tyding, 1075, 1134, 2677; tidinges, 4942; tipinges, 250. [The use of tiding, tyding as pl. forms is worth notice.]

Tidly. See Titli.


Tille, prep. S. unto, to, 232, 662, 864, 977, 4039; — till, + 605, + 1025;—til, 412, 788, 1475. Ch.


Time, v. to happen, *in the phr.* so me wel time (so may it happen well to me, so may good betide me), 3570, 5433;—so me wel tyne, 279. A.S. *getimian,* Sw. *tinta,* Dan. *tines,* to happen. See the note in Wedgwood on the word *Beteem.* [Mr Wedgwood is of opinion that I have wrongly explained *tymen* in P. Pl. Crede, 742, and that “X *migt tymen*” = I could find it in my heart to, as in the phr. “I could teeme it,” for which see Halliwell, s. v. *Teem.* This would connect *tymen* in the *Crede* with A.S. *getimian,* to happen, not with A.S. *lymian,* to tame, compel.]

Time, v. to lose, 299, 1365, + 358, + 378; — tyne, 358, 2176; 2 p. pl. pr. tine, 3015; pp. tint, + 30; tynt, 1560. O. N. *lyyna.* [Marked as A.S. by Halliwell, but not given by Bosworth.]

Tire, v. to attire, 4478; pp. tyred, 263.

Tipedel. See Tenpedel.

Tipinges. See Tiding.
Tit, adv. quickly, soon, 1013, 1054, 3445, 3552, 4066, † 90; —
yyt, 1373, 4245; — tid, 753, 4167, 4192, 4763, † 377, † 519; — titt,
133. As tit = as soon as might be, thereupon, 328, 3550; as yyt,
238, 292. As tit as, as soon as, 552, 2921; sep. titiest, soonest.
Icel. tit, from tit, time. Sw. tid, from tid, time. Hence the word is
nearly related to Tidity. Cf. Titli, also spelt Tidly.

Titli, adv. quickly, soon, 2666; — titly, 1416, 2694, 3388; — tit-
litch, 2525; — tytely, † 7; — titlli, 1706, 2282, 2476; — tituly, 60, 2855,
457, &c.; — tidly, † 640, † 509, † 974. As titl, very soon, 2108.
[In ll. 66 and 1706 it is possible that titlly or titlly may mean
tightly, closely.]

To, adv. too, 11, 5024.

To, two, 2577. See Tvo.

To-, verbal prefix. It does not seem to have been hitherto suffi-
ciently noted, that there are, in A.S., two distinct prefixes spelt
alike. They are (1) to-, O. Sax. te-, Meso-Goth. dis-, Ger. zer-
Lat. dis-, meaning apart, asunder, in two pieces; and (2) to-, Du.
toe-, G. zu-, Meso-Goth. du-, which is merely the prep. to in composi-
tion. Examples of the first are common in Early Eng., but of the
second less so, which has led to an undue disregard of its force. Of
the examples below, only the two last, To-wave and To-yelde, belong
to the latter class; and in the Wyel. Gloss. there is but one, viz.
to-neghen = to approach. The verbs with this prefix are here collec-
ted.

To-burst, pt. s. S. burst asunder, 374. G. zerberten, O. Sax. tebr-
tan. Ch.

To-brak, pt. s. S. brake in pieces, 3237 (see Judges ix. 53); pp.
tobreke, utterly broken, 3410. G. zerbrechen. Ch.

To-clatered, pp. broken to pieces with a loud clatter, 2858. "This
reading is rendered certain by a passage in the Romance of Ferum-
bras;

Ys scheld that was wyth gold y-
batrid : & eke wyth ire
ybounde,
Sone thay had hit al to-clatrid:
the peeceselay on the grounde.
MS. Ashm. 60 β, fol. 12."—M.

I add another example.

"And on the hed he hym batrid
That hys hedd all to-clatride."
Sir Degaré, MS. Camb. Univ.
Lib. P1. ii. 38, fol. 259 b.
And see Halliwell.

Too-clef, pt. s. S. intr. broke in
half, split asunder, † 1009.

To-cleen, pt. s. S. trans. clove
asunder, 3865.

To-drawe, pp. S. drawn asunder,
1564, 2020, 2086, 2138, 3740,
4773, 5479.

To-hewe, pp. S. hewn to pieces,
3412. G. zerhauen. Ch.

To-shett, pt. s. S. brake in half,
† 1008. Lit. shot asunder; cf. the
quotation in Halliwell, "Hys fote
schett" = his foot shot aside,
slipped.

To-sprong, pt. pl. S. sprang
asunder, cranked asunder. G.
zerspringen.

To-tere, v. S. to tear in pieces,
3884; pt. s. to-tare, 3884. Ch.

To-twiyt, pt. s. S. twitched
violently, pulled up by the roots,
2097. See To-twitch in Coleridge’s
Gloss. Index.

To-wawe, v. S. move about,
toddle to and fro like a child, 19.
Wawe = wag is common; but it is
also found in the exact sense used
here.

"Thanne is the child quic anon :
of strenge the naveth hit nogy
Enes for to wawe: or hit beo
furthe i-brozt;

The prefix to- has here nearly the force of the G. zu- in zuwanken. The compound verb is very rare, but it is the same, I believe, as occurs in a transitive sense in the following—"weder biß fager ... bocx woleen to-wegen;" i. e. "the weather is fair, the clouds are removed." Phainix, pt. III.(1.2); in Codex Exoniensis, ed. Thorpe. Cf. Sc. "wauchle. to move from side to side in walking, like a young child;" Jamieson. Cf. G. zuwanken, zugeben, A. S. To-gewegan, to carry to.

To-ȝelde, pt. s. yielded to; vp to-ȝelde = yield up to, with the to repeated; 3924. Cf. G. zugeben, to grant, as showing the force of the prefix to-.

To-fore, prep. S. before, 2091; also adv. before (of time), 142, 793, 925, 2446, &c.; (of place), 2390; to-for, 2886; to-fore, † 46, † 930. Ch.

To-gaderes, adv. S. together, 699; to-geder, 909; to-gidere, 1011.

Tokene, pr. s. betokens, 2937.

Tol, n. tool; egge-tol = edged tool, weapon, 3755.


Tumbled, pt. s. tumbled, 2776, 3566. See Tumbel.

Ton, n. pl. toes, † 194. Ch.

Too-clef. See the word preceding To-clewed.

Top over tail, head over heels, 2776. "A proverbial phrase, used also in Lyndsay, which I believe is not yet obsolete."—M. It occurs in Barbour's Brus, ed. Jamieson, v. 755. Halliwell gives another instance.

Tor, adj. difficult, 1428, 5143; — toor, 5066. "From the Su-G. and Isl. tor, difficult. This term, spelled fore and teir, occurs also in the three Romances of Sir Gawaine, in the Houlate, pt. 2. st. 9, and in Rauf Coiltzeir, ap. Laing, st. 37;" — M. See Gawayne and Grene Kniz', ed. Morris, 165, 719.

To-rižtes, 3066, &c. See Rižtes.

Touche, v. F. to touch upon, talk, treat of, 5033; 1 p. s. pt. touched, 4108; pt. s. touched, 4991; pt. pl. touched, 4993; pt. s. (= belonged to), 5384; pres. part. touchend, 1383.

Tour, n. F. a tower, 2015. Ch.

Tow, used for þou (thout), after þat preceding, 4478. Cf. Seidestow, &c.

To-ward, adv. S. forward, forthcoming, ready at hand, 1443; — toward, 1101. Cf. Toward in Nares.

To-henene-ward, towards heaven, 102.

Trattes, n. pl. old women, spoken contemptuously, 4769. "See Jamieson's notes on this word, and Tyrwhitt on Chaucer. v. 7164. The most obvious etymon is Teut. trof, a woman, an old woman, a witch. See Wachter, in v."—M. See also Trof in Halliwell; and cf. "An aged trof and tough did marie with a lad."

Of a contrarie mariage, by G. Turberville, ab. a.d. 1567.

Trauaile, n. F. labour, 1560; — trauayle, 358, 2176; — trauayle, 299; pt. traunayles, 2666, 4712.

Traysted, pp. F. deceived, betrayed, 2075, 4769. "See Jamieson, in v. Betrayss, and Skinner. From the latter Chatterton borrowed the word, therefore Bryant might have saved himself the trouble of quoting passages from the present poem to prove the authenticity of the phan-
tom Rowley."—M. Cf. O. F. traistre, a traitor.

Treie, n. S. vexation, 2073. See the note.

Trestes, 2 p. s. pr. trustest, 970.

Trewe, adj. S. true; leue me for trewe = believe me to be true, 1562; —trew, 596.

Triacle, n. treacle, i.e. an antidote against poisons and diseases, † 198. See Treacle in Prompt. Parv., and Way's note. Ch.

Trie, adj. F. lit. tried, proved; hence choice, excellent, noble; (tree), 761; (attire), 1721, 4542; (lords), 1289; (order), 4465; (towers), † 16; (town), † 157; (treacle). † 198; (places), † 333; (folk), † 345; —tri (tree), 753, 789; —trye (game), 357; sup. triest, 1443. "The same word occurs in the Romance of Richard Coer de Lion, l. 6450, 'with fyn sylwyr and gold ful troye'; in the Romance of Octavian, l. 1146, 'of Sarsons stout and trye'; in Chaucer's Cant. T. 'with suger that is trie'; and in the poems of Friar Michael Kyldare, MS. Harl. 913, which contain the earliest instances of it I have yet met with. It is undoubtedly an abbreviation of the pp. tried, as shown by the various readings of the Wyclifite texts of the Bible, Exod. c. xvi. and Lev. c. ii., where is the expression trie or tried flour." — M. So also trieste, tryest, and tryest are various readings for triedest in P. Pl. A. i. 126, q. v.

Trieliche, adv. choicely, excellently (always joined with a-tired), 4819; — triliche, 1228; — tryli, 3195; — tripiche, 4851.

Trist, imp. s. S. trust thou, † 489.

Tristy, adj. trusty, 596, 1228, 2015, † 329, † 952.

Tried, pt. s. 3556, in "& tried him to a tidi ost." Explained by Sir F. Madden to mean "drew, joined." But I believe that him to is put for to him, (a not uncommon usage. cf. ll. 652, 864, &c.), and then tried to him = chose out for himself, picked out the best men he could find, which is the drift of the passage. Cotgrave gives "Trier, to pick, chuse, eull out from among others;" which further explains why the word trie bears the sense of choice. See Trie.

Trompes, n. pl. trumpets, 3358; —trumpes, 3813.

Trowe, v. S. to believe, trow, hold for a truth, 4840; 1 p. s. pr. trowe, 540, 1031, 1995; trow, 299; pt. s. trowed, 1018; trowed, 1450; pt. pl. trowed, † 919; imp. s. trowe, 4363; imp. pl. trowe, 2112. Ch. [In l. 1480 perhaps we should read myse-trowe as one word; but l. 141 renders this doubtful.]


Trustili, adv. S. courageously, 3904.

Tumbel, pr. s. subj. tumble, 3388. See Tumbled.

Tunnes, n. pl. S. casks, 2743.

Tvo, two, 1688, 1698, 1777, 2162, &c.; —to, 2877.

Tweie, two, 2008, 2147; —tweine, 2507; —twyne, 512, 929, 1528. [The distinction between this word and two is that tweie is used after the personal pronouns vs. hem, pei, &c.; whilst two precedes a noun.]

Twentipe, twentieth, 5354.

Twiges, adv. twice, 3721.

Twynne, v. S. to part, 1572. Ch.


Uch, each, every, 776, 884, 1488; —uche, 5000; —vch a, 511.

Venge, v. F. to avenge, 5197; cf. avenged, pp., † 281.

Venorye, n. F. beasts of the chase, game, 1685.
Verali, adv. verily, 5197; — veraly, 639.

Vitayles, n. pl. F. victuals, 1121.


[The prefix is the A.S. wmb-, Old Saxon umbr-, G. um-, Du. Dan. and Sw. om-, Gk. omph-]

Uncchante, pr. s. ♯ 1172. This is surely miswritten for unclamante = unclamped, unfastened, from A.S. clam, a clamp. The only difference between m and in, in the handwriting of the MS., would consist in there being a dot over the first of the three downstrokes. The copyist may have been thinking of unchaunte = unchained.

Vndede, pl. s. undid, unfastened, 4846; pp. vndoe, 2078.

Vnder-fonge, v. S. to take, receive, 5259.

Vndersto (miswritten for vnder- ston), pr. pl. they understand, 5533; pl. s. vnderstod, 577; pp. vnderston, 5262.

Vnglad, adj. S. joyless, 2106.

Ungome, v. S. to unman, to drive the men away from, ♯ 294. [The meaning is clear, but I know of no other instance of the word.] Cf. Gone.


Unkinde, adj. S. unnatural, ♯ 34.

Ch.

Unkouthe, adj. unknown, un- familiar, strange, ♯ 48; — unkounth, unknown, not understood, ♯ 683.

Ch.

Unnepe, adv. S. scarcely, 132.

Ch.

Vn-tetche, n. disgraceful action, 509. Tetche is another form of Tach. q. v. The O.F. tache means a quality or disposition, either good or bad; so in the Prompt. Parv. "Tethe, or manner of condyeone, Mos, condicio." Hence en-tetche means an evil habit, or disgraceful act. At the same time, as the word was most commonly used in a bad sense, we find tach used for a blenish. See tache, tacher, teche, in Roq.; taches in P. Pl.; tache in Halliwell and Cotgrave.

Vntille, prep. unto, 2998.

Vntydi, n. pl. mean, poor, 1455. Cf. Tidi.

Unwele, adj. S. wicked, ♯ 513.

Well = good. adj. is given in Col- ridge's Gloss. Index.

Vn-woundet, pp. unwounded, 1280.


Vp happe, perhaps, 2722.

Vp-keuerede, pt. s. recovered, rose again, 2759.


Wahan, Wan, Wanne. See Whan.

Waie, miswritten for weie, ♯ 530. See Wei.

Waite, v. F. (1) intr. to watch, look about, spy about, 1821, ♯ 760; — waitye, 1023; pl. s. waited, 2729; waited him, 1230; waited out, 2982; waited, 3935; waited aboute, 658; weited, 3030; pt. pl. waiteden out, 3300; weyt-eden out, 5018; waited aboure, 2231; prez. part. waitend out, 2982; waitende, 3713; weyt-ende to, 779. (2) trans. to be on the look-out for, watch for, seek after, pr. s. waites him = seeks out
for himself, † 808; inf. whayte, 1885; waiete, 4051; wayte, 148. [In the latter sense it generally has a double accusative.] Cf. A.-waiete. O.F. waiet, guiter. See Wayt in Wedgwood; and cf. "Waytyng or dorne hame, waytyn to harme. Insidior." Prompt. Parv.


Walken, v. S. to walk, go, 2129; pres. pt. walkande, 2127.


Walt, Walte. See Welde.


Wan, Wanne (when). See Whan. 

Wan (pt. s. won). See Winne.

War, adv. where, 3832. See Whar.

War, adj. S. aware, 1201, 1238, 1769, 3594, 3635, 3827; — whar, 3382.

Warchet. See Waryshe.

-Ward; implying direction. See Cheping-ward, To-ward.

Ward, n. F. guard, keeping, 1370, 2202; —warde, 376, 961. Ch.


Wardeyn, n. F. commander, 1104.

Ware, pt. pl. = were, 420.

Warfoffe, adv. S. wherefore, 2027; —werefore, 1081.


Warestured, pp. furnished, provided, 1121. O.F. warrestore, provisions; Roq. Cf. Warestore in Ch.


Was, used for had, 538. "This is still provincial." —M.

Waschen, pp. washed, 5070; — whasche, 2997.

Wast, in phr. in wast = in waste, i.e. in vain, 703, 718, 802, 1660, &c.

Wat, put for What, 2829, 4246. Wat so, whatsoever, 607.


Wawe, n. S. wall, 19. So in Sir F. Madden's edition; but see Towaive, and the note on this line.

Wax, Waxen. See Wexe.

Waywarde, adj. S. (used as sb.) wayward, perverse, averse, 3955.

Wayned, pt. pl. 2386. Wayned from = got away from, departed. "The original meaning seems to be that of gaining, getting. In some O.E. works wayne is used like our word get."

Than past up the proude quene in- to preve chambre, Waynes out at wyndow, and waytes aboute.

Alexander, ed. Stevenson, 914."

Quoted by Morris, Gloss. to Allit. Poems. The context shews that waynes out in this quotation = puts out her head. See also P. Pl. A. vi. 92, where for wyne vp, MSS. of B-type have wyne vp. Cf.
Winne. [Obs. This word is sometimes confused with wayne, O.F. guesser.]

Wedel, n. S. clothes, armour, 585, 3535; pl. wedes, 1932, 2563, 3087. Ch.

Weder, n. S. weather, 2440; pl. wederes, 5216. Ch.

Wei, n. S. a way, road, 1578;—weie, 1732;—wey, 205, 1781;—weye, 1019; pl. weies, 2131, 2150; weyes, 1224; weijes, 2207, 3507, 4677. In a mile weie = in a short space, i.e. in a short time, 1578.


Weilawey, interj. S. alas! 935. A.S. wa, la wa = wo, lo! wo! whence we la wey, of which welleay is an unmeaning corruption.

Weited, Weytende. See Waite.

Weiʒ, n. S. a man, 4466;—weig, 281, 745, 790, 793, &c.;—weie, ↑777;—weig, ↑1184;—waie, ↑530;—whiʒ, 4463;—wįh, 565, 724, 2021, 2415; pl. weies, ↑164, ↑653; whiʒes, 1231, 3456; wįhes, 3364; wies, 205; wijes, 239, 2036, 2521; wijhes, 1932; wįhes, 2709; wijes, 3652. A.S. wiga, warrior, from wij, war.

Weijes, n. S. wise, manner, 5526. A better spelling is Wice, q. v.

Wel, adv. S. very; thus, wel old, very old, 4; wel long, very long, 936; wel greet, very great, 1543; wel sore, very sorely, 1552; wel wo, very woulf, 1642; wel god sped, very good pace, 1846. Wel is, it is a good thing for (the opposite of wo is), 3303.

Welde, v. S. to wield, have power over; hence, to possess, enjoy, have. 2946, 5157, ↑206;—weld, 76, 135, 717, 1356, 1385, 1453, 2017, 2253, 2959, 4741; 1 p. s. pr. weld, 282, 4000; pr. s. wendes, 712, 1651, 1873, 3313, 3752, 3753, 3832, 4466; wendes his he, enjoys his health, 1375, 1377; wendes a wrong, enjoys a possession wrongfully, ↑57; pt. s. walt, 144, 2990, 3887, 4730; walt, ↑450; welt 142, 230, 3710, 4835; welte, 3650; 2 p. pl. pt. walt, 3691; pp. welt, 856. [It often has little more force than simply to have.] Cf. Wycl. Gloss.

Wele, n. S. wealth, 1325, 3658, 4073, 5046, 5054. [In phr. "worship and wele," except in 4073.] Ch.

Wem, n. S. blemish, injury, 2460. Ch.

Wen. See Whan.

Wende, v. S. to go, 320, 329, 425, 2089;—wend, 771, ↑727;—wen[d], 5155; wende of, to depart, 1663; 1 p. s. pr. wende, 1555; 2 p. s. pr. wendest, 1555; pr. s. wendes, 232, 1640, 1997; wendes of, departs from, 5537; wendeʒ, 408; pt. s. went, 1839, 2069; wende, 259; pt. pl. went, 4201; imp. pt. wendeʒ, 3335; pres. pt. wending, 1521. Phrase: he went = be gone to, as in is went, 701, 2064; was went, 15, 28, 376, 1984, 2109; were went, 208, 5409; be went, 2071. We also find was gon, 1850; and hence went, 1853.

Wene, v. S. to ween, think, expect, suppose, 554, 706, 715; 1 p. s. pr. wene, 931; 2 p. s. pr. wenen-tow = weneest thou, 1585; pr. s. wenef, 3116; 2 p. pl. pr. wene, 4205; pt. s. wende, 650, 687, 731, 1853, 1943; went, 229, 671, 1488, 1773, 1982, ↑759; wen[d], 261; pt. pl. went, 2705. Ch.

Wenne, 4263. See Winne.

Wepe, v. S. to weep, 310; pt. s. wepte, 35; wept, 45; wep, 50; wepud, 2914; part. pres. wepend, 1668; wepande, 2357, 2419. Ch.
Glossarial Index.

Wer, n. doubt, perplexity, 3513.

"Tyrwhitt considers this word, and, apparently, with reason, to be the Fr. guerre. See Gloss. to Chaucer, and Jamieson's examples, in v."—M. Perhaps it may be better to say, rather, that guerre is obviously from a Teutonic source, Cf. Du. werre, contention (Kilian); G. weire, confused; gewirre, confusion. In fact, the word occurs in O. Saxon. "The thit guier frumid, he who makes a sedition, or disturbance." Helianed, ed. Schmel-ler, p. 148, l. 1. Cf. Werre.

Wer, adv. where, 3030; — were, 222, 4839.

Werche, v. to work, 650; — wirche, 1173, 1372, 2244, 2323, 3925, 4790; — wirch, 517; — wirchen, 468, 412; — worche, 257, 518, 569; pr. s. werches, 1207; wireches, 1176; worehep, 2579; imp. s. wirche, 667. And see Wrozt.

Werder, adj. 3185. Sir F. Madden suggests "wild," but doubtfully. By a mere guess, I suggest werder-bestes = harmful beasts, as if from werder, a harmer, from the A.S. wyrdan, to harm, which is used in the Ormlun in the forms weordenn and weerdenn. The word is very plain in the MS., or we might conjecture it to be an error for woerdenn = wonderful, as in ll. 1873, 2786.

Werfore, wherefore, 1081.


Werre, n. S. war, 1083, 2349, 2613, 2643; — wer, 2625.

Werre, v. S. to war, 1070, 1077, 1173; pp. werred, 3997.


Wery, adj. S. weary, 2236; wo wery, weary with woe, 703. See the note.

Weneus, pr. s. trans. sways, causes to waver, makes to vacillate, causes to change from hope to fear and from fear to hope, keeps in agitation. 922; infin. intr. weue, waver or hover in the air, 4365. [In the latter case, Sir F. Madden calls it the pp., but we may translate it, "the ashes of her body (shall) waver in the wind." The A.S. verb is waefian, to waver. Cf. G. wichten, (intr.) to float about.]

Weued, pt. s. raised, lifted, 2978. [The word implies a swaying or quivering motion in the thing lifted; see the preceding word. Cf. "weiden up pa castles gate" = weighed up the castle-gate: Layamon, iii. 373; and see Wyenye in Prompt. Parv. In P. Pl. A. vi. 92, for To wyne vp be wikel yat two MSS. have To weue out be wyket.]

Wexe, v. S. to grow, become, 124; — wex, 503, 737, 668; pr. s. subj. wex, 566; pt. s. wax, 630, 785, 828, 1035, 1204, 1911, 2053, 2222, 4095; waxen, 2931; pp. wox, 109, 798; wexen, 1776; woxen, 514. Ch.

Whayte. See Waite.

Wham, pron. S. whom, 314, 441, 769, 1275, 4155. [In l. 4340 it is spelt whan, unless we supply hire, which is preferable.]

Whan, pt. s. procured, 2852. See Winn.

Whan, adv. when, 305, 308, 744, &c.; — whanne, 80, 145, &c.; — wann, 11, 584, 1262; — wan, 2484, 4026; — won, 2821; — wahan, (read whan ?), 1572.

Whar, adv. where, 394; — war, 3532. Wharbi, why, 2256.

Whar, adj. aware, 3382. See War.

Whas, pron. whose, 1441.

Whas, put for Was, 3912.

Whasche, pp. washed, 2997. See Wasehen.
What = what if, 549.
What rink so, whatsoever man, 1193.
What, put for Wot, knows, 1172. See Wite.
Whatow, put for What pow, what thou, 4066.
Whedir, Whederward. See Whider.
Whennes, adv. whence, 478, 3122.
Where, put for Were, 261, 502, 2750.
Where, adv. whether, 2946; — wther, 799. Ch.
Where as, where that, 1782.
Whiche, used in the sense what sort of, 1777, 2703, 3118. See Wich.
Whider, adv. whither, 104, 701, 948, 2659; — whedir, 2909. Whider sometimes has the sense of where, as in 2456.
Whiderward, adv. whither, in what direction, 105, 223, 2167; — whederward, 2827. Whiderward as, wherever, 2830.
While, n. S. while, time, 15, 574; — wile, 79, 457; — wil, 958.
While, adv. whilst, 2537; — wile, 537; — whilst, 129; — wil, 1492, 2277, 5228, 5536. Ch.
Whiles, n. pl. S. wiles, 862.
Whilum, adv. sometimes, at times, 1785; — whilom, in former times, formerly, 2546. [In + 521 whilome is a gloss for ilome, q. v.] As wiles is the gen. sing. of A.S. wille, so whilum is the dat. plural. Ch.
White, v. See Wite (to blame).
Whi3, n. See Weij.
Whi3t, n. See Wi3t.

Wic. See Wicke.
Wicchecraft, n. S. witchcraft, 118, 120, 4427; — wichecraf, 4044.
Wich, pron. acc. sing. what, 3981; acc. pl. masc. whom, 4093, 4161. Wiche a = what sort of, 3354; wiche an = what sort of a (referring to the hart only, and we must suppose wiche repeated before an hind), 2820.
Wicke, adj. wicked, evil, bad, 4599; — wicke, 4652; — wicked (applied to ways), 3507. Ch.
Wies3, Wijes. See Wei3.
Wikkedly, adv. S. cruelly, dangerously, 1218.
Wil, Wile, Wille. See While.
Wilfully, adv. S. willingly, with good will, readily, heartily, 1782, 3300, 3322, 4733; — wilsfully, 590. Ch.
William, gen. case, 1221, 1372.
Wilne, v. S. to wish for, desire, 719, 3563, 4597, 4736; — willne, 3983, 3985; 1 p. s. pr. wilne,
Glossarial Index.

319

4732; 2 p. pl. pr. wilne, 3343; pr. s. wilnes, 265, 301, 622; pr. pl. wilhen after, 59; 1 p. s. pl. wilned, 4132; pt. s. wilned, 3925, 4590; imp. s. wilne, 4734; pp. wilned, 2314. Ch.

Wilsum. See Wilfully.

Wilsfuly. See Wilfully.

Winne, v. S. to win, acquire, come (used much as we use get colloquially); winne in sīt = get in sight, come in sight, 94; winne hom = get home, 2457; winne him awei = get him away, 3623; winne he = get hold of thee, 4263; winne nere him, get near him, 3889; 1 p. s. pl. wan, 2026; pt. s. wan (got), 190, 1920, 2500; (came), 2498; wanne, 3973; whan, 2852; wan in (came in), 4237; wan bi (went by), 417; wan vp (got up), 3283; pt. pl. wonne, 1224, 2242; pp. wonne, 82, 1117.


Wirdernesse, probably an error for wildernesse, 3311.

Wise, n. S. way, manner, 485, 490, &c.; —wie, 4380. Ch.

Wisli, adv. S. truly, verily, 2947, 3118; —wisly, 661; —wisi, 4615; —wissel, 673, 721; wislieh, 754. Ch.

Wisse, v. tr. S. to make to know, to teach, instruct, shew, tell, 1356, 1666, 2110, 3065; (to protect), 806; —wissen, 640; pr. s. subj. wisse, 1804; pt. s. wissed, 2207, 2716, 2727; wist, 172; pt. pl. wissed, 5445; imp. s. wisses, 4004. P. Pl.

Wisse; phr. i wot wel to wisse, I know for certain, 3367. Here wisse seems to be an adj. (A.S. wiss, Old S. wiss, certain). Cf. l. 4114.

Wit-oute, prep. without, 2573.

Wite, v. S. to blame, 458, 530, 4705, 972; —white, 304; 1 p. s. pr. wite, 900; pp. wited, 519; imp. pl. witep, 2069; wite, 4335, 4600, 5525. Ch.

Wite, v. to keep, guard, preserve, 257; 2 p. s. pr. subj. 302; pt. s. wited, 176; imp. pl. witep, 3008. See Gloss to Havelok and Laçanun.

Wite, v. S. to know, 542, 560, 1455, 2081, 2733, &c.; 1 p. s. pr. wot, 105, 239, 316, 478, 697, &c.; wott, 754; 2 p. s. pr. wost, 4065; wostou (= wost pou), 2274; pr. s. wot, 314, 1571; what, 1172; 2 p. pl. pr. witen, 4328; 2 p. s. pr. subj. wite, 281; pr. subj. wite, 937; pt. s. wist, 40, 375, 690, 951, 1118, 334, &c.; wiste, 115, 530, 836; pt. pl. wisten, 2195, 5233; 372; wist, 1663; imp. s. wite, 38; white, 1854; witow (= wite pou) 68, 105, 300, &c.; wittow, 375, 752; wittou, 3178; imp. pl. witep, 4351. Lete wite, 2171. Do vs to wite, 1459. Ch.


Wip, prep. with (used in the sense of by), 1060, 1367, 1192; —wist, 2177; wipth, 163; cf. therwist in l. 138. Observe ll. 411, 524.


Withlich. See Wi(EXITLY.

Wip-oute, prep. besides, 1291.

With-sede, pt. s. gainsaid, contradicted, opposed, 3330. Ch.

Wip-patow, on condition that thou, 3161.

Wiþli. See Wi.EXITLY.

Wity. See Wittily.

Witte, n. S. senses, reason, understanding, 1204, 1453, &c.; —witt, 36, 142; pl. wites, 468. Ch.
Witten, _pt. pl._ imputed it to be, ascribed it as being, 3162. [placed under Wite, to know, by Sir F. Madden, but may it not be from A.S. _witan_, which has the sense to ascribe (honor) as well as to impute (blame)? If so, it may be connected with A.S. _wilman_, a derived form of the same _witan_. _cf._ "Witton" or retton." Imputo." Prompt. Parv.

Wittily, _adv._ S. wisely, prudently, sagaciously, 3364; — Wittili, 4112; — willy, 259, 1235.


Wine, _n._ S. wife, 242; _dat._ wine, 2946.

Wiȝ, Wiȝes, Wiȝhes. _See Weȝ._

Wiȝt, Wiȝth, _prep._ _See Wip._

Wiȝt, _n._ S. a wight, person, 407, 685, 758; — wiȝth, 758; — wiȝt, 4037; — wight, _† 590_; _pl._ wightes, _† 598_. Ch.

Wiȝt, _adj._ nimble, active, agile, brave, 2877, 3349; — wight, 3293; — wyght, _† 54_; _comp._ wiȝtere, 3441; wiȝttere, 3576. Sw. _vig._ _See Prompt._ Parv. and Ch.

Wiȝtly, _adv._ nimbly, actively, quickly, bravely, 92, 140, 480, 669, 791, &c.; — wiȝthli, 135, 265, 1801, 4188; — wiȝtliche, 65, 310, 1195; — wiȝtly, _† 3_; — withlich, _† 326_; — wiȝti (or wiȝtli), 1695; — wiȝthli, 3612; — wiȝthli, 3581; — wiȝthli, 3610. [The spelling wiȝt in the former edition (in 1. 1861) is a misprint for wiȝthli.]

Wlonke, _adj._ S. gay, proud, elate, grand (spoken of mirth), 1634; (of a den), 80; (of wits), 468. [In the two latter places it is written wolcnk. The A.S. is _wlonc_, _wlan_; the Old Saxon is _aulanc_, arrogant, proud.]

Wo, _n._ S. woe, sorrow; _spelt_ wogh, 514; wou, 1453. Him was wo, 1167. Wo is me. 1642.

Wod, _adj._ S. mad, 36, 554, 715, 1453, 1770, &c. Ch.

Wodly, _adv._ S. madly, 550; — wodi, 3853, 4026. Ch.

Wol, _1 p._ s. _pr._ I will, 486, 533, 607, 906, &c.; _2 p._ s. _wolt_ (will), 324, 4263; _3 p._ s. _wol_, 326, 452, 5126; _wol sche_ = is she willing, 4203; _1 p._ _pl._ _pr._ _wol_, 2260; _2 p._ _pl._ _wol_, 4004; _1 p._ _s._ _pl._ _wold_, 457, 1558; _pt._ _s._ _wold_, 529, &c.; _pt._ _pl._ _wold_, 5185. The form _wil_ also occurs, as in 1568. [Schat is more often used than _wol_. Ne _wil_ is contracted into _nel_, and _ne wold_ into _nold_.]

Wold, _n._ S. power, possession, 4429. A.S. _wald_. G. _gewalt._

Wolnk. _See Wlonke._

Won, _n._ S. quantity, _† 546_. Ch. The A.S. is _wiȝm_, what is acquired, a winning; in Ladamon are the pl. forms _wiȝne_ and _wiȝnen_, possessions.

Won, _n._ S. any dwelling-place; _hence_, a town, a country, a place, _† 164, _† 237, _† 337_; — wonne, _† 598_, _† 622_. Cf. A.S. _waen_ ( _wDN_), a dwelling-place.


Wonden, _pp._ wounded, 1377. Ch.

Wonder, _adj._ S. wonderful, strange, 1873, 2786. Ch.

Wonder, _adv._ wonderfully, 1895.

Wonderli, _adv._ wonderfully, surprisingly, 1214, 1668, 2535; — wonderlich, 345; wonderly, 3682.

Wonne. _See Winne_, and _Won_.

Wonye, _v._ S. to dwell, 3312; _pr._ s. _wonep_, 4471; _pt._ s. _woned_, 4, 1492; _pp._ woned, 3311. A.S. _wenian_. Ch.
Glossarial Index. 321

Woode, adj. S. mad, † 914. See Wod.
Worch, Worche. See Werche.
Worship, n. S. worship, honour, 551, 4000; —worchepe, 497, 515; —worship, 618; —worchip, 1324, 3343.
Worshipful, adv. S. honourably, 5157.
Word, possibly an error for wishly, 883. See the note.
Wore, written for Were, 2370, 2485.
Wordi, Worliche. See Worliche.
Worshippe, adj. S. worthy, honoured, dear, 2792, 2795; contracted to worp (= A.S. wurn), 2498, 2522, 2990.
Worliche, adj. S. worthy, dear, 1814; —worthlieh, † 596; wortlych, † 1034; worpliche, 1642; worpili, 2756; worliche, 2700; worli, 138.
Worpli, adv. S. worthily, honourably, 673, 3202.
Worpe, v. S. to be, to become, 327, 3081; 3 p. s. imp. worpe, 2567; pr. s. worp (with future signification, will become, will be), 2534, 2667, 2947, 3341; (used as an auxiliary verb, will be), 1673, 4181, 4253; pl. worp, 2291. Wo worp me, wo be to me, 4118. Late me worp, let me be, let me alone, 2355, 3597; lete hym worthe, † 1186. A.S. weor&an. G. warden. Mesoe-Goth. waithan.
Wrugst, written for Wrougt, 5182.
Wot, Wost, Wostou. See Wite.
Wox. See Weox. [In l. † 337 vox should rather have been war.]
Wôgh. See Wo.
Wraped, 1 p. s. pt. made angry, 981.
Wreche, v. S. to revenge, avenge, wreak vengeance, † 896; —wrek, 1111, 3335; pp. wrought, 5431; wrought, † 76. Ch.
Wrong, adj. false, 706.
Wronger, comp. adv. more wrongly, 1176.
Wropli, adv. S. angrily, wrathfully, 3683, 3738; —wrophe, 2074.
Wrougt, 1 p. s. pt. I wrought, did, 3694; —wrouth, 725; pl. wroughten, 3873; wrought, 1571; pp. wrought, † 76; wruht, 1503. Cf. Werche.
Wus, n. S. ooze, juice, † 712, † 813. A.S. wùs.

[For past participles beginning with I- or Y-, see below, and also under I-] Y-armed, armed, † 230.
Y-charged, loaded, 182.
Y-clepud, called, 121. Ch.
Y-gladden, gladdened, 850.
Y-tried, selected, choice, 1233. F. trier, to pick, select.
Yeeme. See 3eme.
Yern, n. iron, † 1119, † 1133. Cf. Iren.
Y-fere, together, 2267. See I-fere.
Yie, n. S. eye, † 277, † 451; pl. yien, † 182. See Eïen.
Y-now, enough, 836, † 8, † 265. See I-now.


3 in these poems is equivalent to *y* at the beginning of a word, as in *3ate*; to *gh in nyt, burw3*; in *she* it seems to be a *guttural*; cf. hue. But it is also found (perhaps by mistake) in place of *p* in the words *3anked, 3out, 3ourh*.

3a, *adv.* S. yea, 268, 326, 923, 1380, 2255, 2555, 3245, 3723, 4728, 4742, 5367, 5432; —3e, 2275, 3403. *See* 3is.

3af. *See* 3ene.


3ald, 3alde. *See* 3elden.

3anked, *pt. s.* thanked, 642.

3are, *adj.* S. quick, nimble, ready, 895, 1963, 3265, &c.; *sup.* rarest, 2729.

3ate, *n.* S. gate, 3757; *pl.* gates, 3267, 3649, † 304. *Ch.*

3e. *See* 3a, 3is. *Also, see* 3ou.

3ede, *pt. s.* went, 1767; *pt. pl.* 1429, 2109, 2238; 3eele, † 304. *Ch.*

3ef, if, 1677. *See* 3if.

3eft, *n.* S. a gift, 3664; *pl.* 3iftes, 1061, 5357. *Ch.*

3elden, v. to yield, requite, 3019; 3eld, 321, 601, 3941; 3eld, 319, 1547; *pr.* s. 3eldes, 234; *pt.* s. 3alde, 3661; 3ald, 1256; *pl.* 3olde, 3708; 3oulden, † 304; *imp.* s. 3eld, 1252, 3917; 3 p. s. imp. 3elde, 4711. *Ch.*

3eme, v. S. to take care of, to take charge of, rule, provide for, 91, 2734, 3249, † 318, † 365, † 439; ye3eme, † 43; *pr.* s. 3emes, 2790; *pt.* s. 3emed, 2806; *pt. pl.* 3emed, 3267, 3320. *Ch.*


3erld, *n.* S. wand, rod (yard), † 481.

3ere, *n. pl.* years, 1040; — 3er, 5369; —3eres, 1057. *P. Pl.*

3erne, *v.* S. to yearn for, wish for, 58, 1633, 4730; *pt. s.* 3erned, 782.

3erne, *adv.* eagerly, quickly, soon, fast, 1893, 2027, 2197, &c.; al so 3ern (very soon), 2043. *P. Pl.*

3er-while, *adv.* erewhile, a short time ago, 1460, 3104.

3ete, *adv.* yet, 2274; —3it, 186, 577, 609; —3ut, 515, 800, 993; —3utte, 1935.

3eue, *v.* S. to give, 1110; 3iuen, 2963; 3if, 5071; 3 p. imp. s. 3if, 258, 876, 5536; *pt. s.* 3ai, 5381; *pp.* 3euen, 2857; 3eue, 1471, 5355; 3iue, 2254. *Ch.*

3he, she, 141, 172, 1983. *Cf.* Hue.

3if, if, 147, 172, 324, &c.; —3ef, 1677. But 3if (except), 472.

3is, yes, 697, 1567, 2260, 3184, 3490, 4731, 4746, 5140. *See* 3a. [There is certainly a distinction between 3a (3e) and 3is. 3a = I admit that, granted that, that’s true, or else it simply answers a simple question; but 3is is an affirmative of great force = yes, I swear it, by all means, and is often followed by i-wisse, certes, bi marie, bi erist, or it answers a question involving a negative. *See* Marsh, Lectures, 1st Series, p. 579.]

3ister-nene (= 3istern-eue), yester- eve, yesterday evening, 2160.

3it. *See* 3ete.

3olde. *See* 3elden.

3omen, *n. pl.* yeomen, 3649.

Note. Dr Stratmann (in his Dictionary of Old English) cites examples from the poem of "William of Palerne" thus: "hel, a hill. Will. Gloss. 229." The numbers merely refer to the page of the glossary in which the word is found, not to the pages or lines of the poem. The references in the glossary to the edition by Sir F. Madden are to the pages of the book, and the following list is given, in order to show with what line each page of his book begins. Most of his pages contain 28 lines, but page 1 contains only 16; page 16 has 24 lines; p. 131 has 27 lines; p. 170 has 26 lines; p. 177 has 27 lines; p. 196 has 27 lines; and p. 199 has 17 lines, being the last page of the text.

To find with what line any one of the succeeding pages begins, we must multiply the number of the page by 28, subtracting 43 for pp. 15—131; subtracting 44 for pp. 132—170; subtracting 46 for pp. 171—177; and subtracting 47 for pp. 178—196. Thus p. 196 begins with line $196 \times 28 - 47 = 5441$. Page 197 begins with l. 5468; p. 198 with l. 5496; and p. 199 with l. 5524.
INDEX OF NAMES TO "WILLIAM OF PALERNE."

[In this Index, the references under words in large capitals are to the pages of the book; otherwise, the references are to the lines.]

Abelot, 363.
Acelone, l. 42 on p. 2; — Achilles, 4775.
Akarin, 364.
Alisaundrine, daughter of the duke of Lombardy, p. 28; advises and assists Melior, pp. 28, 29; causes William to dream, p. 30; brings Melior to find William, pp. 34—41; aids the lovers to escape, pp. 59—62; excuses them to the emperor, p. 69; meets Melior again, p. 156; is betrothed to Braundnis, p. 159; is married, p. 160.
Almauns, Germans of Saxony, 1165.
Alphouns (The Werwolf), steals William away, p. 3; leaves William in the den, p. 7; sees William adopted by the cowherd's wife, p. 9; his father was king of Spain, p. 10; he is made a werwolf by his stepmother, p. 10; finds that William and Melior are dressed up in bear-skins, and guards them, and provides them with food, pp. 65—67; saves them from the hounds, p. 75; brings them to Benevento, p. 75; saves their lives by stealing the provost's son, pp. 80—83; kills a hart and a hind for them, p. 86; brings them to Reggio, p. 90; helps them over the Straits, pp. 91—94; is seen by the queen of Palermo, p. 113; salutes the king of Spain, p. 129; threatens his stepmother, pp. 139, 140; is disenchanted, p. 142; is embraced by William, p. 144; he falls in love with Florence, p. 144; tells William's history, pp. 147—150; is betrothed to Florence, p. 151; is married, p. 160; is made king of Spain, p. 167; meets William for the last time, p. 168; swears friendship to William once more, p. 172.
Apulia. See Poyle.
Bonuent, Benevento, 2221; — Boneucent, 4692.
Braunde, Braunden, or Braundine, is queen of Spain, and princess of Portugal, p. 10; enchants Alphouns, p. 10; receives an embassy from her lord, pp. 133, 136; goes to Palermo, p. 137; is attacked by the werwolf, p. 139; disenchants him, p. 141; returns to Spain, p. 164.
Braundinis, or Braundyns, prince of Spain, asks Florence in marriage, p. 88; is taken prisoner by William, p. 117; is betrothed to Alisaudrine, p. 159; is married, p. 160; comes to Palermo, p. 168; returns home, p. 171. [The name occurs in ll. 4941, 5299, 5411.]

Calibre, Calabria, 2628, 5512.

Cisile, Sicily, 2603, 2628.

Ebrouns. See Embrons.

Edwardes, (King) Edward’s, 166, 5531. [Sir Humfrey de Bohun’s mother was a daughter of King Edward I.]

Embrons, or Ebrouns, king of Palermo, p. 2; loses his son William, p. 3; pursues the werewolf without success, pp. 4—6; dies, p. 88; the story of his horse Saundbruel, pp. 106, 107; his resemblance to his son William, p. 119.

Englysh, English, 168.

Far, a name for the Straits of Messina. See page 4, and the note.

Felice, queen of Palermo, and daughter of the emperor of Greece, p. 2; her grief at losing her son William, p. 5; is besieged in Palermo by the king of Spain, p. 94; her dream, p. 95; the dream expounded, pp. 96, 97; she encourages her knights, p. 99; she puts on a hind’s skin, p. 100; she overhears about Melior’s dream, p. 102; addresses William, p. 103; takes the hides off William and Melior, p. 105; sees the werewolf, p. 113; perceives a likeness between William and King Ebrouns, p. 119; discovers that William is her son, p. 147; her dream comes true, p. 174.

Florence, daughter to the queen of Palermo, and sister to William, is sought in marriage by Braundyns, p. 91; is admitted to see the werewolf after his disenchantment, p. 143; marries Alphouns, p. 160. [The name occurs in l. 4490.]

Frenche, 167, 5522, 5533.


Gloriande, l. 41 on p. 2;—Glorianns, 4775.

Glouster, 166.

Greece, a grom of, 1767.

Greece, emperor of, is father to Queen Felice, p. 2; sends an embassy to Rome, p. 53; comes to Rome, p. 55; raises a hue and cry after William and Melior, p. 73; sends an embassy to Palermo, p. 157.

Greece, prince of. See Partene-don.


Gryffouns, n. pl. Greeks, 1961. Roquefort gives the forms Gréu, Gréux, Grégéois, Grifons, &c., as equivalent to the Lat. Græcus. Hence the forms Gergeis (miswritten Gergeis), Grewes, and Gryffouns in the present poem.

Hereford, 5530;—Herford, 165.

Huet, 362.

Hugones, Hugo’s, 363.

Hugonet, 362.

Humfray de Bowne, 165;—Humfray de Bowne, 5530. [Sir Walter Scott rhymes de Bowne with soon; Lord of the Isles, Bk VI. c. xiv.]

Kostant-noble, Constantinople, 1425.

Krist, Christ, 1315.

Lumbardie, 585, 1315.
Indeext. 838, 2229, 2698, &c.
Martyrnet, 363.
Meliadus, 3846, 3858, 3863, 3869.
Mellior, or Mellors, daughter of the emperor of Rome, p. 19; falls in love with William, p. 23; her soliloquy, pp. 23—26; is comforted by Alisaundrine, p. 28; goes to the garden, p. 34; and finds William asleep there, p. 35; is betrothed to William, p. 40; is wood by the prince of Greece, p. 53; escapes with William, disguised as a bear, pp. 61—67; arrives at Benevento, p. 75; is saved by the werwolf, pp. 76—81; is disguised as a hind, p. 86; comes to Reggio, p. 90; is nearly killed by a barge-boy, p. 92; comes to Palermo, p. 93; her dream, p. 102; is received by the queen of Palermo, p. 105; her meeting with her father, p. 156; is married to William, p. 160; is crowned empress of Rome, p. 169; her children, p. 174. See William.
Midesomer, Midsummer, 1464.
Moyses, Moses, the name of a priest, 2918, 3025.
Nauerne, Navarre, 4076.
Palerne, Palermo, L. 61 on p. 3; 2838, 4223, 4287; spelt Pallerne, 2628.
Palerne, queen of. See Felice.
Partendo, or Partenedon, son of the emperor of Greece, and brother of Queen Felice, wooes Melior, p. 53; waits at church for his bride, who does not come, p. 65; arrives at Palermo, p. 157; returns to Greece, 161. [The name occurs in lines 4930, 4939, 5039, 5078, 5088.]
Payenes, Pagan's, 364.
Petyr, cherche de seynt, 1956.
Pope, 1957.
Portingale, Portugal, 116.
Poyle, Apulia, 156, 2628, 5512.
Rise, Reggia, 2717. "It is so termed by the French and Italian Romancers of the middle ages. See Panizzi's Life of Bojardo, vol. ii. p. lxxxii. n. The same change seems to have taken place in regard to Riez in Provence, as remarked by Mr Nicol, to whom I am indebted for a reference to Martimiere's Dictionary, sub v. Riez."—M.
Roachas, 1437.
Romaynes, Romans, 5167.
Rome, emperor of, finds William in a forest, p. 13; talks to the cowherd, p. 14; adopts William, pp. 15—19; defeats the duke of Saxony, pp. 42—49; consents that his daughter Melior shall marry Partenedon, p. 54; loses Melior, p. 68; his wrath, pp. 69—71; finds his daughter at Palermo, p. 155; his last advice to Melior, p. 163; his death, p. 166.
Saundbruel (a horse), 3585.
Saxoyne, duke of, 1068, 1108, 1318.
Spayne, king of, father of Alphonous the werwolf, p. 9; marries Braunde, p. 10; besieges Palermo, p. 88; seeks to revenge his son Braundinis, p. 121; is taken prisoner, p. 127; is saluted by the werwolf, p. 129; tells William his story, pp. 131, 132; escorts Melior to church, p. 160; returns to Spain p. 165; his death, p. 167.
Spain, prince of. See Braundinis.
Spaynols, Spaniards, 3631, 3770, 5168;—Spaynoles, 3399;—Spaynolus, 3529;—Spaynolnes, 3357.
William (of Palerne), son of King Ebrouus and Queen Felice, p. 2; stolen by the werwolf, pp. 3—6; found and adopted by a cowherd, pp. 7—9; found and adopted by the emperor of Rome, pp. 13—23; is beloved by Melior, p. 23;
dreams of Melior, p. 30; betrothed to Melior, p. 40; is knighted, p. 43; defeats the duke of Saxony, pp. 45—49; his sickness, p. 55; is healed, p. 57; escapes with Melior, disguised as a bear, pp. 59—65; is saved by the werwolf, p. 75; hides with Melior in a quarry, p. 76; bids Melior save herself, p. 79; takes off the bear-skin, p. 81; hides with Melior in a forest, p. 82; is nearly discovered by some colliers, p. 84; disguises himself as a hart, and Melior as a hind, p. 86; comes to Reggio, p. 90; embarks secretly in a ship with Melior, p. 91; carries her to land, p. 92; is found by the queen of Palermo, p. 103; undertakes to assist her, p. 104; has a werwolf painted on his shield, p. 105; mounts King Ebrouns' horse, p. 107; attacks the Spaniards, pp. 110—112, 117—126; takes prisoner Prince Braundinis, p. 118; and the king of Spain, p. 127; sends for Queen Braunden to disenchant the werwolf, p. 134; embraces Alphouns, p. 144; his story and parentage, pp. 147—150; is king of Apulia, p. 154; marries Melior, p. 160; is emperor of Rome, p. 167; creates the cowherd an earl, p. 170; his wise rule, p. 173; his children, p. 174.

William (the author's name), 5521.

---

INDEX OF NAMES TO "ALISAUNDER."

Ægypt, 454.
Alisauder, son of Amyntas, 22, 27, 37.
Alisauder, son of Philip, 1034, 1049, 1095, 1148, &c.
Amon, 661, 727, 805.
Amyntas, 13.
Arabes, 498.
Arisba. See Erubel.
Aristote (Aristotle). See page 211.
Arofagi, a corruption of Agriophagi, i.e. eaters of wild animals, 500.
Artasarses, 491.
Assyriens (a mistake for Illyriens), 109, 130.
Assyrie (a mistake for Illyrie), 159.
Attenes, Athens, 157; — Attens, 898; — Attanus, 90.
Atteniens, Athenians, 415; — Atteneiens, 902, 938.
Augni or Augni, 498.
Barbre, Barbar (a mistake for Barbarians, Lat. Barbari), 533, 536.
Bosorij, 499.
Byzaunce, Byzantium, 1208; — Byzance, 1222.
Cappadoce, Cappadocia (a mistake for Chalcidice), 944, 1111.
Comothenham (a corrupt name for Methone). See Methone.
Constantine, 1225.
Constantinoble, 1223; — Constantinople, 1229.
Egipt, 486, 534, &c.
Elaine, Helen (mother of Constantine), 1226.
Enomanus, 429.
Epaminondas, 52, 75.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page References</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Erubel</td>
<td>172—Eruba, 240</td>
<td>Ethiope, Æthiopia</td>
<td>552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eurydice</td>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>258, &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jupiter (the planet)</td>
<td>1077</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Komothonham</td>
<td>(a corrupt spelling of Methone). See Methone.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacedemonie, 335, 336, 417, 444</td>
<td>Lacedemoine, 449, 879.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacedemonieins</td>
<td>351</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macedoine</td>
<td>14, 59, &amp;c.</td>
<td>Medie, 495</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercuric (the planet)</td>
<td>1077</td>
<td>Mesopotamie, 497</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methone, 255, 310; corruptly spell Komothonham, 255; and Komothonham, 310.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molosor (also Malasor), a corruption of Molossis, 173, 204.</td>
<td>Nectanabus, 459, 505, &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olympias</td>
<td>177, 576, &amp;c.</td>
<td>Pausanias, 1218, 1246.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perse, Persia</td>
<td>492, 494; —Perss, 462, 471.</td>
<td>Perthe, Parthia</td>
<td>494.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philip, passim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philomelo</td>
<td>364, 421</td>
<td>Phocus, Phocis</td>
<td>365, 413, 428, 446, 878; —Phocos, 336.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosus, pl. Phocians</td>
<td>391</td>
<td>Roome, 103, 1224.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seraphin, Serapis</td>
<td>557, 572</td>
<td>Sparte, 1246</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syria</td>
<td>496</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tebeniens, Thebans</td>
<td>877—Tebeniensins, 351, 380.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tebes, Thebes</td>
<td>51, 71; —Tebs, 94.</td>
<td>Tessalonie, Thessalonica, 913.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDEX OF NAMES.